



Prp. 94

direct substitution  
une

alcohol

L R  
11.6 85.6

L R  
3.5 12  
9.9 16.3  
8.9 14.4  
2 6.8

L R  
11.6 11.5

range no. 5

app. # 2

classification carbohydrates

I Physical

1 Crystalline

2 non-crystalline

II Chemical

a Aldose

b Ketose

1 monosaccharide

aldose → glucose

fructose

ketose

etc.

1 disaccharide

480/100

13/12/22

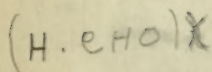
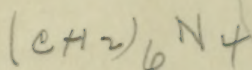


RONALD CLOUSE  
352 N. CRAIG ST.

Seat 41

June Exam

No. Final  
Begin with  
sats  
to  
131

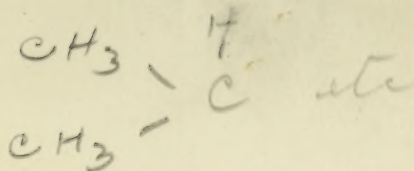


Exam. 3rd  
Aldehydes Ketones  
to  
Soap

80  
140  
220  
240  
60

Nitrocellulose

150





acetic acid prepare ethyl amine

tetra methyl hydroxy amine methyl amine

First page formulae for amines prepare methyl alcohol

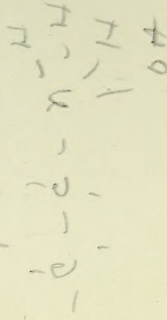
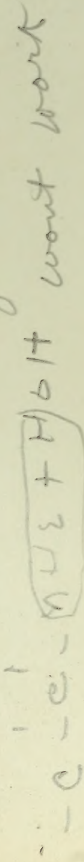
Page 130

Names of 1° 2° and tertiary amines

Diethyl nitroso amine

Distinguishes between the three amines

Don't write reaction of nitrous acid on tertiary amine (woud work)



ethylene 135 tocton



Amines 132  
187

carbohydrates

Hexa chloro benzene      Substitution  
Benzene hepta chloride      Addition

AN INTRODUCTION  
TO  
ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

the chlorinate  
nitrate      name  
\_\_\_\_\_



## WORKS BY THE SAME AUTHORS

PUBLISHED BY  
**D. VAN NOSTRAND COMPANY**  
EIGHT WARREN STREET  
NEW YORK CITY

*BY ALEXANDER LOWY*

### **Organic Type Formulas.**

Two color chart. 5 x 8, paper leaflet. (See page facing 16.) \$0.10.

### **Wall Chart of Organic Type Formula.**

A Chart in two parts. Each mounted on linen, each 4 x 6 ft.

With shade roller attachment in steel case, per set, \$20.00.

With sticks for hanging, per set, \$10.00.

### **Organic Type Reactions, Known by Their Originator's Names.**

Two color chart, 5½ x 8½, 6 page paper leaflet, \$0.15.

### **Coal Products Chart.**

11 x 17, paper leaflet, (See page facing 199), \$0.15.

*BY ALEXANDER LOWY and T. B. DOWNEY*

### **Study Questions in Elementary Organic Chemistry.**

6 x 9, paper, 100 pages, \$1.00.

*BY BENJAMIN HARROW*

### **Eminent Chemists of Our Times.**

Illustrated, 5½ x 8. 264 pages. Cloth, \$2.50.

### **From Newton to Einstein.**

Changing conceptions of the universe. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Portraits and illustrations, 4½ x 7½, boards, 116 pages, \$1.00.



# AN INTRODUCTION TO ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

BY

ALEXANDER LOWY, PH.D.

*Professor of Organic Chemistry, University of Pittsburgh*

AND

BENJAMIN HARROW, PH.D.

*Associate in Physiological Chemistry, College of Physicians  
and Surgeons, Columbia University*

Carls

17

22

52

Read C. 18

NEW YORK

JOHN WILEY & SONS, INC.

LONDON: CHAPMAN & HALL, LIMITED

1924

Copyright, 1924,  
By ALEXANDER LOWY  
AND  
BENJAMIN HARROW

2/25

PRESS OF  
BRAUNWORTH & CO.  
BOOK MANUFACTURERS  
BROOKLYN, N. Y.



## PREFACE

---

In the preparation of this work the authors have tried to keep a number of objects constantly in mind. In the first place, they desired to embody in the work material which could be satisfactorily treated in a course in which the theory of organic chemistry is covered in two semesters (two hours a week). They were also anxious that such material should include not only the well-recognized basic principles of organic chemistry, but also its more recent and more important applications; the entire story being woven together into a simple and readable narrative.

The authors have also kept in mind the many connecting links that bind organic chemistry to a number of other sciences,—to medicine, dentistry, pharmacy; to agriculture; to the biological sciences; hence, the inclusion of such chapters as those dealing with lipoids; nucleoproteins and their decomposition products; the chemical changes which foodstuffs undergo in the body; plant and animal pigments; enzymes, vitamins and hormones; organic compounds of arsenic and other metals; dyes and stains, etc.

The text can, therefore, be appropriately used in connection with a lecture course, not only by the student who is taking organic chemistry as part of a general academic course, or as preparation for a more extended course in chemistry, but by one who is preparing for the medical, dental, pharmaceutical or other biological sciences.

The book is not intended to act as a guide for laboratory manipulations; details for the preparation of compounds are, therefore, intentionally omitted. Neither, with a few exceptions, are boiling points, melting points or other physical constants included in the body of the work; some of these will be found in the form of a table in the appendix.

To aid the student in naming organic compounds, a brief chapter (XXXVII) is devoted to this topic.

The structure of benzene and its derivatives is shown in



heavy and light lines, the heavy lines representing double bonds. This is in accordance with a plan originally proposed by one of the authors.<sup>1</sup>

The two colored charts, taken in conjunction with Chapter XXXIV (a brief outline for the identification of organic substances), should serve, to some extent, the purposes of a review.

A number of charts throughout the text, illustrating the uses of a few important chemicals, have been incorporated if only to give the student some idea of the many and diverse uses to which organic substances may be put.

In the opinion of the authors, the student should at the very outset be given some opportunity for collateral reading; hence, the references at the end of chapters and the general references at the end of the book.

The glossary has been added to explain a number of medical terms used in the text.

Photographs of a few of the outstanding leaders in organic chemistry have been included.

The authors have freely consulted various text-books and journals and they wish to acknowledge their debt to the men responsible for the texts and articles.

For their kindness in giving permission to reproduce diagrams, the authors wish to thank the following: The Marland Oil Co. (Petroleum Refining); [R. F. Remler of the Mellon Institute of Industrial Research, and the National Wood Chemical Association (Uses of Methanol, Uses of Acetic Acid, Uses of Acetone, Uses of Formaldehyde); The U. S. Industrial Alcohol Co. (Ethyl Alcohol); D. Van Nostrand Co. (two colored charts); and Cain and Thorpe: "Synthetic Dyestuffs and Intermediate Products" (Substituents in Naphthalene Ring).

The authors are indebted to Dr. Tesh for complete proof-reading and to other members of the Department of Chemistry of the University of Pittsburgh for criticism.

The authors will at all times welcome suggestions and criticism.

ALEXANDER LOWY.  
BENJAMIN HARROW.

<sup>1</sup> *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, **41**, 1029 (1919).



# CONTENTS

## ALIPHATIC SERIES

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. INTRODUCTION.....	1
II. SATURATED HYDROCARBONS OR PARAFFINS AND PETROLEUM.	18
III. UNSATURATED HYDROCARBONS OR OLEFINS AND ACETYLENES.	30
IV. HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF HYDROCARBONS.....	40
V. ALCOHOLS.....	48
VI. ETHERS.....	64
VII. ALDEHYDES AND KETONES.....	67
VIII. ACIDS.....	79
IX. SALTS AND ESTERS OF INORGANIC AND ORGANIC ACIDS....	90
X. FATS AND OILS, WAXES AND LIPOIDS.....	99
XI. ACID ANHYDRIDES, ACYL HALIDES AND ACID AMIDES.....	107
XII. HALOGEN SUBSTITUTED ACIDS AND HYDROXY ACIDS.....	117
XIII. AMINES OR ORGANIC BASES.....	132
XIV. AMINO ACIDS AND PROTEINS.....	137
XV. NUCLEOPROTEINS, PURINES, URIC ACID AND PYRIMIDINES....	149
XVI. CYANIDES, ISOCYANIDES AND OTHER NITROGEN COMPOUNDS.	154
XVII. CARBOHYDRATES AND RELATED COMPOUNDS.....	160
XVIII. FOODSTUFFS AND THEIR CHANGES IN THE BODY.....	174
XIX. SULFUR, PHOSPHORUS, ARSENIC AND ORGANO-METALLIC COMPOUNDS.....	182

## AROMATIC SERIES

XX. INTRODUCTION TO CYCLIC COMPOUNDS.....	188
XXI. CONSTITUTION OF BENZENE AND THE AROMATIC HYDRO- CARBONS.....	191
XXII. HALOGEN DERIVATIVES, SULFONIC ACIDS AND NITRO COM- POUNDS OF THE AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS.....	210
XXIII. AROMATIC AMINES, DIAZO AND AZO COMPOUNDS .....	222
XXIV. AROMATIC ALCOHOLS, PHENOLS AND ETHERS.....	235
XXV. AROMATIC ALDEHYDES, KETONES AND QUINONES.....	245
XXVI. AROMATIC ACIDS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES.....	253
XXVII. ADDITIONAL AROMATIC COMPOUNDS CONTAINING MIXED GROUPS.....	261
XXVIII. NAPHTHALENE, ANTHRACENE AND THEIR DERIVATIVES....	278

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXIX. DYES AND STAINS.....	288
XXX. TERPENES AND RELATED SUBSTANCES.....	302
XXXI. HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS.....	309
XXXII. VEGETABLE ALKALOIDS.....	319
XXXIII. ARSENIC AND MERCURY COMPOUNDS OF THE AROMATIC SERIES.	322
XXXIV. A BRIEF OUTLINE FOR THE IDENTIFICATION OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.....	327

## GENERAL TOPICS

XXXV. PLANT AND ANIMAL PIGMENTS: CHLOROPHYLL, CAROTIN, XANTHOPHYLL, FLAVONES, ANTHOCYANINS, HEMOGLOBIN AND BILE PIGMENTS.....	335
XXXVI. ENZYMES, VITAMINS AND HORMONES.....	339
XXXVII. SYSTEMATIC NOMENCLATURE OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.....	344

## APPENDIX

GLOSSARY.....	359
BOILING AND MELTING POINTS OF A NUMBER OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.	362
GENERAL REFERENCE BOOKS.....	365
INDEX.....	377



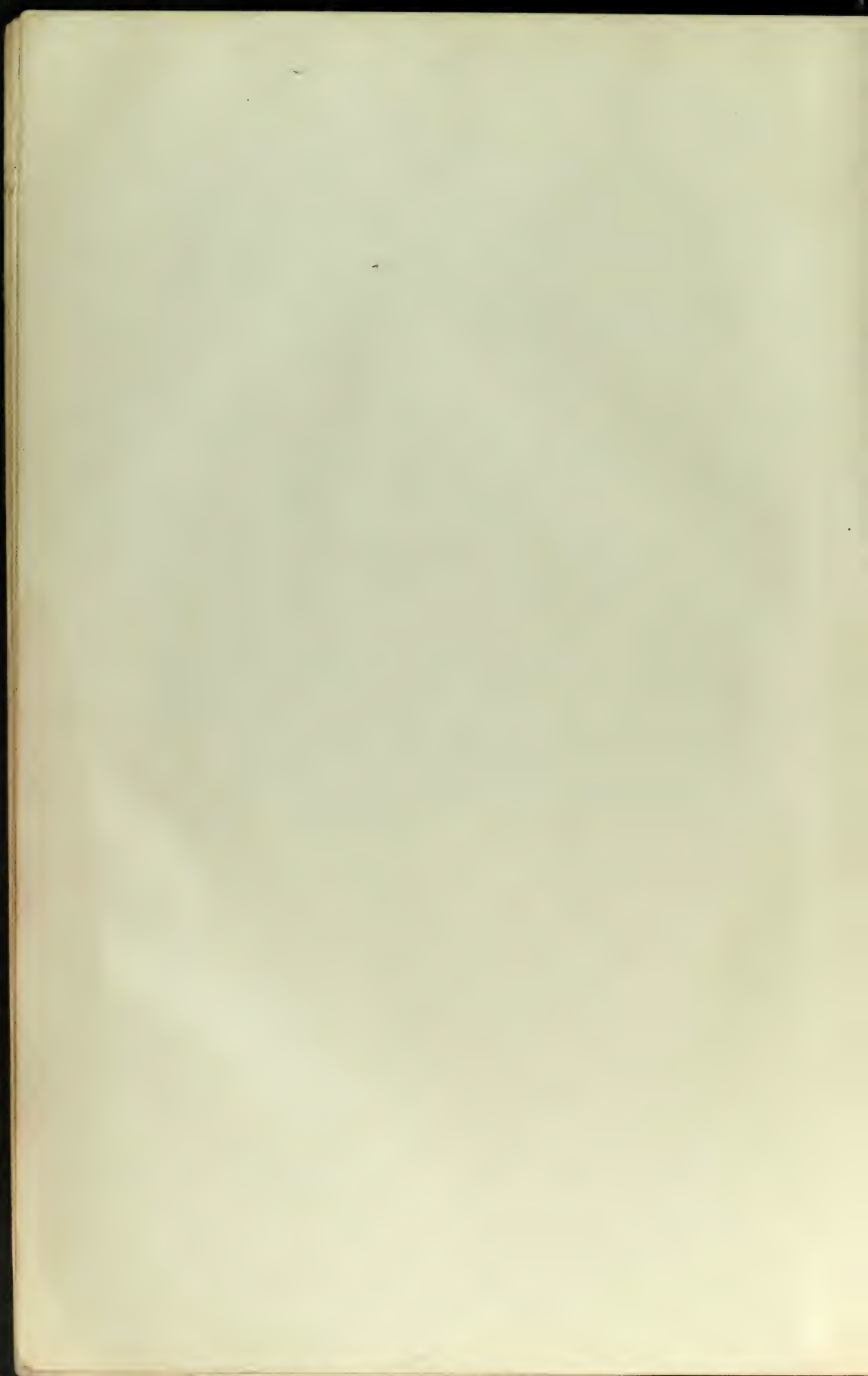
## NOTE FOR STUDENT

---

REMEMBER that the laws in chemistry hold for organic as well as for inorganic chemistry. Correlate as many of the new facts with facts with which you are already familiar from your previous studies.

Classification in organic chemistry has been carried to an exceptional degree. One type reaction often gives the key to hundreds of individual reactions. Emphasize, therefore, type formulas and type reactions and make constant use of paper and pencil to practice the writing of formulas and equations.

To broaden your outlook, consult as frequently as possible the reading references given at the end of chapters.





# AN INTRODUCTION TO ORGANIC CHEMISTRY

---

## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION

LONG ago man conceived the idea that between the living and the lifeless there is a sharp dividing line. A careful study of the colors of the spectrum, or a consideration of evolutionary problems, might have made him reconsider this view. It would have been more logical to assume that we probably cannot tell just where the "lifeless" ends and the "living" begins. That, indeed, is the modern point of view.

Even as late as a century ago, chemists still had faith in the classification of chemical compounds into "organic" or "inorganic," the "organic" being distinguished from the "inorganic" on the supposition that the former had some kind of "vital" or "life force," which made it seem quite impossible that a chemist could ever hope to reproduce an "organic" substance in the laboratory. (Formerly substances of mineral origin were classed as "inorganic"; those of animal or vegetable origin were classed as "organic.")

These notions of "organic" and "inorganic" were rudely shaken by the work of Wöhler, a distinguished German chemist, who in 1828, succeeded in preparing urea in his laboratory by heating ammonium cyanate (p. 113). Now if any one compound can be called "organic," such a distinction certainly belongs to urea, for it is the chief end product of the decomposition of proteins in the body and is the principal nitrogenous constituent of the urine.

This epoch-making work of Wöhler's was not, as is generally supposed, at once accepted unconditionally. Sometimes the scientist does not take to scientific changes any more quickly than does the average citizen to social or political changes. But in time other examples of the production of "organic" substances in the chemist's laboratory were recorded, and the old idea became less and less important. Chemists prepared or synthesized acetic acid, fats, alcohol, oxalic acid, mustard oil, oil of bitter almonds, sugars, camphor, uric acid, indigo, adrenaline, protein-like substances and thousands of others, more or less complex—all, however, typically "organic" substances. And we are far from having reached the limit. It is conceivable that in the not distant future some of the food we use will be made in the chemist's laboratory. As an illustration of possibilities, within the past year, Kahn has prepared a synthetic fat, which he calls "intarvin," which is of value in diabetes (p. 101). Many are of the opinion that a judicious combination of the work of the physical chemist and the organic chemist will result, eventually, in solving the riddle of life itself.

We still retain the words "organic" and "inorganic," though we no longer think of them in the time-honored sense. What we call "**organic**" chemistry may more aptly be called **the chemistry of the carbon compounds**, for that is just what "organic" chemistry deals with.

But in reality we do not draw the line too sharply. Such compounds as carbon dioxide, carbon monoxide, carbon disulfide, hydrogen cyanide and the carbonates are usually included in texts on inorganic chemistry, though, of course, they are carbon compounds, and according to the definition should be included under "organic" chemistry.

The fundamental laws of chemistry, which the student has taken up in his inorganic chemistry course, apply to organic chemistry with equal or perhaps greater force. If, then, the dividing line between "organic" and "inorganic" chemistry is not a sharp one, why the necessity for having these two subdivisions? We shall enumerate a number of reasons.

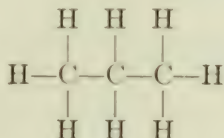
1. The number of compounds of carbon known to-day exceed 225,000, and the number of compounds which do not contain carbon are only about 26,000.

2. In general, organic and inorganic compounds show marked



differences in solubility, the former being usually soluble in ether, alcohol, chloroform, benzene, etc., while the latter are not; whereas many of the inorganic compounds are soluble in water and the organic ones are not.

3. The atoms of carbon have the unique property of combining with one another to form chain-like structures—a property not frequently shown by inorganic compounds: for example,



4. Organic compounds are, as a rule, less stable than inorganic; they are much more easily susceptible to chemical and physical changes. (Organic compounds are decomposed at relatively low temperatures.)

5. "Type" reactions are quite frequent in organic chemistry. For example, there are hundreds of organic compounds which react with nitric acid to form "nitro" compounds (p. 219), hundreds of which react with reducing agents to yield "amino" compounds, etc.

6. There is often a marked difference in the velocity of reaction. The change of one organic compound to another is usually a relatively slow process, whereas the transformation of inorganic substances is often practically instantaneous.

7. Reactions in organic chemistry are, as a rule, mostly non-ionic, the solutions being non-conductors of electricity; whereas, reactions in inorganic chemistry are largely ionic. This explains, for example, why, when solutions of sodium chloride and silver nitrate are mixed, an immediate precipitate of silver chloride is obtained, whereas, we get no precipitate upon mixing solutions of pure carbon tetrachloride ( $\text{CCl}_4$ ) and silver nitrate.

8. Reactions in organic chemistry often tend to become quite complex, and there are possibilities of many "side" or "secondary" reactions (p. 215).

9. The complexity in structure exhibited by some organic compounds is quite unknown among inorganic compounds (p. 293).

10. Organic compounds often show a property called "isomerism" which we shall discuss later in some detail (p. 21), but

this phenomenon is very little known in inorganic chemistry. For example, when we write  $\text{HNO}_3$  we have reference to nitric acid, and to nitric acid alone, but when we write  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}$  this may stand for ethyl alcohol or for methyl ether, and the only way we can distinguish the one from the other is by writing graphic or structural formulas (p. 24), which give some idea of the arrangement of the atoms within the molecule. That is the reason why graphic and structural formulas are used so extensively in organic chemistry (pp. 14, 263).

**Importance and Applications.**—We have already mentioned the fact that more than 225,000 compounds are grouped under organic chemistry. Many of these find various applications in our daily life. Some of them are so common that merely mentioning their names will suggest to the student many of their applications. Picking a few of these substances more or less at random, we may refer to starch, sugar, fats, oils, proteins, paper, artificial silk, soap, explosives, photographic developers, anesthetics, disinfectants, antiseptics, dyes, drugs, waxes, ether, natural gas, perfumes, glue, citric acid, alcohol, saccharin, artificial food colors, caffeine, cellulose, camphor, rubber, flavoring essences, gasoline, vaseline, coal tar, glycerine, aniline, indigo, salvarsan, etc. And it may be added that the various transformations which the foodstuffs and cellular tissue undergo in the plant and animal kingdom, involving complex syntheses and decompositions, are essentially those which can best be studied by the organic chemist.

**Other Sciences Based on Organic Chemistry.**—Physiological (or Bio-) chemistry (which deals with the chemical processes that take place in animals and plants), food chemistry, and organic analysis, all have their basis in organic chemistry. Various aspects of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy require training in organic chemistry. We shall illustrate this inter-dependence with a few examples.

A problem of general importance in bacteriology is to find some substance which has the property of destroying a certain type of bacteria without at the same time injuring the body tissues. Ehrlich, the German physician, who was also a trained chemist, found a cure for syphilis by the use of arsphenamine (p. 323) (also called salvarsan and "606"), which he synthesized in the laboratory. More recently the work of Jacobs and Heidelberger at the Rockefeller Institute, N. Y., on the application of



various arsenical compounds to medicine, holds out hope that one of these will prove of distinct value in the treatment of sleeping sickness. Mention may also be made of the use of "chloramine-T" (p. 266) and other organic compounds containing chlorine, in the treatment of infected wounds. During the war, Dakin and Carrel found that "chloramine-T," given under certain conditions is strong enough to destroy micro-organisms, without at the same time harming the tissues.

Another problem, this time of particular importance to physiologists and general medical practitioners, is the isolation, in a chemically pure state, of the active principles of glands in the body. One of the active principles of the adrenal glands, adrenaline (or, as it is sometimes called, "epinephrine") has not only been isolated from the gland, but has actually been synthesized in the laboratory. In this work Abel of Johns Hopkins and the late Takamine, a Japanese chemist who had established himself in the United States, took leading parts. Lately, the active principle of the thyroid gland, thyroxin, has been isolated by Kendall of the Mayo Clinic in Rochester, Minn., who has also succeeded in synthesizing it. And we may mention that insulin, ("iletin") an active principle of the pancreas, which has been shown by the Canadian, Banting, to play such an important rôle in diabetes, though known so far in an impure form, is receiving much attention from organic chemists.

Cocaine, novocaine, butyn, benzyl alcohol and ethylene as anesthetics; the essential constituents of chaulmoogra oil in the treatment of leprosy; caffeine and related substances as diuretics; barbitol (veronal) and luminal as hypnotics; thymol and carbon tetrachloride as a cure for hookworm; are only a few illustrations of the comparatively recent developments in the application of organic chemistry to medicine.

**Elements Present in Organic Compounds.**—Numerous as the compounds of carbon are, most of them contain but two to five different elements in the molecule. There are hundreds of compounds which contain merely the elements carbon and hydrogen. These are known as hydrocarbons. Methane ( $\text{CH}_4$ ), benzene ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ ), naphthalene ( $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_8$ ) and anthracene ( $\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{10}$ ), are examples. Many contain the element oxygen in addition to carbon and hydrogen; as for example, the sugars, fats, starches, alcohols, ethers, acetic acid and glycerol. Many are composed

of carbon, hydrogen and nitrogen, as hydrocyanic acid and aniline. Examples of compounds containing carbon, hydrogen, oxygen and nitrogen are some of the alkaloids, indigo and urea; and those containing carbon, hydrogen and a halogen are chloroform and iodoform.

Often, in addition to the elements already mentioned, we find sulfur and phosphorus. Many of the proteins contain appreciable quantities of the former element, and the phosphatides, such as lecithin and cephalin, which are important cellular constituents, contain phosphorus. (It may be mentioned in passing that quite recently Hopkins has isolated a substance from cells, to which he has given the name "glutathione," which contains sulfur and which is regarded as a substance that plays a very important rôle in all cellular oxidations.)

Elements in addition to those already mentioned are often met with. Following the pioneer work of Ehrlich on salvarsan, very many organic compounds of arsenic, antimony, bismuth and mercury have been prepared. Quite recently an organic compound of lead, lead tetraethyl, has been used to prevent "knocking" in automobiles (p. 187). Many salts of organic acids, such as those of sodium, potassium, calcium, etc., are found in nature or may be prepared in the laboratory.

**Sources of Organic Substances.**—A. Some organic compounds may be traced either to the plant or animal kingdom. Out of carbon dioxide, water and various constituents from the soil, in the presence of light, the plant builds a veritable galaxy of substances: sugars, starches, cellulose, alkaloids (morphine in opium—nicotine in tobacco), acids (citric and tartaric), salts ("tartar" in grapes), esters (flavoring substances of fruits), essential oils (peppermint, lemon), camphor, vegetable oils (linseed, cottonseed, olive), herbs (from which drugs are made and which were so largely used in days gone by), gum arabic, flavoring substances (vanilla), dyes (indigo, logwood, fustic) perfumes, tannin (from nutgalls), etc.

B. Plants and animals furnish us with fats, proteins, carbohydrates, enzymes and vitamins, and we often go to the animal kingdom for a number of products, such as urea, uric acid, gelatin, toxins and antitoxins.

*J.C. Destructive Distillation of Coal.*—When soft coal is strongly heated in a retort, this complex substance breaks down into a



number of (chemically) simpler substances. The conversion of a complex substance into a number of simpler substances by the aid of heat (in the absence of air) is known as "destructive distillation." The destructive distillation of coal yields coal gas (illuminating gas), ammonia, coke and coal tar. Coal tar, at one time discarded as a useless by-product, is now the starting-point for any number of organic products (some 225 compounds have been so far isolated). Out of coal tar we get benzene, toluene, naphthalene, anthracene, carbolic acid, the cresols, etc.; and these substances (the source of many aromatic compounds, see pp. 199), in turn, yield thousands of other organic compounds, many of them of great value as dyes, perfumes, drugs, etc. (see chart, p. 199). Perkin, an Englishman, was the first (in 1856) to prepare a coal-tar dye, but the development of the dye industry is due largely to the Germans, who, prior to the late war, were responsible for much research work in this field. Post-war developments in this country and in England have already reached such a stage as to ensure the establishment of permanent dye and other related industries.

✓ *D. Destructive Distillation of Wood.*—The important products obtained from wood are acetic acid, methanol (wood alcohol), acetone (indirectly), wood tar, combustible gases and charcoal.

✓ *E. Destructive Distillation of Bones.*—This yields animal charcoal (bone black) and bone oil, out of the latter of which a number of nitrogenous compounds, characterized by their disagreeable odor, are obtained (pyridine and quinoline are examples).

✓ *F. Fractional Distillation of Petroleum.*—A mixture of two or more liquids having different boiling-points may usually be separated from one another by a process of distillation, the liquid with the lower boiling-point distilling over first. A process which separates two or more liquids by making use of their different boiling-points is called "fractional distillation." The fractional distillation of petroleum yields a number of important commercial products, such as naphtha, gasoline, kerosene, gas oil, lubricating oil, cylinder oil, vaseline, etc.

✓ *G. Fermentation.*—It was for a long time supposed that in the conversion of sugar into alcohol by means of yeast, the living cells of the latter were primarily responsible for the change. We now know that what brings about this change is not the cells themselves, but substances produced by the cells, known as "enzymes."

Changes analogous to the conversion of sugar into alcohol are known as "fermentation." The sweet apple juice turns to cider (due to the formation of alcohol), and finally to cider vinegar (due to the oxidation of the alcohol into acetic acid). Milk on standing, or when "inoculated" with bacteria, becomes sour, due to the conversion of lactose (milk sugar) into lactic acid.

*H. Putrefaction.*—Putrefaction may be defined as the decomposition of animal or vegetable substances brought about largely by micro-organisms, resulting in diverse products, some of which have a foul odor. Among the products of putrefaction are amines, fatty acids, ammonia and its compounds,  $H_2S$ , methane, etc.

**Purification of Organic Compounds.**—Most of the organic compounds when first prepared are impure. Before the physical constants and chemical analyses (qualitative and quantitative) of a compound can be determined, it must be obtained in a pure state. For details of the methods used in the preparation of chemically pure substances, we must refer the student to appropriate laboratory texts<sup>1</sup> and only the barest outline will be given here.

The substance as first prepared is generally in an impure state. It may be purified by one or more of several processes, such as crystallization, distillation, sublimation, extraction, etc. (for details refer to laboratory manuals quoted). Almost all pure organic compounds have a definite melting-point (m.p.), or boiling-point (b.p.), or both. The melting- or boiling-point of the compound is, therefore, determined after the preliminary process of purification. A definite m.p. or b.p. is an important criterion of purity. (The principles involved, as well as the details of manipulation, will become familiar to the student as a result of his

<sup>1</sup> Barnett, Preparation of Organic Compounds; Cohen, Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry; Cook, Laboratory Experiments in Organic Chemistry; Emil Fischer, Preparation of Organic Compounds; H. L. Fisher, Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry; Gattermann, Practical Methods of Organic Chemistry; Heidelberger, Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry; Holleman-Walker, Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry; Jones, A Laboratory Outline of Organic Chemistry; Moore, Experiments in Organic Chemistry; Norris, Experimental Organic Chemistry; Noyes, Organic Chemistry for the Laboratory; Orndorff, A Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry; Price and Twiss, A Course of Practical Organic Chemistry; Steele, Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry for Medical Students; Sudborough and James, Practical Organic Chemistry; Titherley, A Laboratory Course of Organic Chemistry; West, Experimental Organic Chemistry.



laboratory work.) Having obtained the pure product, the next step is an analysis of the compound.

**Analysis of Organic Compounds.**—(Detailed directions are given in laboratory manuals.)<sup>2</sup> Before a quantitative analysis of a compound is made, a qualitative analysis, involving the detection of the elements present, is undertaken. In the course of the qualitative analysis, carbon in most organic compounds may be detected by heating the compound with copper oxide, the carbon thereby being oxidized to carbon dioxide, the presence of which may be shown with lime water. The same process oxidizes any hydrogen present to water, which is usually seen to collect in the upper (cooler) part of the tube. Nitrogen may be detected either by heating the substance with soda lime ( $\text{NaOH} + \text{CaO}$ ), thereby converting the nitrogen into ammonia, or by fusion with sodium, whereby sodium cyanide is formed ( $\text{Na} + \text{C}$  of organic compound  $+ \text{N}$ ), which is then converted into ferrocyanide by heating with a ferrous salt, and ultimately to "prussian blue" by the addition of a ferric salt. Halogens may be recognized by heating the compound with copper oxide in a non-luminous flame, whereby a green coloration is obtained, due to the volatilization of the copper halide, or by making use of the sodium fusion test, whereby the halogen is converted into the corresponding sodium salt, which may then be tested with silver nitrate. (Remember that the halogen in organic combinations is mainly in a non-ionizable form, and therefore does not react with a solution of silver nitrate prior to its decomposition.)

If sulfur is present it may be recognized by fusion with sodium, whereby sodium sulfide is formed, and a solution of this compound when placed on a silver coin forms silver sulfide (brownish-black).

Phosphorus and any of the other elements (such as the metals) are detected just as in inorganic analysis. The test for phosphorus requires a preliminary fusion with an oxidizing mixture (such as potassium nitrate and sodium carbonate).

We have no satisfactory test for oxygen.

<sup>2</sup> Benedict, *Elementary Organic Analysis*; Cohen, *Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry*; Fisher, *Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry*; Gattermann, *Practical Methods of Organic Chemistry*; Kingscott and Knight, *Methods of Quantitative Organic Analysis*; Mulliken, *Identification of Pure Organic Compounds*; Price and Twiss, *A Course of Practical Organic Chemistry*; Sudborough and James, *Practical Organic Chemistry*.

Many of the qualitative tests serve as the basis for the quantitative determinations. The carbon dioxide and water formed by the oxidation of a compound containing carbon and hydrogen are collected and weighed, and from the amounts of the products formed, the percentages of carbon and hydrogen in the original compound are calculated. The nitrogen in a compound may either be determined by the "Kjeldahl" method, whereby the element is converted into ammonia, or by the "Dumas" absolute method, whereby nitrogen gas is set free and its volume measured.

In the determination of the halogens, the compound is either oxidized with fuming nitric acid in presence of silver nitrate, the resulting silver halide weighed and the halogen calculated; or the compound is heated with pure calcium oxide, and the halogen in the resulting calcium halide determined either by precipitation or titration with silver nitrate.

Sulfur in an organic compound is determined by heating with fuming nitric acid, thereby converting it to sulfuric acid. This is then precipitated as barium sulfate with barium chloride. The percentage of sulfur is calculated from the weight of barium sulfate.

For estimating phosphorus and other elements, the methods outlined in inorganic quantitative analysis are followed.

Neither in its detection nor in its determination is there a good method available for oxygen when present in an organic compound. The general procedure is to determine the percentage of all the other elements present in the compound, subtract the total from 100, and "call" the difference the per cent of oxygen.

The principles underlying the analytical methods are quite simple, but the details for the quantitative determination of C, H, N and the other elements, are rather complex.

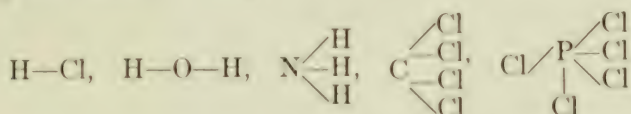
The analysis just discussed is what is known as "ultimate" or "elementary" analysis. It refers to the percentage of the elements present in the compound. There is still another type of analysis, known as "proximate," with which the clinical, pharmaceutical or food chemist has much to do. This "proximate" organic analysis deals with the determination of ingredients present in a mixture, such as the fat or protein in milk, or the various nitrogenous constituents and sugar in urine, or the percentage of alcohol in wine, etc.

The quantitative analysis enables us to arrive at what is known



as the "empirical" or "simplest" formula; but this may not necessarily prove to be the "true" or "molecular" formula. For example, a quantitative analysis of acetylene and benzene would yield the same "empirical" formulas for both, namely,  $\text{CH}$ ; yet acetylene is written  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2$  and benzene  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ . In order to arrive at the actual or "molecular" formula, whether  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2$  or  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ , we must further proceed to a molecular weight determination, based on vapor density, or boiling-point, or freezing-point, etc. Here again the reader is referred to laboratory manuals or to books on physical chemistry for further details.<sup>1</sup>

**Valence and Structure in Inorganic Chemistry.**—Our studies in inorganic chemistry have led us to define valence as the number of atoms of hydrogen with which one atom of an element combines or replaces. To show such relationships graphically in any compound, we indicate valencies by lines or "bonds," each line representing one valency. Thus:



where not only are hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen, carbon and phosphorus shown to be mono-, di-, tri-, tetra- and pentavalent elements, respectively, but these valencies are indicated by bonds, each bond representing one valency.

In organic chemistry, the use of graphic formulas is very extensive indeed, for only by some such method can the distinguishing features of a compound be brought out at a glance.

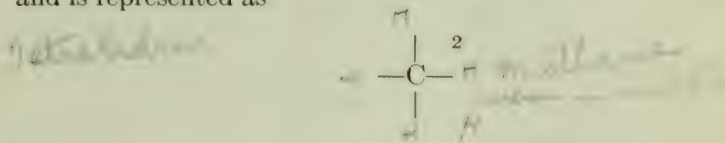
The difficulties that confront us may be seen from the following example, which has already been touched upon once before.  $\text{HNO}_3$  is the formula for nitric acid and for this compound alone, but  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6\text{O}$  stands for grain alcohol or methyl ether, and  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}$  may represent two different compounds. Although the molecular formulas are the same, the physical and chemical properties are more or less different. We say that in these cases the different compounds are due to differences in the internal structure of the

<sup>1</sup> Findlay, Practical Physical Chemistry; Getman, Laboratory Exercises in Physical Chemistry; Gray, Manual of Practical Physical Chemistry.

molecule, and our graphic formulas, which we shall use so much, attempt to give us a picture of such differences. Of course, these graphic formulas do not, and cannot represent the actual differences of any two compounds, or for that matter the actual structure of any one compound. Matter, to begin with, has three, not two, dimensions in space, and no structure drawn on paper can truly represent actual conditions. Nevertheless, these two-dimensional formulas have proved of inestimable value in clearing up many difficulties, as the student will appreciate when he proceeds to the various chapters.

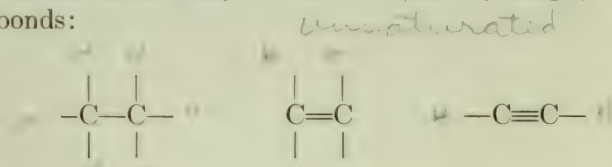
**The Fundamental Bases underlying the Structural Theory of Organic Chemistry:**

1. The valence of carbon, almost without exception, is four,<sup>1</sup> and is represented as

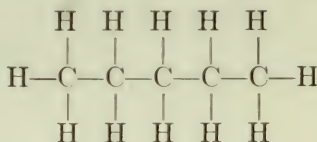


where any one bond bears exactly the same relationship to the carbon atom as any other bond.

2. Carbon atoms may be united either by single, double or triple bonds:



3. Carbon atoms may form a "straight" or "open" chain; for example,

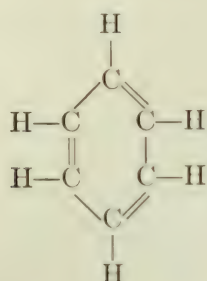


<sup>1</sup>There are several striking exceptions, however, such as CO (p. 157), C=NOH (p. 158), R-N=C (p. 156), and (C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>3</sub>C (p. 206).

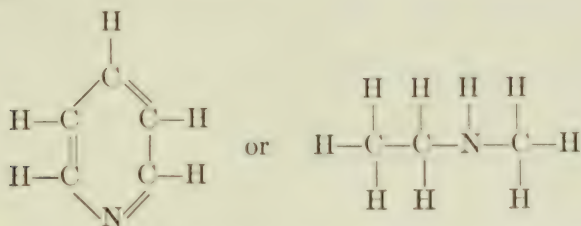
<sup>2</sup>It is suggested that at this point the instructor illustrate by means of models the probable spatial arrangement (in the form of a regular tetrahedron) of the methane molecule.



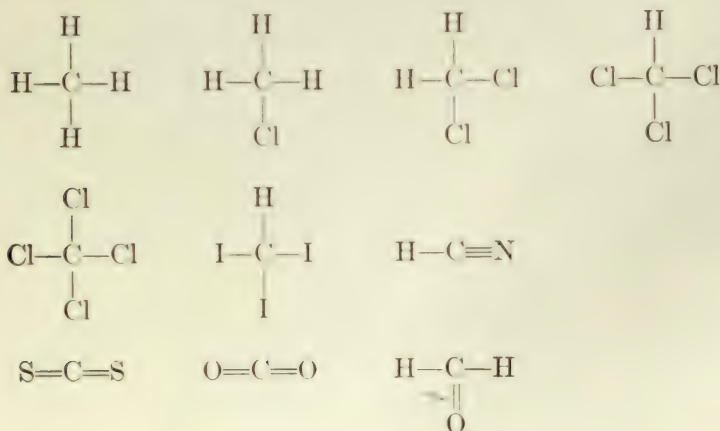
4. Carbon atoms may form a "closed" chain; for example,



5. Other elements besides carbon may enter a carbon chain, or a ring: e.g.,



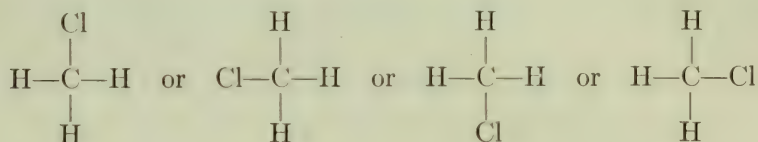
6. Elements may substitute one another in compounds; that is, one element in a compound may be removed, and another may take its place; for example,



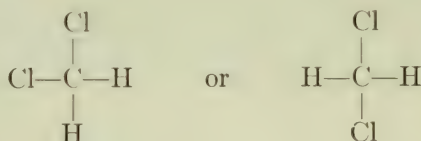
It must not be supposed that when we write methane,  

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ | \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{H} \\ | \\ \text{H} \end{array}$$
 we have any intention of fixing the atoms in space.

In any case—and this has already been referred to—two-dimensional configurations cannot truly represent the structure of any form of matter. But we do wish to emphasize that in the formula for methane the four hydrogen atoms are to be regarded as of equal value, so that when a hydrogen atom is replaced by a chlorine atom, it does not matter whether we write



for they all represent one and the same compound, namely, monochloromethane; nor, if two hydrogen atoms are replaced by two chlorine atoms, does it matter whether we write

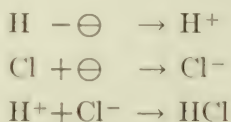


for both represent the same compound, dichloromethane.

**The Electron Conception of Valence.**—Based on modern work on the structure of the atom, many chemists have been busy recently developing ideas of valency in accord with the electronic conceptions of matter. As early as 1907 J. J. Thomson stated that for each valency bond established between two atoms, the transference of one—negatively charged—corpuscle (electron) from one atom to the other has taken place, the atom receiving the corpuscle (electron) acquiring a unit negative charge, while the atom losing the electron acquires a unit positive charge. Thus, a neutral H atom and a neutral Cl atom would become positively and



negatively charged, respectively, should the H atom lose an electron to the Cl atom:



An atom is capable of losing or gaining as many electrons as it has valencies and may function either as a positively or negatively charged atom. (Most elements have a greater tendency to behave one way than another.) If the Cl atom loses an electron, it becomes positively charged; e.g., hypochlorous acid,  $\overset{+}{\text{Cl}} \overset{-}{\text{O}} \overset{-}{\text{H}}$ ; but if it gains an electron, it becomes negatively charged; e.g.,  $\overset{+}{\text{H}} \overset{-}{\text{Cl}}$ .

A divalent atom may function in three ways: through the gain of two electrons; through the loss of two electrons; and through the simultaneous loss of one electron and gain of another; e.g.,

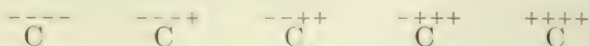


With a trivalent element there are four possibilities:

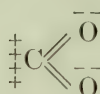
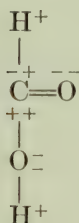
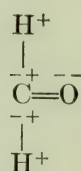
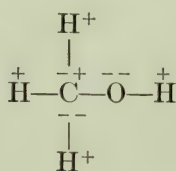
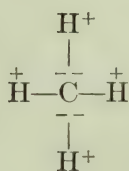


An atom, then, whose valence is  $n$  may function electronically in  $n+1$  different ways.

If this conception be applied to carbon, we might expect the carbon atom, with its tetravalency, to function in five different ways:



Applying the electronic conception of valence to a few simple carbon compounds—to methane, methanol (wood alcohol), formaldehyde, formic acid and carbon dioxide—we get the following:



(Consult the references at the end of the chapter—Falk and Nelson, Noyes and Langmuir.)

**Classification of Organic Compounds.**—There are two main divisions, the “aliphatic” and the “aromatic.”

The aliphatic compounds are related to methane, CH<sub>4</sub>, and are “open chain.” They get their name from the fact that animal and vegetable fats belong to this series.

The aromatic (“ring” or “cyclic”) compounds are related to benzene, C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub>, and many are characterized by fragrant odors; hence the name.

The line of demarcation of aliphatic and aromatic compounds is not a sharp one, for not all aliphatic compounds can be directly traced to fatty substances, nor do all aromatic compounds have odors. On the other hand, many aliphatic compounds possess very characteristic odors. Nevertheless, there are, as a rule, some general differences which help to differentiate the two great divisions, perhaps the most important being differences in a number of chemical properties (p. 194).





# ORGANIC TYPE FORMULAS

## ALIPHATIC SERIES

### COLUMN I

#### HYDROCARBONS

SATURATED	UNSATURATED	
PARAFFINS = $C_n H_{2n+2}$ ALKANES	OLEFINS = $C_n H_{2n}$ ALKENES	ACETYLENES = $C_n H_{2n-2}$ ALKYNES
$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-H \\   \\ H \end{array}$ METHANE	$\begin{array}{c} H & H \\   &   \\ C & -C \\   &   \\ H & H \end{array}$ ETHYLENE OR ETHENE	$\begin{array}{c} H & H \\   &   \\ C & \equiv C \\   &   \\ H & H \end{array}$ ACETYLENE OR ETHINE
$\begin{array}{c} H & H \\   &   \\ H-C & -C-H \\   &   \\ H & H \end{array}$ ETHANE		

#### ALKYL HALIDES

$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-Cl \\   \\ H \end{array}$ METHYL CHLORIDE OR MONOCHLOROMETHANE	$R-X$ $\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\   \\ C_2H_5 \\   \\ C_n H_{2n+1} \end{array}$ ALKYL GROUP	$X$ = HALOGEN $R$ = ALKYL
--	--	------------------------------

#### ALCOHOLS

$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-OH \\   \\ H \end{array}$ METHANOL OR METHYL ALCOHOL	$-OH$ ALCOHOL GROUP	$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-ONa \\   \\ H \end{array}$ SODIUM METHOXIDE OR SODIUM METHYLATE
--	------------------------	---

$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ R-C-OH \\   \\ H \end{array}$ PRIMARY ALCOHOL	$\begin{array}{c} R \\   \\ R-C-OH \\   \\ H \end{array}$ SECONDARY	$\begin{array}{c} R \\   \\ R-C-OH \\   \\ R \end{array}$ TERTIARY
---	---	--

#### ETHERS

$\begin{array}{c} H & H \\   &   \\ H-C-O-CH \\   &   \\ H & H \end{array}$ METHYL ETHER	$-O-$ ETHER GROUP	$R-O-R$ ETHERS
--	----------------------	-------------------

#### ALDEHYDES

$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-C=O \\   \\ H \end{array}$ ETHANAL OR ACETALDEHYDE	$-C=O$ ALDEHYDE GROUP	$R-C=O$ ALDEHYDES
--	--------------------------	----------------------

#### KETONES

$\begin{array}{c} H & H \\   &   \\ H-C-C-CH \\   &   \\ H & H \end{array}$ PROPANONE OR ACETONE	$-C(=O)-$ KETONE GROUP	$R-C(=O)-R$ KETONES
--	---------------------------	------------------------

#### ACIDS

$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-C=O \\   \\ H \end{array}$ ETHANOIC ACID OR ACETIC ACID	$-C(=O)OH$ CARBOXYL GROUP	$R-C(=O)OH$ ACIDS
---	------------------------------	----------------------

#### ACID DERIVATIVES

$\begin{array}{c} H_3C-C=O \\   \\ ONa \end{array}$ SODIUM ACETATE	$-C(=O)OM$ SALT GROUP $M$ = METAL	$R-C(=O)OM$ SALTS
$\begin{array}{c} H_3C-C=O \\   \\ OCH_3 \end{array}$ METHYL ACETATE	$-C(=O)OR$ ESTER GROUP	$R-C(=O)OR$ ESTERS
$H_3C-C(=O)O-C(=O)H$ $H_3C-C(=O)O-C(=O)R$ $H_3C-C(=O)O-C(=O)O-C(=O)H$	$-C(=O)O-C(=O)-$ ANHYDRIDE GROUP	$R-C(=O)O-C(=O)R$ ANHYDRIDES

DERIVATIVES CONTINUED ABOVE

### COLUMN II

$H_3C-C(=O)NH_2$ ACETAMIDE	$-C(=O)NH_2$ AMIDE GROUP	$R-C(=O)NH_2$ AMIDES
$H_3C-C(=O)Cl$ ACETYL CHLORIDE	$R-C(=O)X$ ACYL GROUP	$R-C(=O)X$ ACYL HALIDES

#### SUBSTITUTED ACIDS

$H_3C-COOH$ CHLOROACETIC ACID	$H_3C-COOH$ OH HYDROXYACETIC ACID	$H_2C-COOH$ NH <sub>2</sub> AMINOACETIC ACID
$H_2C(CN)COOH$ CYANOACETIC ACID	$H_2C(COOH)COOH$ MALONIC ACID	

#### CARBOHYDRATE GROUPS

$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-OH \\   \\ H-C-OH \\   \\ C=O \\   \\ H \end{array}$ ALDOSES	OR	$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ H-C-OH \\   \\ C=O \\   \\ H-C-OH \\   \\ H \end{array}$ KETOSES
--	----	--

#### AMINES

$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ N-H \\   \\ H \end{array}$ AMMONIA	$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ N-CH_3 \\   \\ H \end{array}$ METHYL AMINE	$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ N-CH_3 \\   \\ H \end{array}$ DIMETHYL AMINE	$\begin{array}{c} H \\   \\ N-CH_3 \\   \\ H \end{array}$ TRIMETHYL AMINE
$\begin{array}{c} R \\   \\ N-H \\   \\ R \end{array}$ PRIMARY AMINE	$\begin{array}{c} R \\   \\ N-H \\   \\ R \end{array}$ SECONDARY	$\begin{array}{c} R \\   \\ N-R \\   \\ R \end{array}$ TERTIARY	

$R-O-N=O$ NITRITES	$R-N=O$ NITRO COMPOUNDS	$R-O-N=O$ NITRATES
-----------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------

#### NITRILES OR ALKYL CYANIDES

$H_3C-C \equiv N$ ACETONITRILE OR METHYL CYANIDE	$-C \equiv N$ NITRILE GROUP	$R-C \equiv N$ NITRILES
---	--------------------------------	----------------------------

#### ISONITRILES OR CARBYLAMINES

$H_3C-N=C$ METHYL ISOCYANIDE OR METHYL CARBYLAMINE	$-N=C$ CARBYLAMINE GROUP	$R-N=C$ CARBYLAMINES
---	-----------------------------	-------------------------

#### SULFUR COMPOUNDS

$H_3C-SH$ METHYL MERCAPTAN	$-SH$ MERCAPTAN GROUP	$R-SH$ MERCAPTANS
$H_3C-S-CH_3$ METHYL SULFIDE	$-S-$ THIO-ETHER GROUP	$R-S-R$ THIO-ETHERS
$R-S-S-R$ DISULFIDES	$R-S-M$ MERCAPTIDES	$R-COSH$ THIO-ACIDS
$R-S=O$ SULFOXIDES	$R-S(=O)_2$ SULFONES	$R-O-S(=O)_2$ SULFONIC ACIDS

#### METALLIC ALKYL COMPOUNDS

$Mg-C_2H_5$ MAGNESIUM ETHYL BROMIDE	$M-X$ $M$ = METALLIC ALKIDES	$Mg-Zn$ , etc.
$Zn-C_2H_5$ ZINC ETHYL	$M-X$ $M$ = METALLIC ALKIDES	

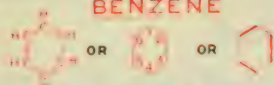


# ORGANIC TYPE FORMULAS

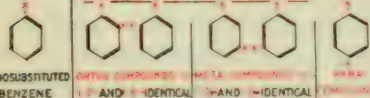
## AROMATIC SERIES

### COLUMN I

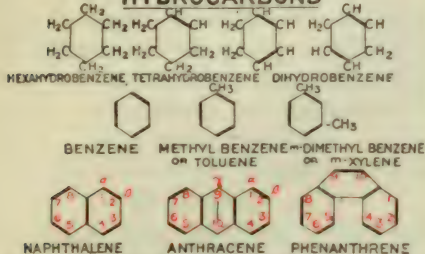
#### BENZENE



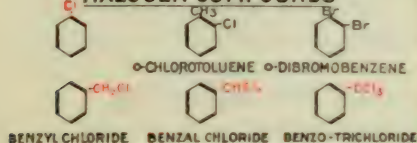
#### SUBSTITUTED BENZENES



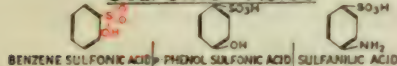
#### HYDROCARBONS



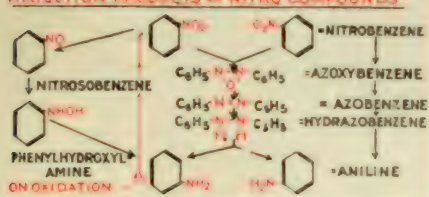
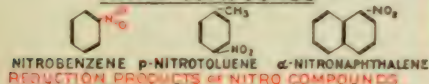
#### HALOGEN COMPOUNDS



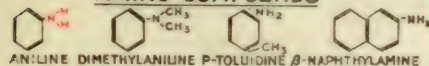
#### SULFONIC ACIDS



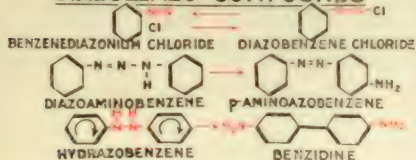
#### NITRO COMPOUNDS



#### AMINO COMPOUNDS



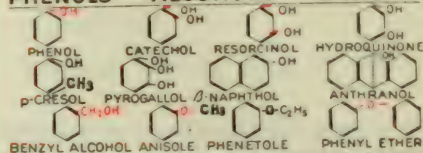
#### DIAZO AND AZO COMPOUNDS



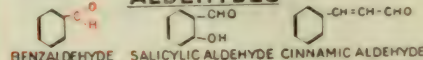
HEAVY LINES INDICATE DOUBLE BONDS.

### COLUMN II

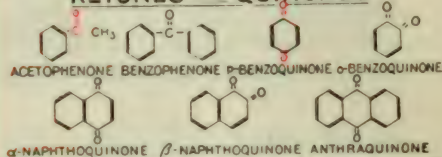
#### PHENOLS — ALCOHOLS — ETHERS



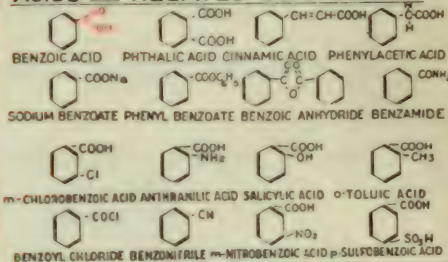
#### ALDEHYDES



#### KETONES AND QUINONES



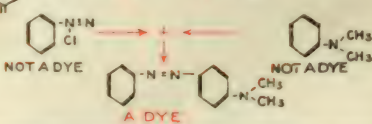
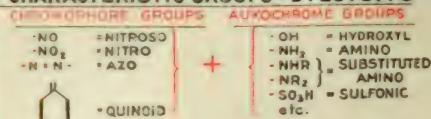
#### ACIDS AND RELATED COMPOUNDS



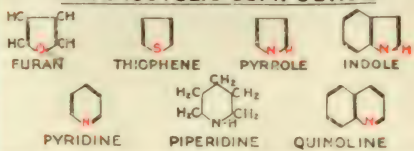
#### RULES FOR SUBSTITUTION

PRESENT IN POSITION 1	AL	Br	I	NO <sub>2</sub>	SO <sub>3</sub> H
AL	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)
Br	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)
I	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)
NO <sub>2</sub>	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)
SO <sub>3</sub> H	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)	4 (2)

#### CHARACTERISTIC GROUPS IN DYE STUFFS



#### HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS



LIGHT LINES INDICATE SINGLE BONDS





READING REFERENCES

- LOWRY—Historical Introduction to Chemistry. (1915), chap. 17 (The Rise of Organic Chemistry).
- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), Chap. 32 (Organic Chemistry).
- HENDRICK—Everyman's Chemistry. (1917), part 3 (Organic Chemistry).
- SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry.
- FINDLAY—Treasures of Coal Tar.
- STEWART—Chemistry and its Borderland. (1914), chap. 2 (The Allies of Chemistry among the Sciences); chap. 3 (The Relation between Chemistry and Industry); chap. 13 (Chemical Problems of the Present and Future).
- DUNCAN—The Chemistry of Commerce. (1907), chap. 9 (The Making of Medicines).
- KENDALL—Chemistry of the Thyroid Secretion. *Harvey Society Lectures*, 1920-21 (Lippincott), pp. 41-58.
- SLOSSON—The Story of Insulin. *World's Work*, Nov., 1923, pp. 87-95.
- RUSSELL—The A. B. C. of Atoms.
- MILLS—Within the Atom.
- FALK and NELSON—The Electron Conception of Valence. *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, **32**, 1637 (1910).
- LANGMUIR—Types of Valence. *Science*, **54**, 59 (1921).
- HARROW—Contemporary Science. (1921), pp. 23-33 (The Structure of Atoms and its Bearings on Chemical Valence—by Langmuir).
- NOYES—Valence. *Science*, **49**, 175 (1919).

## CHAPTER II

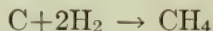
### SATURATED HYDROCARBONS OR PARAFFINS AND PETROLEUM

As its name implies, a hydrocarbon is a compound containing hydrogen and carbon.

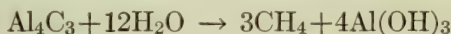
**Methane**,  $\text{CH}_4$ , is the simplest compound of the hydrocarbon group.

**Occurrence.**—The decomposition of vegetable and animal matter gives rise to this gas. One of the gases arising from marshes is methane, hence its name "marsh gas." It is also one of the gases produced in intestinal putrefaction. It forms a large percentage of the constituents found in natural gas (80 per cent and above) and coal gas (30–40 per cent). Fires and explosions in coal mines are mainly due to mixtures of methane and air.

**Preparation.**—Methane may be synthesized from its elements by passing hydrogen over carbon in presence of nickel (catalyst) at  $475^\circ$ .

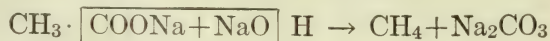


It may also be obtained by the action of water on certain carbides, such as aluminium carbide:



This reaction is of interest since it led Moissan, the French chemist, to speculate on the origin of natural gas. He held this to be due to the action of water on various metallic carbides. (It must be remembered that methane is not always the product formed when water acts on a carbide. The student will recall that water acts on calcium carbide, for example, to give acetylene.)

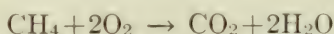
The laboratory method depends upon heating a mixture of fused sodium acetate and soda lime ( $\text{NaOH} + \text{CaO}$ ):





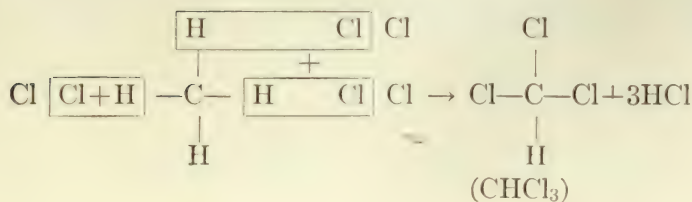
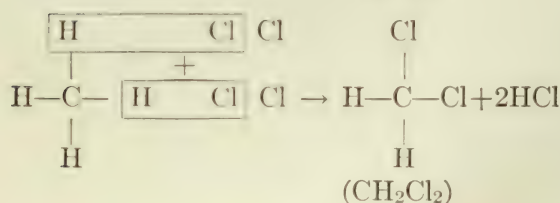
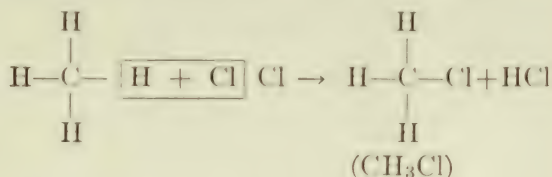
(The sodium acetate is the sodium salt of acetic acid,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOH}$ . The latter, in turn, may be regarded as methane,  $\text{CH}_4$ , having one of its hydrogens replaced by the  $\text{COOH}$  group, known as the "carboxyl" group. See p. 79.)

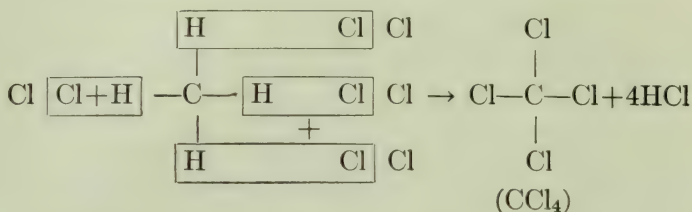
**Properties.**—It is a colorless gas with a slight odor, and burns with an almost non-luminous flame:



Methane has high fuel value. If mixed with air and ignited, it explodes; this explains many explosions in coal mines ("fire-damp").

The chemical properties of methane apply to the entire group of saturated hydrocarbons (p. 26) of which methane is the first member. Methane is an inactive and stable compound. (Methane and other hydrocarbons of this series are known as **paraffins**, which means "little affinity.") The common reagents, such as hydrochloric, nitric, sulfuric and chromic acids, and sodium and potassium hydroxides, do not react with it. On the other hand, the halogens, such as chlorine and bromine, react rather vigorously with methane, particularly in the presence of sunlight:





You will notice, in these examples, that the chlorine replaces the hydrogen in the molecule. Whenever an element or a group of elements replaces another element or group of elements in a compound, the process is known as "substitution." Such reactions are characteristic of saturated hydrocarbons.  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$  and  $\text{CCl}_4$  are chlorine substitution products of methane.

$\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$  = methyl chloride or monochloromethane;  
 ( $\text{CH}_3$  = methyl group) (monovalent).

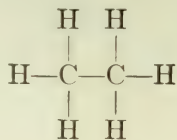
$\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  = methylene chloride or dichloromethane;  
 ( $\text{CH}_2$  = methylene group) (divalent);

$\text{CHCl}_3$  = trichloromethane or chloroform.

$\text{CCl}_4$  = tetrachloromethane or carbon tetrachloride.

(Many of these names need not be memorized. If the student will but remember that these compounds are substitution products of methane, he will have little difficulty in naming them. In  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ , for example, the compound may logically be regarded as methane in which one of the hydrogen atoms has been replaced by chlorine; hence the name "monochloromethane." But it must also be remembered that the  $\text{CH}_3$  group is known as a "methyl" group; hence also the name "methyl chloride.")

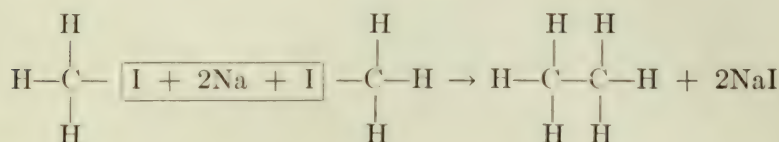
**Ethane**,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$ . This is the second member of the paraffin series, and in its general physical and chemical properties shows resemblances to methane. It is found in natural gas and petroleum. Its formula is represented by





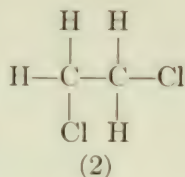
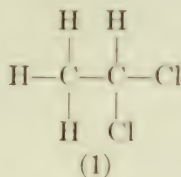
and it differs from methane by  $\text{CH}_2$ . It may be regarded as methane in which one of the hydrogens is replaced by a  $\text{CH}_3$  group; that is,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , methyl methane, or dimethyl.

Further light on the structure of ethane is shed by the way in which it can be synthesized. Methyl iodide reacts with sodium in the following way (*Wurtz synthesis*):



In other words, the formation of ethane is here shown to be a coupling of two methyl groups.

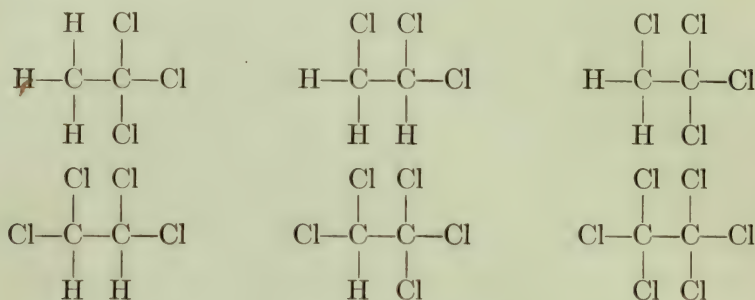
**Isomerism.**—Experience has shown that only one mono-substitution product of ethane can be obtained, but it is possible to obtain two di-substitution products, both having the same molecular formula,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{Cl}_2$ , but differing from one another in physical and chemical properties. Here we clearly have a case of isomerism, and the graphic formulas bear this out:



for in (1) we see two chlorine atoms attached to the same carbon atom, and in (2) the two chlorine atoms are attached to two different carbon atoms. Whenever we have two or more compounds having the same molecular formula, but differing in physical and chemical properties, we have an example of isomerism, and the individual compounds are known as isomers. (Let us illustrate this question of isomerism with an analogy. Suppose we take the figures 4, 7, 5. It obviously makes very much of a difference as to whether we write 475 or 754 or 547. Yet all we have done is to *rearrange* the figures; and by merely rearranging the numerals we have obtained *totally different* sums. So it may be with two compounds such as are illustrated above: they may have the same empirical formulas, yet be quite different sub-

stances because of the different *arrangement* of the atoms within the molecule.)

Experience has also shown that there are but two tri-, two tetra-, one penta-, and one hexa- substitution products of ethane; and the student can confirm this by studying the graphic formulas:



In naming substitution products of ethane, the system adopted for methane is used:

$\text{CH}_4$   
Methane

$\text{CH}_3$   
Methyl radical

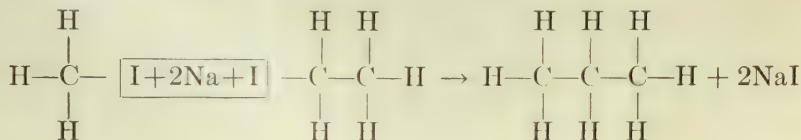
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$   
Ethane

$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$   
Ethyl radical

$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{I}$ , for example, is ethyl iodide, or iodoethane, and  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$  is ethyl hydroxide, or hydroxyethane.

(The name for the radical corresponding to the hydrocarbon is obtained by changing the suffix *-ane* into *-yl*.)

**Propane**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_8$ .—We have seen that ethane,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$ , may be regarded as methane,  $\text{CH}_4$ , to which  $\text{CH}_2$  has been added. Similarly, propane,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_8$ , may be regarded as ethane,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$ , to which  $\text{CH}_2$  has been added; or as  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  in which one of the hydrogens has been replaced by a  $\text{CH}_3$  group. Its structure becomes evident by examining its synthetic method of preparation. Ethyl iodide and methyl iodide react in the presence of sodium to form propane. The principle was made use of in the synthesis of ethane, and may be made use of in the synthesis of other hydrocarbons.

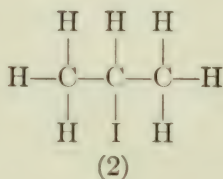
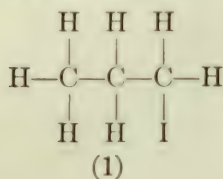




(Why may propane be called ethyl methane, or dimethyl methane, or methyl ethane, or methyl ethyl?)

(If  $C_3H_8$  is propane, what would its radical,  $C_3H_7$ , be called?)

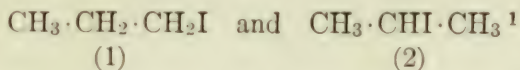
We pointed out that in ethane we have but one mono-substitution product and two di-substitution products, and we saw how the graphic formulas helped to explain these facts. When we come to propane, we find that two mono-substitution products are possible, one differing from the other in physical and chemical properties. Here again the graphic formulas are helpful in explaining experimental facts:



for it will be seen that in (1) the iodine atom is attached to a carbon atom, which in turn is attached to two hydrogen and one carbon atoms, whereas in (2) the iodine atom is attached to a carbon atom which in turn is attached to two carbon and one hydrogen atoms.

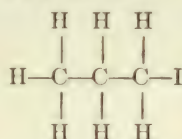
**Butanes,  $C_4H_{10}$ .**—Two butanes with this formula are known.

In the preceding paragraph we pointed out that there are two isomeric propyl iodides which, for convenience, we shall now write according to the "structural" or "constitutional" formulas.



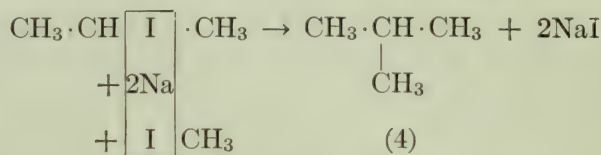
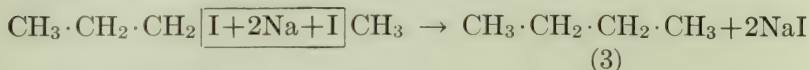
Now, it may be asked, what will happen if first (1) and then (2) are treated with methyl iodide in the presence of sodium? Are

<sup>1</sup> Periods are often used in place of bonds when writing structural or constitutional formulas, so that  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{I}$  really means  $\text{CH}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2\text{I}$ , which in turn indicates



As the student proceeds with his studies in organic chemistry, he will find it unnecessary to indicate either dots or dashes for at least some of the simpler types of compounds.

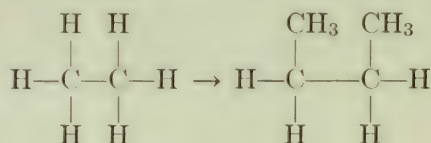
we going to get two identical compounds? This is hardly likely, since (1) and (2) are different. In reality, the two compounds obtained are different,—different in properties, but alike in having the same molecular formula,  $C_4H_{10}$ .



(3) and (4) are isomeric, (3) being known as normal ("straight-chain") or *n*-butane, and (4) as *iso*- ("branched-chain") butane.

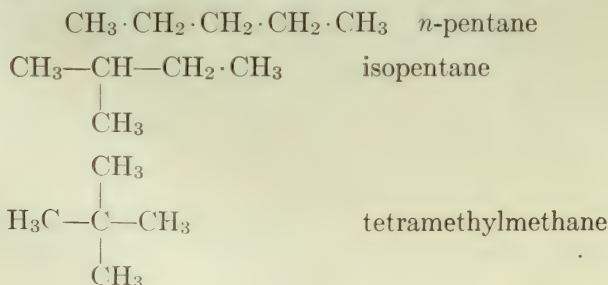
(Why may normal butane be given any one of the following names: methylpropane, ethylethane, diethyl, propylmethane and symmetrical dimethylethane? Why may isobutane also be called trimethylmethane and unsymmetrical dimethylethane?)

(If two of the hydrogens in ethane which are attached to two different carbon atoms are replaced by methyl groups, we get butane or symmetrical dimethylethane:



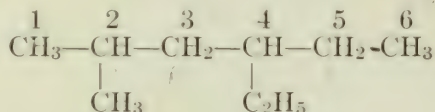
If, however, the two hydrogen atoms replaced by two methyl groups are on the same carbon atom, then we get isobutane, or unsymmetrical dimethylethane.)

**Pentanes,  $C_5H_{12}$ .**—Three pentanes are known:





**Nomenclature of Saturated Hydrocarbons.**—Select the longest chain of carbon atoms in the molecule and number the carbon atoms. Consider the side chains as substituents. For example,



2-methyl-4-ethyl hexane.

The table on page 26 includes a few normal hydrocarbons and the corresponding monovalent radicals.

From the table we conclude the following:

1. Every hydrocarbon in this series is saturated (single bonds).
2. The name of each hydrocarbon ends in *ane*.
3. The hydrocarbons from  $\text{CH}_4$  to  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}$  are gases, from  $\text{C}_5$  to  $\text{C}_{16}$ , liquids at ordinary temperatures, and from  $\text{C}_{17}$ , solids.
4. The melting- and boiling-points increase with the increase in molecular weight.
5. The difference between any two consecutive members in this series is  $\text{CH}_2$ .

(Whenever we have a series of compounds where the difference between any two consecutive members is  $\text{CH}_2$ , we get what is known as a **homologous** series. The word "homologue" signifies "a member of the series." Homologous series are frequently met with in organic chemistry, and we shall refer to them repeatedly. The great value in the study of these homologous series lies in the fact that members of such a series are really members of the same family, and, therefore, show strong family resemblances; or, to speak in terms of chemistry, strong chemical resemblances. This does not mean that the members of an homologous series are exactly alike chemically; but it does mean that they have certain common characteristics which distinguish them from other classes of compounds.)

6. Their type formula may be represented algebraically by  $\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+2}$ .

7. The names of the radicals end in "yl," the suffix "ane" of the hydrocarbon being changed to "yl" (methane  $\rightarrow$  methyl).

8. The type formula for radicals is  $\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+1}$  (monovalent.)

9. The paraffins are known as "alkanes"; hence the group is

## PARAFFIN SERIES \*

Formula	Name	Boiling-Point	Melting-Point	Name of Mono-valent Radical	Formula of Radical
$\text{CH}_4$	Methane	-164	-184	Methyl	$\text{CH}_3$
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$	Ethane	- 89.3	-172	Ethyl	$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$
$\text{C}_3\text{H}_8$	Propane	- 44.1	...	Propyl	$\text{C}_3\text{H}_7$
$\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}$	Butane	- 0.1	-135	Butyl	$\text{C}_4\text{H}_9$
$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{12}$	Pentane	+ 36.3	-130	Amyl or Pentyl	$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}$
$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{14}$	Hexane	+ 68.9	- 94	Hexyl	$\text{C}_6\text{H}_{13}$
$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{16}$	Heptane	+ 98.2	- 97	Heptyl	$\text{C}_7\text{H}_{15}$
$\text{C}_8\text{H}_{18}$	Octane	+125.8	- 56	Octyl	$\text{C}_8\text{H}_{17}$
$\text{C}_9\text{H}_{20}$	Nonane	+149.5	- 51	Nonyl	$\text{C}_9\text{H}_{19}$
$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{22}$	Decane	+173	- 32	Decyl	$\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{21}$
$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{24}$	Undecane	+194.5	- 26.5	Undecyl	$\text{C}_{11}\text{H}_{23}$
$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{26}$	Dodecane	+214.5	- 12	Dodecyl	$\text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{25}$
$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{28}$	Tridecane	+234	- 6.2	Tridecyl	$\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_{27}$
$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{30}$	Tetradecane	+252.5	+ 5.5	Tetradecyl	$\text{C}_{14}\text{H}_{29}$
$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{32}$	Pentadecane	+270.5	+ 10	Pentadecyl	$\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31}$
$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{34}$	Hexadecane	+287.5	+ 19	Hexadecyl	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}$
$\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{36}$	Heptadecane	+303	+ 22.5	Heptadecyl	$\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}$
.	.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.	.
$\text{C}_{60}\text{H}_{122}$	Hexacontane	....	+101	Hexacontyl	$\text{C}_{60}\text{H}_{121}$
.	.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.	.
.	.	.	.	.	.
$\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+2}$	Alkane	....	....	Alkyl	$\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+1}$

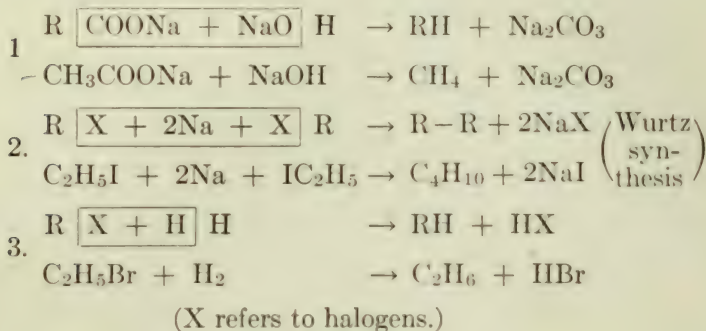
\* A fairly complete table is given at this point to illustrate to what extent a series has been investigated. In the other portions of the book where tables will be given, only the first few members of a series will be included.



spoken of as an "alkyl group." The alkyl group is represented by the letter "R."

Lower members have anesthetic properties while the higher ones beginning with  $C_{12}$  have no physiological effects.

#### General Methods of Preparation.



**General Properties.**—The paraffins are insoluble in, and lighter than water, and soluble in alcohol, ether, chloroform, benzene, etc. As a rule, their odor is rather pleasant. They are flammable.

**General Chemical Properties.**—All the paraffins are very stable and inactive. At ordinary temperature they are not acted upon by nitric, sulfuric, hydrochloric or chromic acids, or sodium hydroxide. Chlorine reacts in sunlight to form substitution products. Bromine reacts less readily. Iodine does not react at all. (The student will be puzzled at this point to explain how the various iodide compounds used in the *Wurtz* synthesis for paraffins are prepared. We must refer him to the chapters on unsaturated hydrocarbons—p. 33—and alcohols—p. 56—for an answer.)

**Petroleum or Crude Oil.**—The history of the development of the petroleum industry in the United States is instructive. The Indians in Western Pennsylvania first discovered oil floating on surface waters. By them it was used as a remedy for all physical ills. In the middle of the last century, it occurred to a Colonel Drake that, since oil came to the surface of springs, it was probably present in much larger quantities beneath the earth's surface. He thereupon proceeded to drill a well near Oil Creek, Pa. and, before he had dug 100 feet, oil came to the surface in such quantities that all of it could not be collected.

The industrial importance of petroleum is recognized the world over. Coal alone takes precedence over it as a fuel. It is largely, though not entirely, made up of hydrocarbons, but not all the hydrocarbons belong to the paraffin series—the series we have studied in the present chapter. Some of them belong to a type of hydrocarbons with which we shall become acquainted in the next chapter.

Petroleum is found in many parts of the world, but more particularly in the United States (Pennsylvania, California and Texas), Mexico, Russia (the Baku region), Roumania and Persia. The natural product is usually dark in color, with a characteristic odor, and with a specific gravity that is usually, but not always, less than water. It may be regarded as a mixture of substances, mostly hydrocarbons.

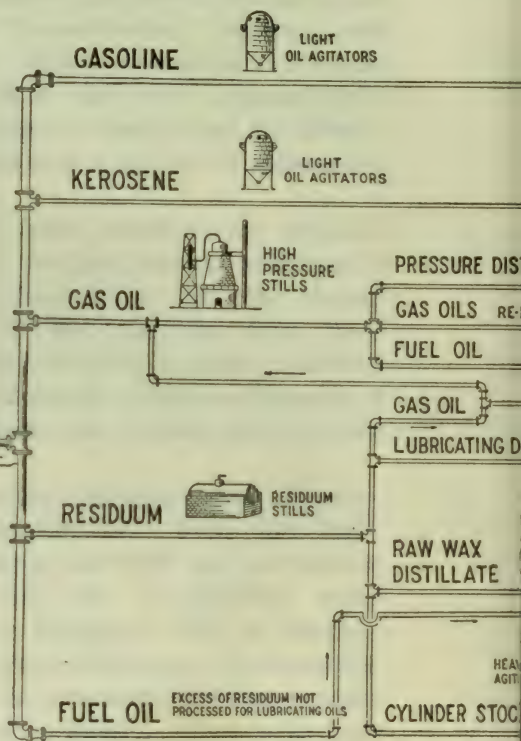
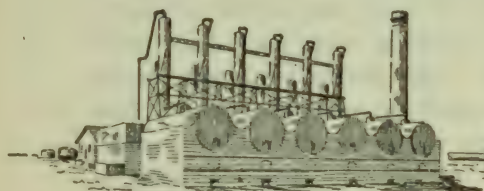
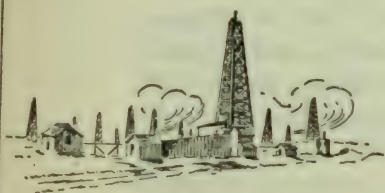
The various products derived from petroleum are obtained by means of fractional distillation, the first fraction consisting of products which pass into the distillate below  $150^{\circ}$ , the second, those that pass over between  $150^{\circ}$ – $300^{\circ}$ , and the third, those which pass over above  $300^{\circ}$ . Each fraction is again redistilled and divided into more fractions, ultimately yielding substances of commercial value. In many refineries the division into fractions is based on specific gravity.

The light oils (up to  $150^{\circ}$ ) include petroleum ether, benzine, gasoline and ligroin; the illuminating oils (from  $150^{\circ}$ – $300^{\circ}$ ) include kerosene; and the lubricating oils ( $300^{\circ}$  and up) include spindle, machine and cylinder oils, etc. In addition, many products of commercial value are obtained, such as vaseline, paraffin, etc.; and the tar residue in the still is used in road-making, artificial asphalt, roofing, etc. If the temperature is high enough, petroleum coke in the place of tar is formed. Due to its high purity, this coke finds extensive use in the manufacture of electrodes.

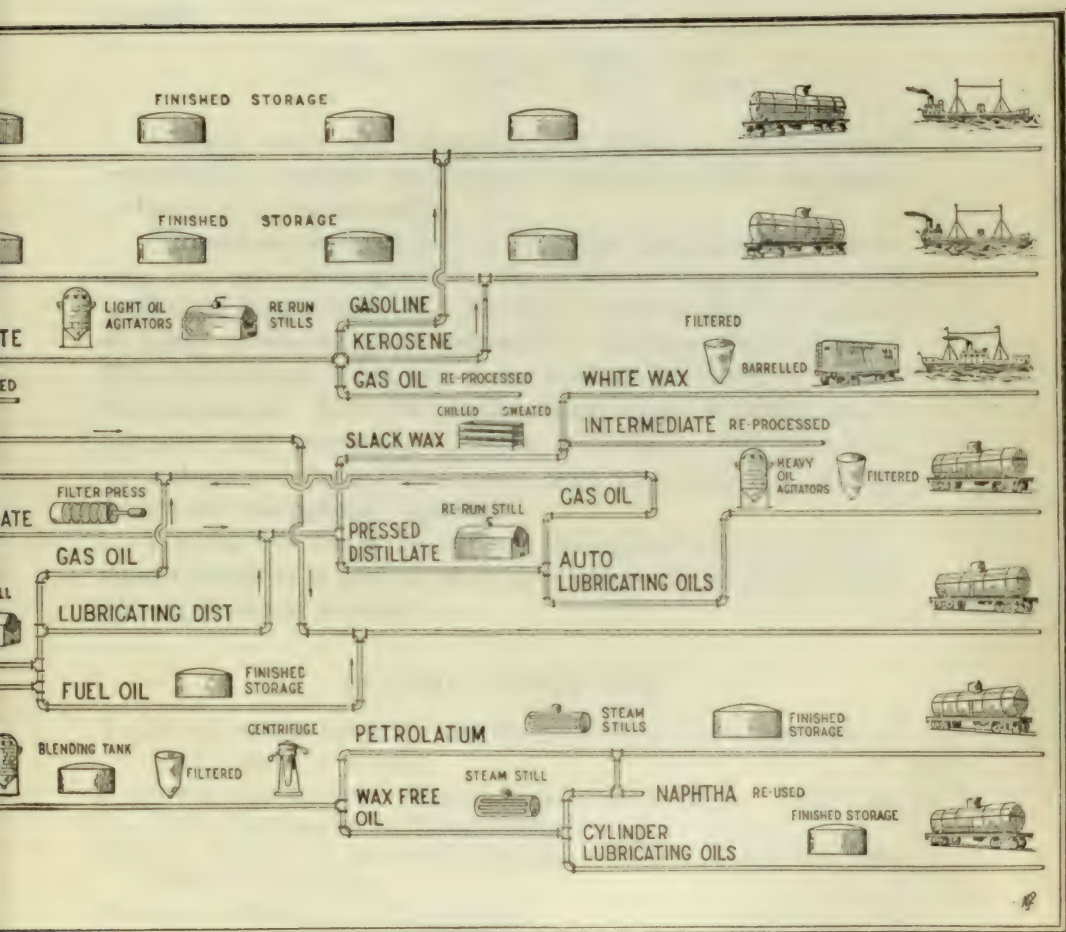
Commercially, the most important product obtained from petroleum is gasoline, a mixture of hydrocarbons of relatively low molecular weight, such as pentane, hexane, heptane, etc. The process of purification consists of treating the gasoline with sulfuric acid—incidentally one of the most important uses for this acid—whereby many objectionable impurities are removed; the sulfuric acid in turn being removed by washing with water and subsequently with sodium hydroxide solution.









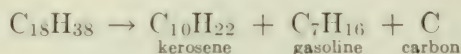


[To face page 29]





By a careful study of the physico-chemical reactions involved (such as temperature and pressure), American chemists have developed methods of increasing the yield of gasoline. The "cracking" process, used so extensively to-day, consists in breaking up the more complex into the simpler hydrocarbons; for example,



Albolene, nujol and petrolatum are petroleum products used extensively in medicine as intestinal lubricants, and, in pharmacy, as bases for ointments, salves, etc.

(Times have changed, indeed. Less than thirty years ago, kerosene cost more than gasoline; the latter, in fact, was regarded little more than a nuisance. To-day it would be hard to conceive of many substances more valuable in commerce than gasoline. Wherever minute quantities of the fuel can be found, it is carefully extracted. Even the small amount found in natural gas is extracted and recovered. Gasoline obtained in this way from natural gas and the gas that comes from a producing oil well are known as "casinghead" gasoline.)

The chart facing p. 29 outlines the salient features of petroleum refining at a typical plant and names the important commercial products obtained.

#### READING REFERENCES

- TILDEN—Chemical Invention and Discovery in the Twentieth Century (1916), chap. 14. (Petrol).
- CALDWELL AND SLOSSON—Science Remaking the World. (1923), pp. 12-47 (Gasoline as the World Power).
- ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 588-633 (The Petroleum Industry).
- WESTCOTT—Handbook of Natural Gas.
- BELL—American Petroleum Refining.
- BACON AND HAMOR—American Fuels, Vol. II, Chapter XIII on Natural Gas.

A four-reel motion picture "The Story of Petroleum" can be secured, free of charge, from the Bureau of Mines, Pittsburgh, Pa.

### CHAPTER III

#### UNSATURATED HYDROCARBONS OR OLEFINS AND ACETYLENES

So far we have been dealing with hydrocarbons that are saturated. When bromine comes in contact with a hydrocarbon of the methane series,  $C_nH_{2n+2}$ , it can enter the compound by substitution only, not by addition; that is, by eliminating one or more hydrogen atoms from the molecule and substituting other atoms, but not by adding an outside atom without any elimination. In this chapter we take up two series of unsaturated compounds, where, as we shall see, atoms can enter the molecule without others leaving it. One series is known as the **olefins**,  $C_nH_{2n}$ , characterized by



and the other, the **acetylenes**,  $C_nH_{2n-2}$ , characterized by



(The student must not draw the conclusion that because there is more than one bond between two atoms, the union between such atoms is correspondingly stronger. On the contrary, since bonds represent strains, the greater the number of bonds between any two carbon atoms, the greater the strain, and hence the greater the chemical reactivity of the compound; so that ethylene is more reactive than ethane and acetylene more than ethylene.)<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The instructor may illustrate these "strains" by the use of *Kekulé* models.



OLEFIN SERIES,  $C_nH_{2n}$ —ALKENES

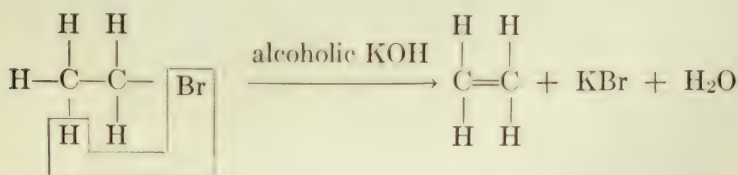
$CH_2$ (hypothetical)	Methylene
$C_2H_4$	Ethylene or ethene
$C_3H_6$	Propylene or propene
$C_4H_8$	Butylene or butene
$C_5H_{10}$	Amylene
etc. (Compare with the paraffins, p. 26.)	

These compounds constitute an homologous series, just as the paraffins, for there is the same difference between any two consecutive members— $CH_2$ ; but it will be noticed that the corresponding olefins have two hydrogen atoms less than the paraffins. The simplest known member of the olefin series, ethylene, combines with chlorine to form an oil ( $C_2H_4Cl_2$ ); hence the name **olefin** ("oil-forming").

In naming these compounds, we change the ending *ane* of the paraffin containing the same number of carbon atoms into *ylene* or *ene*; e.g.,  $C_2H_6$  (ethane)— $C_2H_4$  (ethylene or ethene).

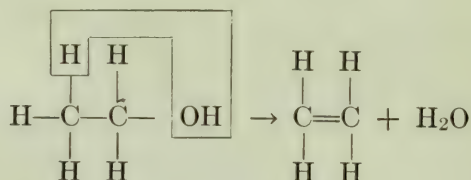
We shall describe one member of this series, ethylene, in some detail, and the general characteristics of the other members can be gleaned from a study of this one.

**Preparation of Ethylene,  $C_2H_4$ .**—One method is by the action of an alcoholic solution of sodium or potassium hydroxide on ethyl bromide, a method of preparation that gives us an insight into the structure of the compound:



If, instead of using an alcoholic solution of sodium or potassium hydroxide, we use an aqueous solution, ethyl alcohol,  $C_2H_5OH$ , is produced (p. 53).

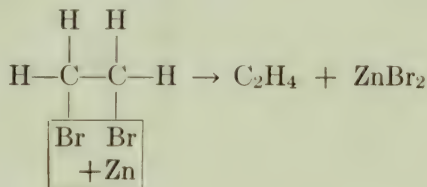
Another is to treat ethyl alcohol with a strong dehydrating agent, such as  $P_2O_5$  or  $H_2SO_4$ .



(An alcohol contains an OH group; see p. 48.)

(The ethylene used during the late war in the preparation of mustard gas (p. 184) was prepared by passing the vapor of ethyl alcohol over clay balls heated to 350–400°.)

Also, by the action of sodium or zinc on ethylene bromide (dibromoethane):

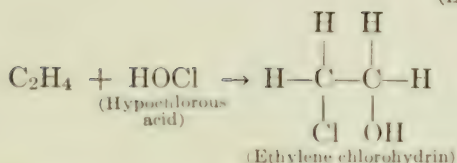
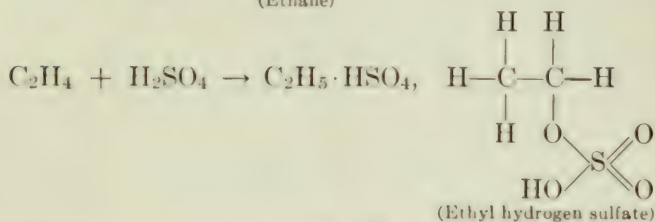
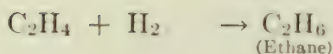
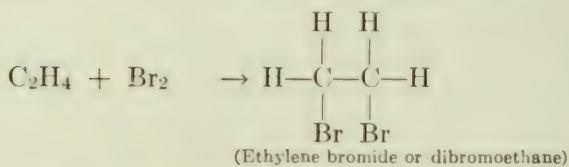
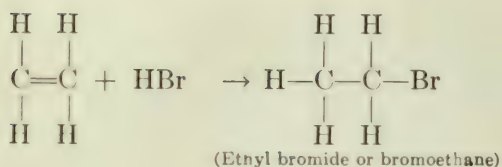


( $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{Br}_2$  may be regarded as ethylene,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4$ , to which two bromine atoms have been added; or ethane, in which two of the hydrogens attached to different carbon atoms are replaced by bromine.)

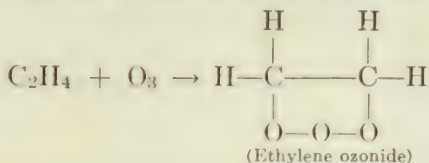
**Properties.**—Ethylene is a colorless gas with a sweetish odor. It burns with a smoky, luminous flame, and forms explosive mixtures with air. It is present in coal gas to the extent of 4–6 per cent, and is partially responsible for its luminosity. It is produced, therefore, in the destructive distillation of coal. Recently, Dr. Luckhardt, of the University of Chicago, has shown that ethylene is a powerful anesthetic and has even some advantages over nitrous oxide. Within the past year ethylene has also been introduced in California for coloring mature citrus fruits (oranges, lemons, etc.).

The characteristic properties of ethylene are dependent upon the presence of a double bond, and therefore upon its unsaturated character. It combines with halogen acids, with halogens, with hydrogen, with sulfuric acid, with hypochlorous acid, with ozone, etc.:

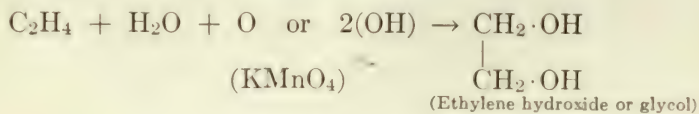




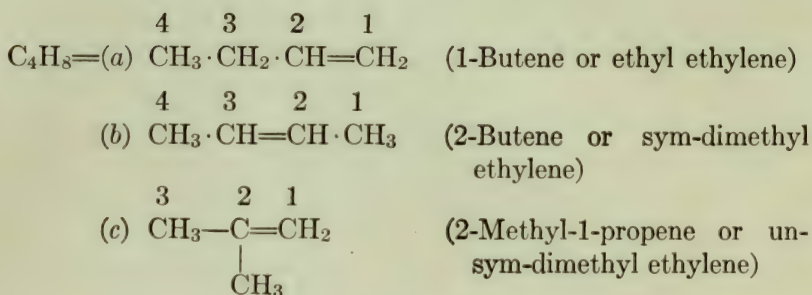
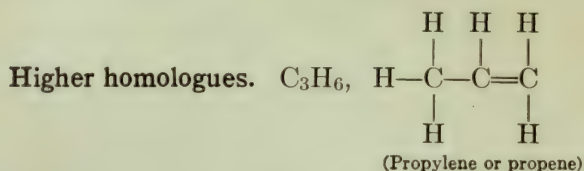
(Whenever a compound has a halogen atom attached to a carbon atom, and an OH group to another carbon atom, we speak of it as a "halohydrin"; hence chlorohydrin, as in the above.)



A test sometimes used for the detection of the double bond is based on the action of very dilute potassium permanganate; the violet color of the permanganate disappears, due to its decomposition. The reaction may be represented thus:



(The student must clearly understand that  $C_2H_4$  alone represents the gas ethylene, but  $C_2H_4$  may be present as a divalent group in a compound;—for example, ethylene bromide,  $C_2H_4Br_2$ .)



(In naming an olefin, a number is employed to indicate the position of the double bond; this number denotes the unsaturated carbon atom which lies nearest to the end of the chain.)

Sometimes the Greek letter  $\Delta$  is used to denote the double bond, so that (a), (b) and (c) may also be written  $\Delta^1$ -Butene;  $\Delta^2$ -Butene; 2-Methyl- $\Delta^1$ -propene. (The methods of preparation and properties are analogous to those given for ethylene.)

#### ACETYLENE SERIES— $C_nH_{2n-2}$ —ALKINES

$C_2H_2$  Acetylene or ethine  
 $C_3H_4$  Propine or methyl acetylene  
 $C_4H_6$  Butine or dimethyl acetylene or ethyl acetylene  
 etc.

These also constitute a homologous series. The members contain two hydrogen atoms less than the corresponding members of the olefins, or four hydrogen atoms less than the corresponding paraffins. They are named by changing the *ane* ending of the paraffins into *ine*, so that ethane,  $C_2H_6$ , for example, becomes

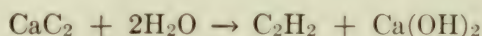


ethine,  $C_2H_2$ . This series is known as the **acetylene** series, for acetylene is the most important member.

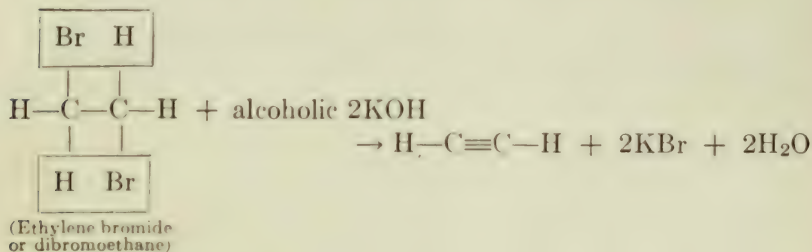
As before, we shall discuss a typical member in some detail.

**Acetylene**,  $C_2H_2$ , has the formula  $H-C\equiv C-H$ , which shows it to have a triple bond and therefore indicates that it is even more unsaturated than ethylene,<sup>1</sup> a view which is confirmed by a study of its reactions. Acetylene is an extremely reactive compound.

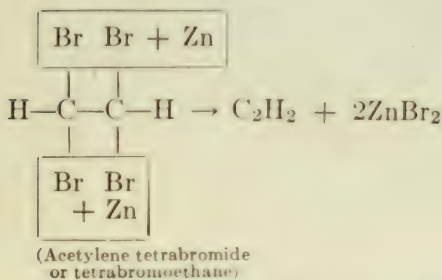
**Preparation.**—One method is probably already familiar to the student. It is the action of water on calcium carbide:



Another is similar to a method used under the olefins:



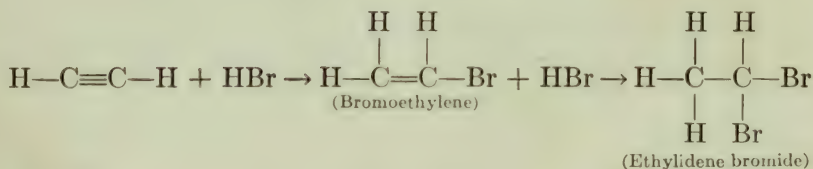
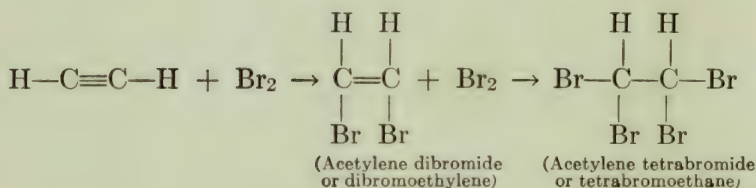
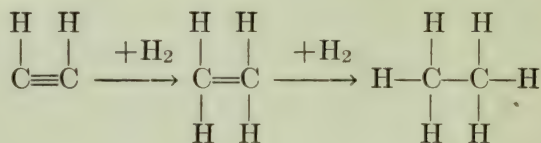
So is the following:



Acetylene is a colorless gas. When mixed with air in a special type of burner, it burns with a very brilliant white light and is used for illuminating purposes. When burned it gives out a large amount of heat. This is made use of in the oxy-acetylene torch (for cutting steel, etc.) wherein acetylene, supplied under pressure, is burned in the presence of oxygen. The gas is apt to explode if stored under pressure, but can be safely handled if it is first dissolved in acetone (as in "prestolite" tanks). Liquid acetylene is highly unstable and highly explosive.

<sup>1</sup> The instructor may illustrate this by the use of the *Kekulé* models.

**Properties.**—Since acetylene is an unsaturated compound, it will form addition products (like ethylene), but since it is more unsaturated than ethylene, it can add to itself more atoms than  $C_2H_4$ .



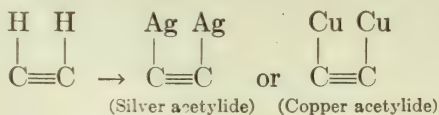
( $\text{CH}_2\text{Br} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ , ethylene bromide, or symmetrical dibromoethane, is isomeric with  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHBr}_2$ , ethyldene bromide, or unsymmetrical dibromoethane.)

When acetylene is passed over finely divided nickel, three molecules of it polymerize to form benzene:



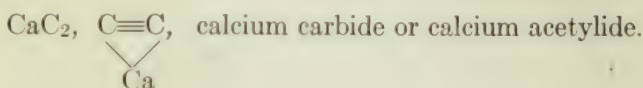
(**Polymers** are substances having the same percentage composition, but different molecular weights.  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2$  and  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$  have the same percentage of carbon and of hydrogen, but the molecular weight of acetylene is 26 and that of benzene is 78.)

Acetylene combines with ammoniacal silver chloride or copper chloride solution to form metallic derivatives (acetylides):

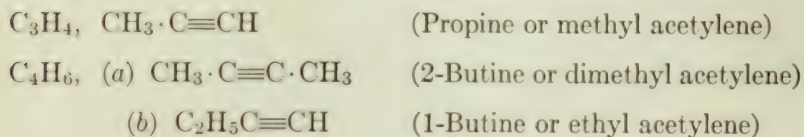




Many of them are highly unstable and explosive, particularly in the dry state. In fact, many of the explosions involving acetylene are due to the formation of these acetylides.



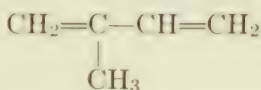
*Higher homologues.*



(The general properties correspond to those of acetylene, except that only the compounds with the structure  $\text{—C}\equiv\text{C—H}$  can form acetylides.)

(At this point review the nomenclature of hydrocarbons on the "Organic Type Formula" chart, p. 16.)

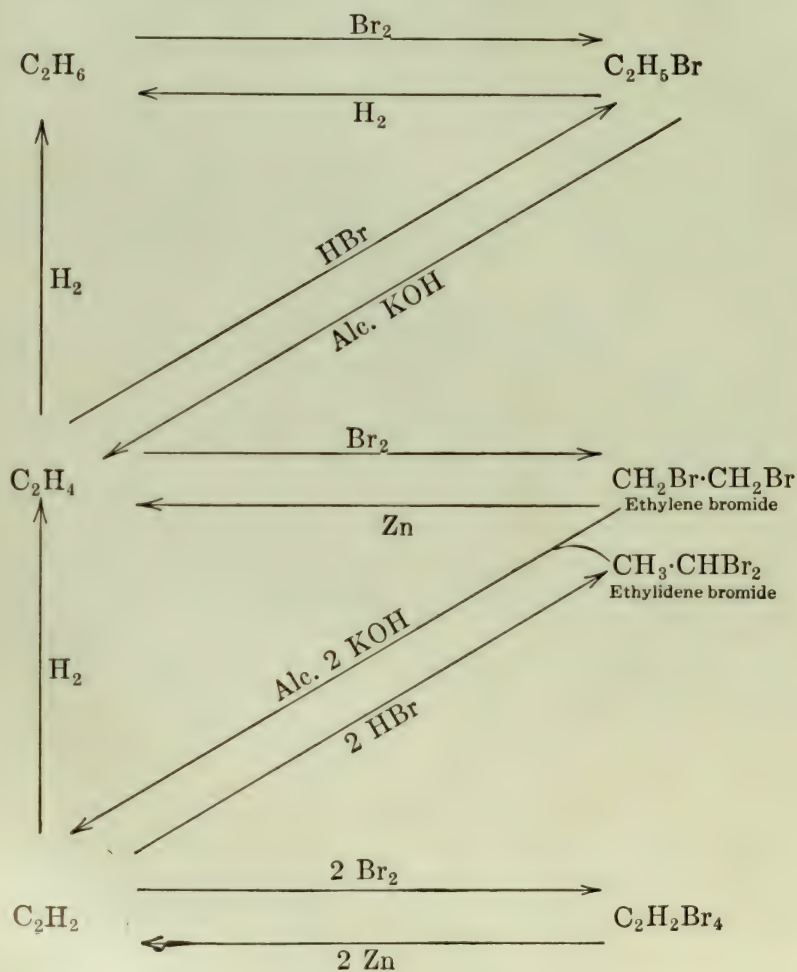
Compounds containing two double bonds are isomeric with those containing one triple bond; for example,  $\text{CH}_3\text{—C}\equiv\text{CH}$  is isomeric with  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$ . The name of a compound having one double bond ends in *ene*; a compound having two double bonds has the ending *diene*, e.g.,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{C}=\text{CH}_2$  is propadiene. The most important among the compounds containing two double bonds is **isoprene**



or 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene, which has been shown to be one of the decomposition products of caoutchouc (natural rubber), and which is obtained by the distillation of the latter. Isoprene itself (in presence of catalysts, as HCl, Na, etc.) has been polymerized back into a substance resembling caoutchouc, the resulting product showing some striking resemblances to natural rubber. The synthesis of rubber on an industrial scale, however, is a problem that still awaits solution. There seems to be little doubt in the minds of chemists that isoprene, or some substance closely analo-

gous to it in structure, will prove to be the starting-point of such a synthesis.

The diagram below makes clear some of the interconnections of compounds already discussed:





## READING REFERENCES

- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), chap. 25 (Rubber).
- SADTLER—Chemistry of Familiar Things. (1915), chap. 20 (Rubber).
- SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry. (1920), chap. 8 (The Race for Rubber).
- PORRITT—The Chemistry of Rubber.
- ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 827-850 (Rubber and Allied Gums).
- POND—A Review of the Pioneer Work on the Synthesis of Rubber. *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, **36**, 165 (1914).
- BROWN—Forest Products. (1919), chap. 19 (Rubber).
- ANON—Ethylene as Anesthetic. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, March 17, 1923, p. 765; May 19, 1923, p. 1440.

## CHAPTER IV

### HALOGEN DERIVATIVES OF HYDROCARBONS

WE have already observed that the action of chlorine on methane gives us the following substitution products:  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ ,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$ ,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ ,  $\text{CCl}_4$  (p. 19). It ought to be possible to prepare any one of these substances by employing the proper amount of chlorine. (Bromine is less reactive than chlorine. It produces analogous substitution products. Iodine does not react with methane.) It is found in practice, however, that a series of simultaneous reactions occur, yielding a mixture of chlorides. (Mention may be made at this point of the many attempts to produce chloroform,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ , on a commercial scale by the action of chlorine on methane; and also of methyl chloride,  $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$ , by a similar reaction. Methyl chloride can be easily hydrolyzed to methanol or wood alcohol,  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , and thus the synthetic methanol could then be prepared starting from natural gas, which contains methane. Research is being carried on at the present time along these lines.)

**Monohalogen Derivatives of the Paraffins.**—An alkyl halide (or monohalogen derivative of a hydrocarbon, p. 43), may be regarded as a saturated hydrocarbon in which one of the hydrogens is replaced by a halogen (F, Cl, Br, I). The following will make this clear:

$\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+2}$	$\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+1}$ Group	$\text{C}_n\text{H}_{2n+1}\text{X}$ (alkyl halide)
Methane, $\text{CH}_4$	Methyl Group, $\text{CH}_3$	Methyl chloride, $\text{CH}_3\text{Cl}$
Ethane, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$	Ethyl Group, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$	Ethyl bromide, $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$
etc.	etc.	etc.
Alkane, $\text{RH}$	Alkyl Group, $\text{R}$	Alkyl halide, $\text{RX}$

( $\text{RX}$  is the type formula for an alkyl halide.)



## ALKYL HALIDES

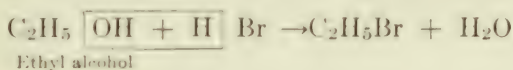
Chloride	For- mula	B. P. ° C.	Bromide	For- mula	B. P. ° C.	Iodide	For- mula	B.P. ° C.
Methyl	CH <sub>3</sub> Cl	-24	Methyl	CH <sub>3</sub> Br	4.5	Methyl	CH <sub>3</sub> I	43
Ethyl	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> Cl	12.5	Ethyl	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> Br	38.4	Ethyl	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> I	72
Propyl	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> Cl	46.5	Propyl	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> Br	71	Propyl	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> I	102
Isopropyl	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> Cl	36.5	Isopropyl	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> Br	59	Isopropyl	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> I	89
n-Butyl *	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> Cl	77.5	n-Butyl	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> Br	101	n-Butyl	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> I	129
etc.			etc.			etc.		

\* n- is the abbreviation for "normal."

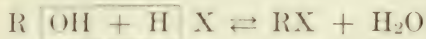
In each group the specific gravities decrease as the molecular weights increase. The specific gravity increases as we pass from a certain alkyl chloride to the bromide and in turn to the iodide having the same alkyl group.

These halides are insoluble in water but soluble in ether, benzene and alcohol. The halides are generally colorless liquids with a pleasant odor. On standing, they develop color (this is especially true of the iodides), due to decomposition, and are generally kept in amber-colored bottles.

**General Methods of Preparation.**—By the action of a halogen acid on an alcohol in presence of a dehydrating agent. (An alcohol contains the —OH group. Examples of alcohols are C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>OH, ethyl alcohol, C<sub>3</sub>H<sub>7</sub>OH, propyl alcohol, and in general ROH.)



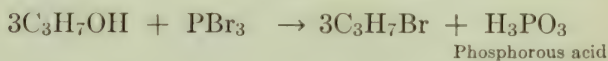
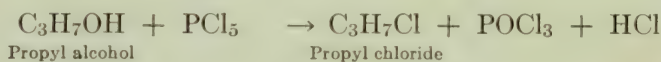
Or, more generally,



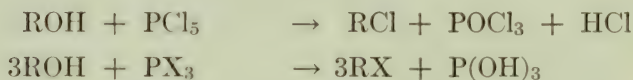
(Whenever throughout the text "R" is used in an equation, it implies that the reaction is a general one; or, in other words, is a "type" reaction. This does not necessarily imply that where specific examples are given, they cannot illustrate general type reactions. As a matter of fact, in most cases the specific examples do illustrate type reactions.)

This reaction is analogous to the "neutralization" reaction in inorganic chemistry, such as  $\text{Na} \boxed{\text{OH} + \text{H}} \text{Cl} \rightarrow \text{NaCl} + \text{H}_2\text{O}$ . However, the production of  $\text{NaCl}$  is an instantaneous reaction, whereas the formation of  $\text{RX}$  is a comparatively slow process; and in the production of  $\text{RX}$  we must have a dehydrating agent present to remove the water as fast as it is formed, otherwise the reaction is reversible.

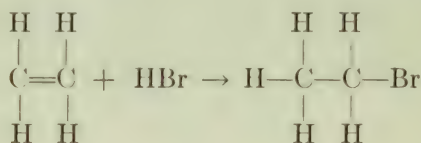
Another method is the action of a phosphorus halogen compound on an alcohol; e.g.,



or



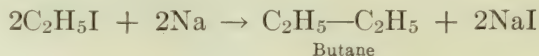
A third method consists in the addition of halogen acids to unsaturated compounds; e.g.,



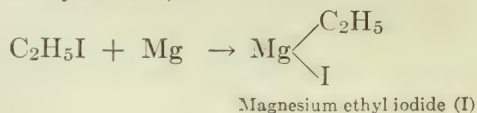
or



**Properties.**—The halogen compounds react with many reagents to form diverse products. The following are examples of a number of type reactions:

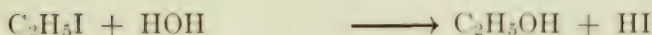
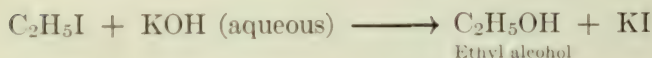


(The Wurtz Synthesis.)





Compounds of type (I) are known as *Grignard's reagent*, the general type formula being  $R \cdot Mg \cdot X$ .



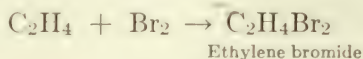
(At this stage the student is not expected to memorize these equations, but rather, by examining them, to understand why the halides find such extensive applications.)

(Many of the reactions illustrated are of the "double decomposition" type.)

**Methyl chloride**,  $CH_3Cl$ , and **Ethyl chloride**,  $C_2H_5Cl$ , are used as local anesthetics, for when sprayed upon the skin the liquids evaporate rapidly, thereby cooling the tissue. To some extent they are used for refrigerating purposes. **Ethyl bromide**,  $C_2H_5Br$ , has also been used as an anesthetic.



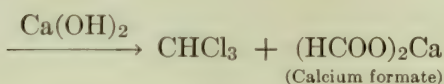
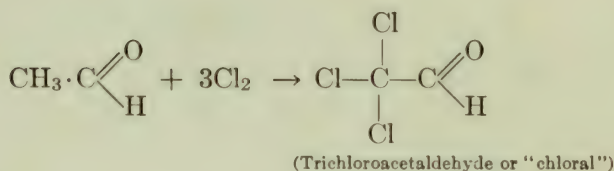
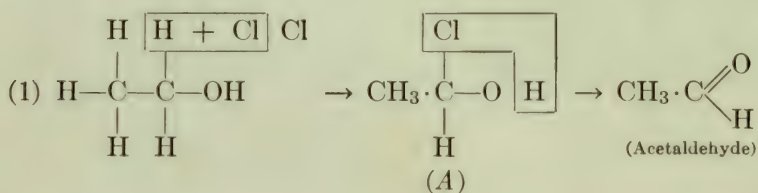
*Dihalogen Derivatives of the Paraffins.*—These have the general formula  $C_nH_{2n}X_2$  ( $C_2H_4Br_2$ , dibromoethane, and  $C_3H_6Cl_2$ , dichloropropane, are examples). They are usually prepared by the addition of a halogen to an unsaturated hydrocarbon:



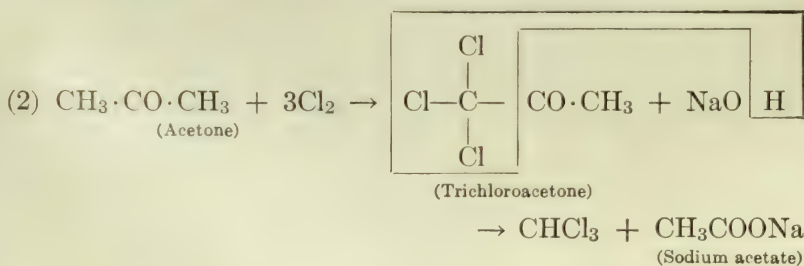
( $\text{CH}_2\text{I}_2$  is of interest since it is the heaviest organic liquid, its specific gravity being 3.292 at  $18^\circ$ .)

*Trihalogen Derivatives of the Paraffins.*—The important compounds of this type are chloroform,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ , bromoform,  $\text{CHBr}_3$ , and iodoform,  $\text{CHI}_3$ .

**Chloroform**,  $\text{CHCl}_3$ , is prepared by the action of chlorine (in the form of bleaching powder) on (1) ethyl alcohol or (2) acetone.



(A) represents a hypothetical compound, or at least one which has not so far been isolated. Its instability, it would seem, is due to the Cl and OH groups being attached to the same carbon atom. The type formula for an aldehyde is  $\text{R}-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \text{H} \end{array}$ . We shall discuss these aldehydes later, p. 67.

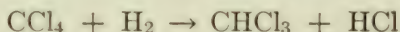




Acetone is the simplest of the group of compounds known as "ketones." Their type formula is  $R \cdot CO \cdot R$  (p. 67).

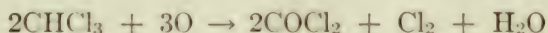
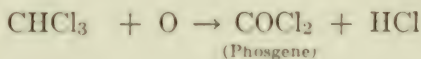
In practice the necessary chlorine is obtained by the use of bleaching powder.

Chloroform is now made on a large scale by the reduction of  $CCl_4$ :



Chloroform (trichloromethane) is a colorless liquid with a sweet taste and suffocating odor. Its b.p. is  $61^\circ$ . It is slightly soluble in water. It is non-flammable. Its anesthetic properties were discovered by Dr. Simpson of Edinburgh, in 1848.

Chloroform has a tendency to decompose when exposed to air and light:



To prevent this, ethyl alcohol (to the extent of about 1 per cent) is added to it.

Pure  $CHCl_3$  does not react with silver nitrate, but, if any decomposition has occurred, a precipitate of  $AgCl$  forms.

( $CHCl_3$  alone is now rarely used as an anesthetic, for ether has largely taken its place. Sometimes a mixture of ether and chloroform is used. The advantage of ether over chloroform is that it is less dangerous and the after-effects are not so pronounced.)

Acetone and chloroform combine to form **chloretone**,  $(CH_3)_2C(OH) \cdot CCl_3$ , used extensively as a hypnotic, anodyne and preservative. Chloroform combines with concentrated nitric acid to form **chloropicrin**, or nitrochloroform, a substance that was used in the late war as a lachrymator ("tear gas"):



When prepared on a large scale, the chloropicrin is made by the action of bleaching powder on picric acid (p. 263).

Chloroform is sometimes used as a "preservative" for the prevention of bacterial growth, though for most purposes toluene has largely taken its place. Chloroform is an excellent solvent for many organic compounds. It dissolves fats, rubber, etc.

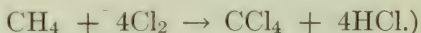
**Bromoform**,  $\text{CHBr}_3$ , is prepared in a manner quite analogous to chloroform. Its anesthetic properties are less marked.

**Iodoform** (triiodomethane),  $\text{CHI}_3$ , is prepared by adding iodine to a warm solution of sodium carbonate containing alcohol or acetone—in principle analogous to the preparation of chloroform. The odor of iodoform is not only characteristic, but powerful, hence the reaction is used as a test for either alcohol or acetone. Iodoform is a powerful antiseptic and disinfectant. (The antiseptic properties are due to its gradual decomposition with the liberation of iodine.)

**Tetrahalogen Derivatives of the Paraffins**,  $\text{CF}_4$ ,  $\text{CCl}_4$ ,  $\text{CBr}_4$  and  $\text{CI}_4$ . Of these, only the second, **carbon tetrachloride**, is important. It is made commercially by passing chlorine into carbon disulfide, using iron, iodine or antimony pentasulfide as a catalyst:

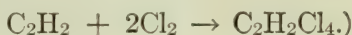


(We have already mentioned the production of  $\text{CCl}_4$  from methane by the action of chlorine:

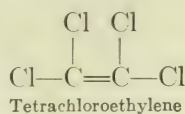
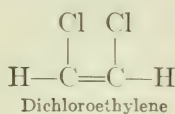


Carbon tetrachloride is a colorless liquid with an ethereal odor. It is a good solvent for gums and resins and is also a constituent of many cleaning solutions. It is an anesthetic, but is not used because of its bad effect on the heart. It is used in fire extinguishers ("Pyrene"). Its vapor produces severe headaches.

(During the past few years a number of chlorinated paraffins, used as solvents, have been prepared on a commercial scale. One such is tetrachloroethane, made by the action of chlorine on acetylene:

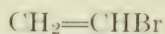


**Halogen Derivatives of Unsaturated Hydrocarbons.**—The names and structures of a few of these will be given:

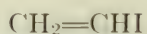




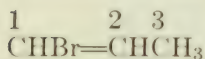
(These are used as solvents.)



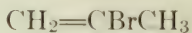
Monobromoethylene



Monoiodoethylene



1-Bromopropylene



2-Bromopropylene



3-Bromopropylene (allyl bromide)

( $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2$  is known as the allyl group.)



Bromoacetylene



Diiodoacetylene

#### READING REFERENCE

CLARK—Applied Pharmacology. (1923), chap. 9 (Anesthetics).

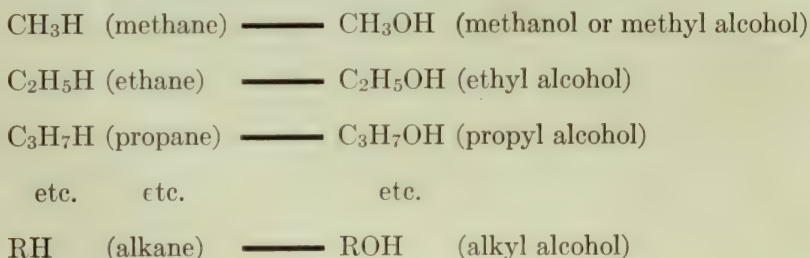
## CHAPTER V

### ALCOHOLS

METHANOL, which is methyl (or wood) alcohol, and ethyl (or grain) alcohol, are the two most important substances belonging to this group.

The alcohols may be considered as hydrocarbons in which one or more of the hydrogens are replaced by OH groups. (They may also be regarded as derived from water in which one of the hydrogens is replaced by R;  $\text{H—OH} \rightarrow \text{R—OH}$ .)

The relationship of the hydrocarbons to the alcohols is shown here:



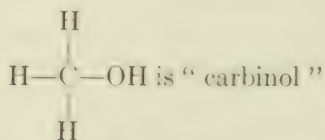
**Nomenclature of Alcohols.**—There are a number of systems employed. (1) The ending *e* of the hydrocarbon containing the same number of carbon atoms is changed to the ending *ol*:



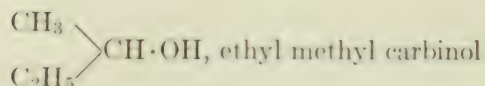
(2) The alcohol is named according to the alkyl group it contains:  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{H}$ , ethane ———  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$ , ethyl group ———  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ , ethyl alcohol, or ethyl hydroxide.



(3) The alcohols are looked upon as "carbinol" derivatives:

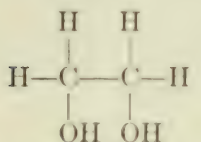


$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{OH}$ , methyl carbinol

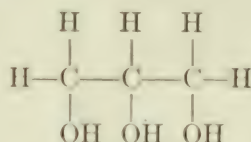


(Methyl carbinol is carbinol in which one of the hydrogen atoms is replaced by  $\text{CH}_3$ , and ethyl methyl carbinol is carbinol in which one hydrogen atom is replaced by  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  and another by  $\text{CH}_3$ .)

Alcohols may contain more than one OH group provided they are attached to different carbon atoms; *e.g.*



1, 2-Ethanediol  
or  
1, 2-dihydroxyethane  
or  
glycol

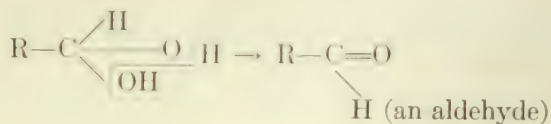


1, 2, 3-Propanetriol  
or  
1, 2, 3-trihydroxypropane  
or  
glycerol

etc.

We shall see in a later chapter that the sugars contain several OH groups.

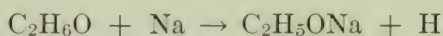
(Two or more OH groups attached to the same carbon atom give rise, as a rule, to unstable compounds:



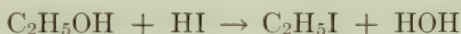
the unstable dihydroxy compound being converted into an aldehyde. We shall explain the oxidation of an alcohol to an aldehyde in this manner.)

An alcohol with one OH group is monatomic, with two OH groups, diatomic, with three, triatomic, etc.

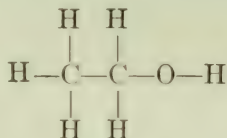
If we take an alcohol, such as ethyl alcohol,  $C_2H_6O$ , and treat it with sodium, only one atom of hydrogen (out of the six present) is liberated:



This particular atom of hydrogen obviously differs in some way from the other five atoms. The possibility that this difference is due to a difference in position within the molecule is borne out by the fact that when we treat the alcohol with, say, hydrogen iodide, one atom of iodine replaces one atom of hydrogen and one atom of oxygen,—one iodine, in other words, replaces one hydroxyl group:



It would seem, therefore, as if one hydrogen in ethyl alcohol is attached, not to the carbon atoms (like the other five hydrogen atoms), but to the oxygen atom:



and all the reactions of the many alcohols known (some of which will be discussed presently) strengthen this view.

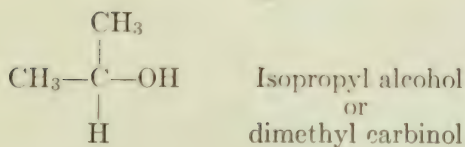
#### Types of Alcohols.

1. The presence of the group  $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ | \\ -\text{C}-\text{OH} \\ | \\ \text{H} \end{array}$  indicates a **primary**

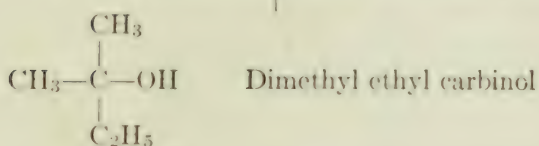
alcohol: e.g.,  $\text{CH}_3-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{H} \\ \searrow \text{OH} \\ \text{H} \end{array}$ .



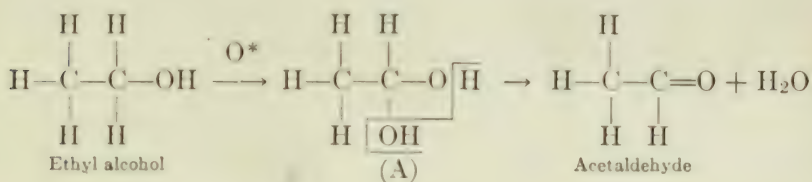
2. The group  $\begin{array}{c} | \\ -\text{C}-\text{OH} \\ | \\ \text{H} \end{array}$  indicates a **secondary alcohol**: e.g.,



3. The group  $\begin{array}{c} | \\ -\text{C}-\text{OH} \\ | \end{array}$  indicates a **tertiary alcohol**: e.g.,

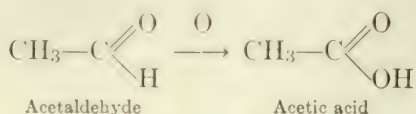


These three types of alcohols yield various oxidation products. When a primary alcohol is oxidized, we first get an aldehyde; e.g.,



(It is believed that (A) is an intermediate compound, though it has not, as yet, been isolated. It has already been pointed out that a compound containing two OH groups attached to the same carbon atom is usually unstable, water splitting off in the manner shown.)

The aldehyde on further oxidation yields the corresponding acid:

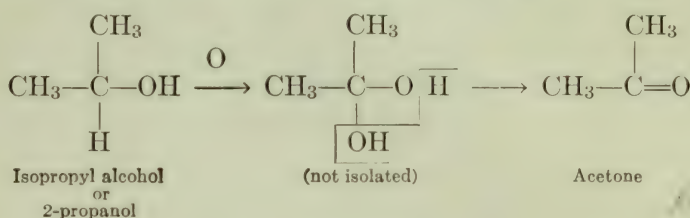


\* O refers to oxidation.

(Let us remind the student at this point that the group  $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{C} \\ \diagup \text{H} \end{array}$  is characteristic of aldehydes, and the group  $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{C} \\ \diagdown \text{OH} \end{array}$  is characteristic of organic acids.)

We see then that the oxidation of a primary alcohol yields first an aldehyde and then an acid containing the same number of carbon atoms as the original alcohol.

When a secondary alcohol is oxidized we get a ketone; e.g.,

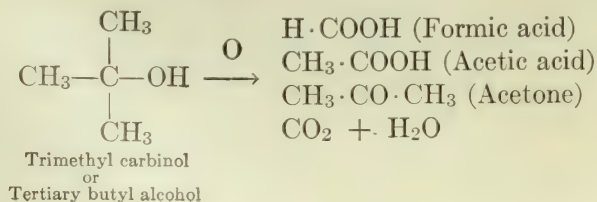


$\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \\ \diagup \\ \text{C}=\text{O} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{R} \end{array}$  represents ketones, and acetone is the simplest member of the series. On further oxidation we get acids containing less carbon atoms than the original ketone or alcohol.

(There are two isomeric propyl alcohols, the normal,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , and the iso,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{OH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ . The latter,

being a secondary alcohol, yields a ketone—acetone—on oxidation; the normal, being a primary alcohol, yields first an aldehyde—propionaldehyde—and then an acid—propionic acid.)

When a tertiary alcohol is oxidized, a mixture of acids and ketones are obtained, each substance formed having less carbon atoms in its molecule than the original tertiary compound: e.g.,



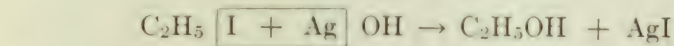


We therefore see that on oxidation

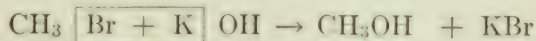
primary alcohol  $\rightarrow$  aldehyde  $\rightarrow$  acid  
 secondary alcohol  $\rightarrow$  ketone  $\rightarrow$  decomposition products  
 tertiary alcohol  $\rightarrow$  decomposition products

**Methods of Preparation.**—Alcohols are produced in the course of destructive distillation (p. 57) and fermentation (p. 58). Other methods are the following:

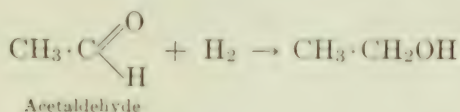
The action of moist silver oxide or aqueous NaOH or KOH solution on an alkyl halogen compound, as



or

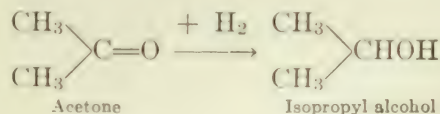


The reduction of aldehydes (yielding primary alcohols); as

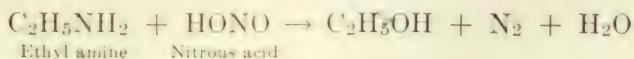


(The student will recall that the oxidation of a primary alcohol yields an aldehyde; we may therefore expect that the reduction of the aldehyde will yield the alcohol. The reducing agent may be sodium amalgam and water, or hydrogen in the presence of nickel.)

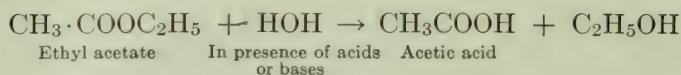
The reduction of ketones (yielding secondary alcohols); as



The action of nitrous acid on a primary amine (that is, a substance formed when one of the hydrogens in  $\text{NH}_3$  is replaced by R, giving  $\text{R} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ ; (see p. 132); as



The hydrolysis of esters; as



(An ester is an acid in which the ionizable hydrogen is replaced by an alkyl group:  $\text{R} \cdot \text{COOH} \rightarrow \text{R} \cdot \text{COOR}$ .)  
 (Acid) (Ester)

Various secondary and tertiary alcohols can be prepared by means of the *Grignard* reaction; e.g.,

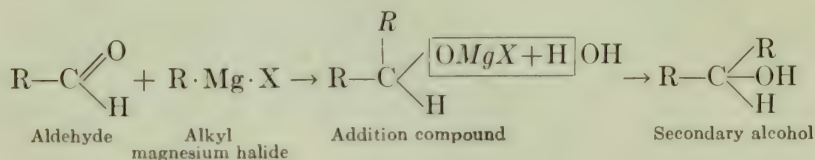


Illustration:

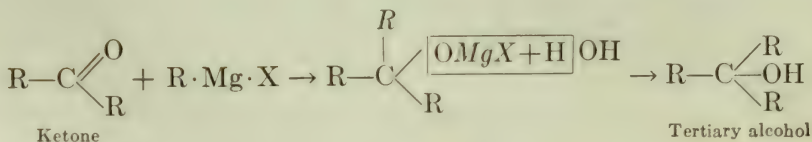
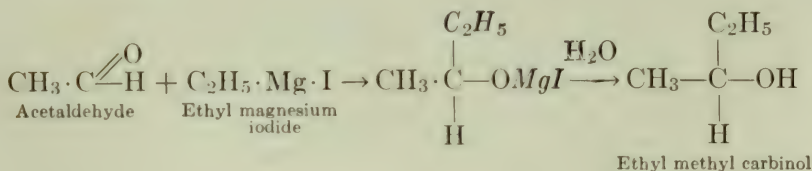
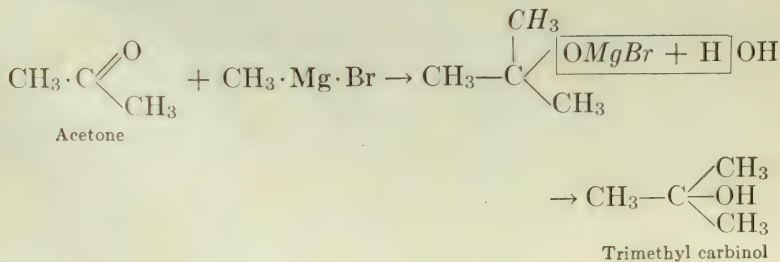


Illustration:







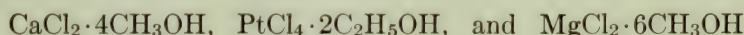
*V. Grignard*

VICTOR GRIGNARD (1871-

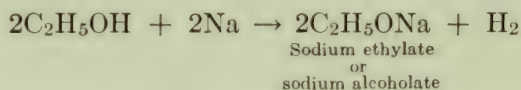
PROFESSOR OF CHEMISTRY AT THE UNIVERSITY OF LYON (FRANCE). HIS DISCOVERY OF THE ORGANO-MAGNESIUM COMPOUNDS AND THEIR REACTIONS HAS BEEN OF INESTIMABLE VALUE IN THE SYNTHESIS OF MANY ORGANIC COMPOUNDS.

**Physical Properties.**—The monatomic alcohols are colorless substances. The compounds from  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  to  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9\text{OH}$  are limpid liquids, those from  $\text{C}_5$  to  $\text{C}_{11}$  are of oily consistency, and from  $\text{C}_{12}$  up are solids. The solubility in water decreases with increase in molecular weight. An increase in the number of OH groups in a compound tends to increase the sweetness; e.g., methanol  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$ , is not sweet; glycol,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_4(\text{OH})_2$  is somewhat sweet; glycerol,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{OH})_3$ , is sweet; and mannitol,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_8(\text{OH})_6$ , is still sweeter. The lower alcohols have characteristic odors; the higher ones are practically odorless.

**Chemical Properties.**—The alcohols, like water (which they resemble in many ways), are neither acid nor alkaline in reaction. Like water again, the alcohols combine with compounds to form crystalline products; for example,

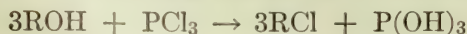
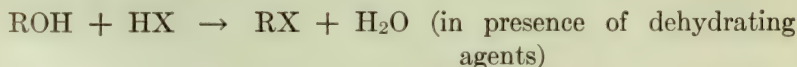


These compounds are said to contain "alcohol of crystallization." Sodium reacts with alcohol as it does with water, only less violently; e.g.,

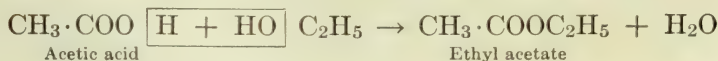


As we have seen, the primary alcohols, on oxidation, yield aldehydes and acids; the secondary alcohols, ketones; and the tertiary alcohols, various decomposition products.

The OH group in the alcohol can be replaced by a halogen in a number of ways:



Alcohols combine with acids to form esters: e.g.,

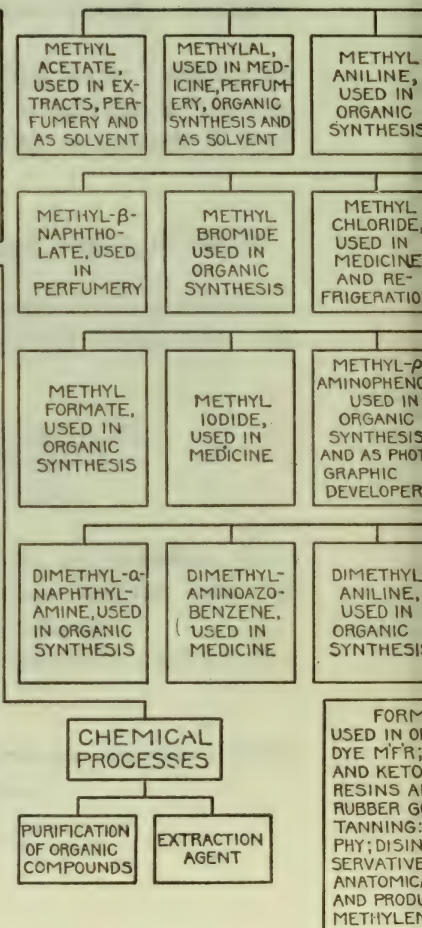
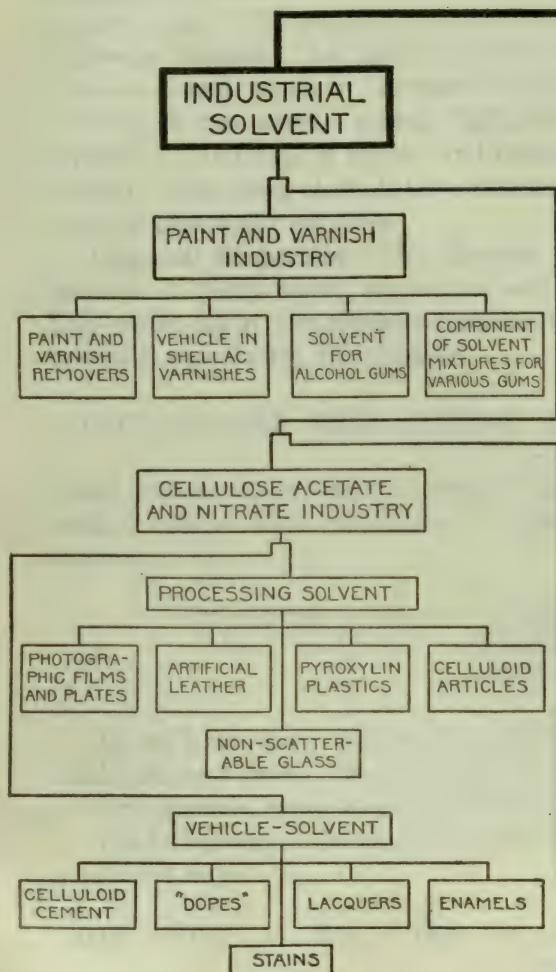






# USES OF

## RAW MATERIALS MANUFACTURE CHEMICALS





# METHANOL

## MATERIAL IN PRODURING PRODUCTS

METHYL-  
ANTHRANILATE,  
USED IN  
PERFUMES

METHYL-  
ANTHRA-  
QUINONE,  
USED IN  
ORGANIC  
SYNTHESIS

METHYL  
BENZOATE,  
USED IN  
PERFUMERY

METHYL  
CHLORO-  
SULFONATE,  
USED IN  
CHEMICAL  
WARFARE

METHYL-  
CINNAMATE,  
USED IN PER-  
FUMES, FLAV-  
ORS AND CON-  
FECTIONERY

METHYL-  
DICHLOR-  
ARSINE,  
USED IN  
CHEMICAL  
WARFARE

METHYL  
ALLATE,  
USED IN  
MEDICINE

METHYL-  
SALICYLATE,  
USED IN  
MEDICINE,  
LINIMENTS  
EXTRACTS  
FLAVORS AND  
CONFECTIONARY

DIMETHYL-  
ACETAL,  
USED IN  
MEDICINE AND  
ORGANIC  
SYNTHESIS

DIMETHYL-  
SULFATE,  
USED AS  
METHYLATING  
AGENT FOR  
MINES AND  
PHENOLS

DIMETHYL-  
SULFIDE,  
USED IN  
ORGANIC  
SYNTHESIS

DIMETHYL-  
TRITHIOCAR-  
BONATE,  
USED IN  
CHEMICAL  
WARFARE

BYDE  
SYNTHESIS:  
L, CRESOL  
THETIC  
QUERS;  
EATHER  
PHOTOGRA-  
G; PRE-  
HESIVES;  
IMENS,  
OF HEXA-  
AMINE.

## MISCELLANEOUS APPLICATIONS

### AUTOMOTIVE INDUSTRY

COMPOSITE  
MOTOR  
FUELS

ANTI-  
FREEZE  
MIXTURES

DENATURANT  
IN  
METHYLATED  
SPIRITS

USED WITH  
ACETONE AND  
ACETIC ACID  
FOR FROSTING  
CELLULOID  
ARTICLES

DYEING  
STRAW HATS

### CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

DETECTING  
SALICYLIC  
ACID

DETECTING  
BORATES

SEPARATING  
ARSENIC AND  
ANTIMONY

STOCK SOLU-  
TIONS OF  
PHOTOGRA-  
PHIC DE-  
VELOPERS  
TO PREVENT  
PRECIPI-  
TATION OF  
CHEMICALS

AS A CON-  
STITUENT OF  
'SPOTTING'  
FLUIDS IN  
GARMENT  
CLEANING

ILLUMINANT





## MONATOMIC ALCOHOLS

Alcohol	Formula
Methyl	$\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$
Ethyl	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$
n-Propyl	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$
Isopropyl	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_3$
n-Primary butyl	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$
n-Secondary butyl	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}(\text{OH}) \cdot \text{CH}_3$
Primary isobutyl	$(\text{CH}_3)_2 : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$
Trimethyl carbinol (tertiary butyl)	$(\text{CH}_3)_3 : \text{C}(\text{OH})$
:	:
:	:
:	:
:	:
Cetyl	$\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{OH}$
Myricyl	$\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{61}\text{OH}$

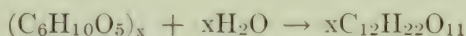
**Methanol**,<sup>1</sup>  $\text{CH}_3\text{OH}$  (also called methyl alcohol, wood alcohol, methyl hydroxide, carbinol, Columbian spirit and wood spirit). This alcohol does not occur free in nature. On a commercial scale it is obtained by the destructive distillation of hard wood (maple, beech, birch, oak, etc.). When wood is heated in retorts to about  $400^\circ$ , we obtain gases (used as fuel under the retorts), an aqueous distillate (known as "pyroligneous acid"), wood tar and charcoal (which remains in the retorts). The wood tar is a source for antiseptics (wood creosote), disinfectants, fuel, road-making, etc. The pyroligneous acid contains the acetic acid, as well as the methanol and acetone. The acetone of commerce is not obtained from this source (see p. 70).

**Properties and Uses.**—Methanol is a colorless liquid with a somewhat disagreeable odor. b.p.  $64.7^\circ$ . It is a poison and gives rise to blindness when taken internally or applied externally. It burns with a blue flame, quite devoid of soot, to  $\text{CO}_2$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ . On oxidation it first forms the corresponding aldehyde, formaldehyde ( $\text{H} \cdot \text{CHO}$ ), and then formic acid ( $\text{H} \cdot \text{COOH}$ ). The alcohol is used very largely as a solvent in the manufacture of varnishes

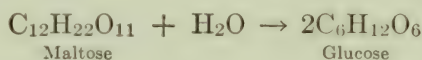
<sup>1</sup> The name "methanol" has now been officially adopted, largely with a view to preventing its use in the place of grain alcohol.

and lacquers, especially those containing shellac; as a solvent for moving-picture films; in the preparation of denatured alcohol; in the manufacture of formaldehyde; and in the preparation of various dye intermediates.<sup>1</sup> Additional uses are given in the chart facing p. 57.

**Ethyl Alcohol**,  $C_2H_5OH$  (also called alcohol, ethanol, grain alcohol, ethyl hydroxide, Cologne spirit and wine spirit). The commercial method of making it is by a process called **fermentation** (fermentation is a process of decomposition brought about by substances secreted by various forms of vegetable and animal life), and in principle differs little from the methods that have been in use for centuries. Some starch-containing substance, such as a cereal (corn, rye, barley, etc.), or potatoes, is allowed to sprout. This develops within the cell a substance known as diastase, a typical catalyst, and called an enzyme because it is produced as a result of cellular activity. The diastase converts the starch to maltose:



Another enzyme, maltase which is also present, converts the maltose into glucose:



Yeast is now added, and the enzyme zymase, present in the yeast, converts the glucose into alcohol and carbon dioxide:



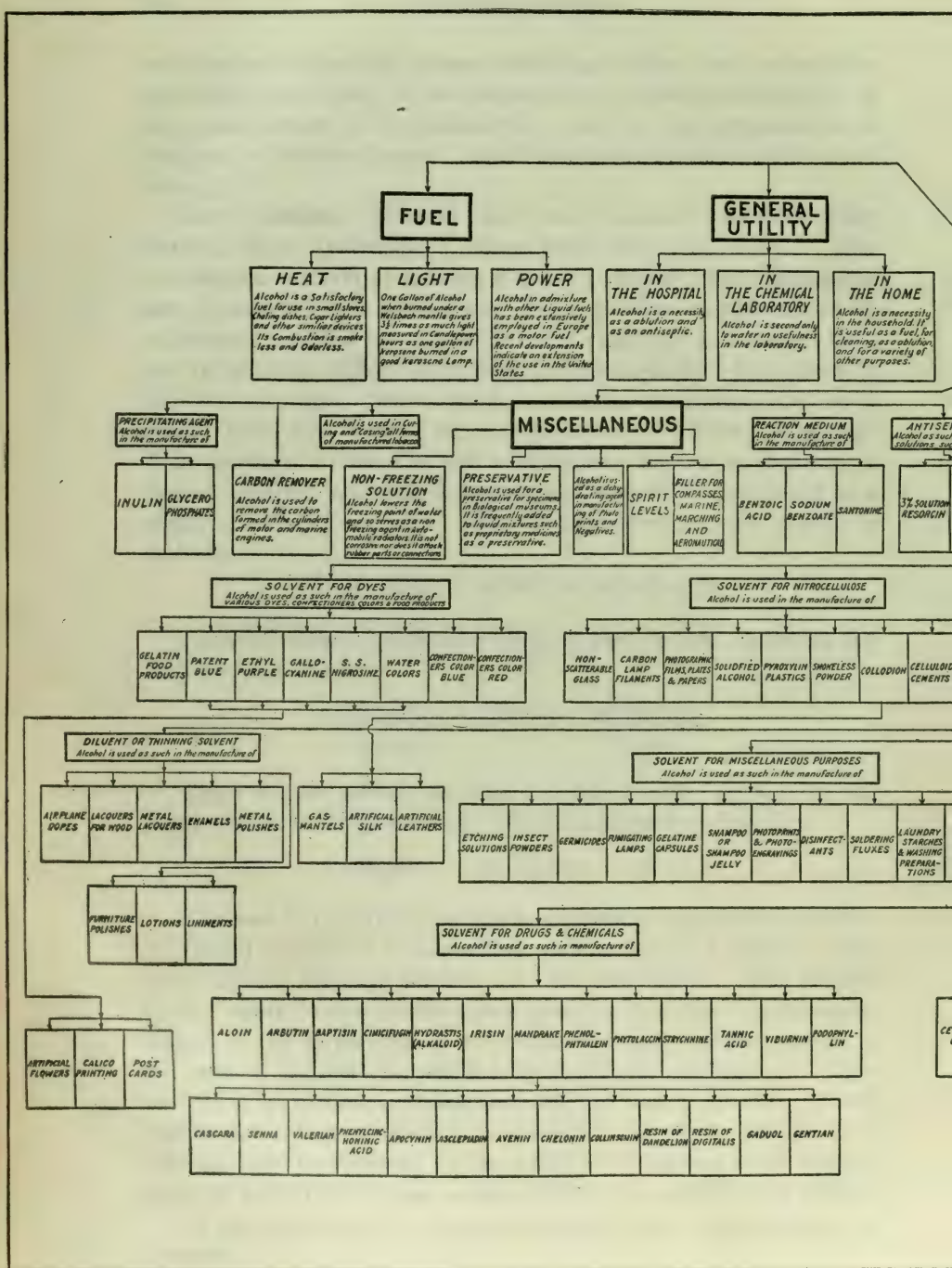
The best temperature for this fermentation ranges from 25–30°.

(Small quantities of impurities, such as glycerol, succinic acid, butyl alcohol, isoamyl alcohol, etc., are also found.) The alcohol in the "wort" (which is the name given to the liquor formed in the course of the fermentation process and which contains about 14 per cent of alcohol), is purified by fractional distillation. Commercial ethyl alcohol contains about 95 per cent of alcohol. A still higher percentage of alcohol ("absolute," or nearly 100 per cent alcohol) may be obtained by the addition of calcium oxide (quicklime) or anhydrous copper sulfate (which are dehydrating agents)

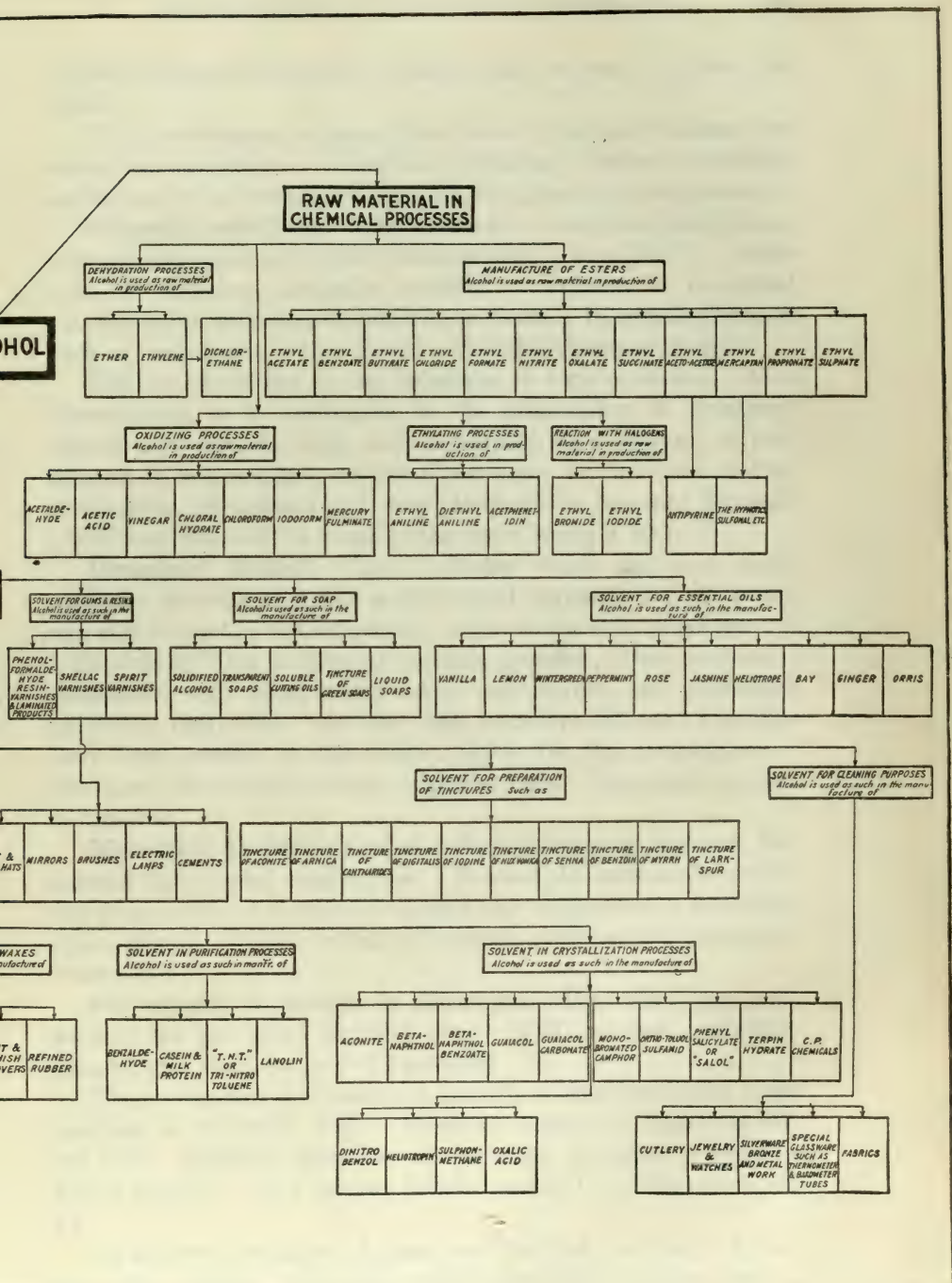
<sup>1</sup> A dye intermediate is an organic compound used in the manufacture of dyestuffs.















to the liquid and allowing it to stand a day or two; it is then distilled.

(Such substances as grape juice, corn syrup and molasses are already rich in glucose. Here the preliminary diastase treatment, consisting in the conversion of starch into glucose, is unnecessary.)

**Properties and Uses.**—Ethyl alcohol is a colorless liquid, has a characteristic odor and a sharp burning taste. (b.p. 78.4°.) In the form of tinctures (alcoholic solutions or extracts of medicinal substances) it is extensively used in medicine. In certain diseases, such as pneumonia, it has proved a valuable therapeutic agent.

The use of alcohol in the industries is very extensive. As a preservative, as an antiseptic, in the preparation of denatured alcohol and various drugs and medicinals, as a solvent, in perfumery, as an essential constituent necessary for the manufacture of iodoform, chloroform and ether, alcohol is in constant demand. (Additional uses will be found in the chart facing p. 59.)

**Denatured Alcohol.**—This is alcohol which has been made unfit for drinking purposes and external applications, but which can still be used in the industries. Some of the substances used in "denaturing" are methanol, benzine, pyridine, ether, acetone—substances with disagreeable odors and flavors, and possessing poisonous properties. No less than forty-five different formulas have been granted in the United States for the preparation of denatured alcohol for various industrial uses. Denatured alcohol is tax-free.

**Medicated Alcohol** is alcohol unfit for drinking purposes, but suitable for external applications. Some of the substances used in the preparation of medicated alcohol are tartar emetic, formaldehyde, phenol, diethyl phthalate, benzene, acetone, zinc phenolsulfonate, etc.

**Percentages of Alcohol in Beverages.**—Beer=2-5 per cent; wine=7-11 per cent; fortified wine=17-20 per cent; whiskey, brandy, gin, rum, etc.=40-75 per cent.

The percentage of alcohol in a number of pharmaceutical preparations is relatively high. Aromatic spirits of ammonia=68 per cent; spirits of camphor=90 per cent; tincture of iodine=83 per cent, etc. For further details consult U. S. Pharmacopeia IX.

(Whenever fermented liquors are distilled, not only do we get ethyl alcohol, but also small quantities of esters and a

number of the higher alcohols, the mixture of these higher alcohols being substances known as **fusel oil**. Some claim that the presence of fusel oil in liquors is far more harmful than the ethyl alcohol itself. In this connection the following information may be of interest. We know that the principal constituent of fusel oil is

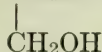
**isoamyl alcohol**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ , and we know that the

source of this is isoleucine, an amino acid obtained from the protein present in cereal or potato (see the chapter on proteins, p. 137. The bacteria present convert the isoleucine into isoamyl alcohol. It has, however, been shown that this conversion—and hence the production of isoamyl alcohol—may be prevented by the addition of ammonium salts, which the bacteria prefer.)

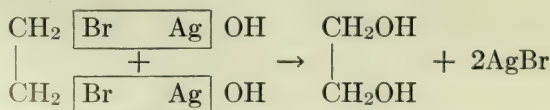
**Isopropyl alcohol**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{C} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \begin{array}{l} \text{H} \\ \text{OH} \end{array}$ , is used under the name of

“petrolol” as a motor fuel and solvent. Normal butyl alcohol is obtained as a by-product in the fermentation of sugar and is used to a large extent as an organic solvent. Isoamyl alcohol is converted to isoamyl acetate and thus used in the manufacture of varnishes and fruit essences. Cetyl alcohol forms (as palmitic ester) the chief constituent of spermaceti (a wax-like substance found in the head of the sperm whale), while myricyl alcohol is present as palmitic ester in beeswax and in Carnauba wax. The alcohols are prepared from all these esters by hydrolysis with boiling alcoholic KOH solution.

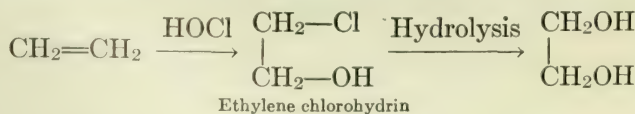
**Diatomic Alcohols.**—The simplest of these is dihydroxyethane, known as **glycol**,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ . It may be prepared by the



action of silver hydroxide on the corresponding dibromo-compound:



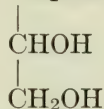
but commercially it is made from ethylene:



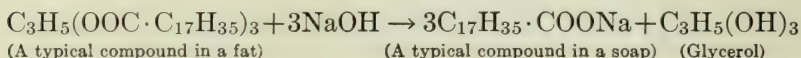


Glycol is used as a solvent and preservative. The general chemical properties resemble the alcohols, except that we here deal with two OH groups instead of one OH group.

**Triatomic Alcohols.**—The best known of this group is **glycerol** (also called glycerine),  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  (or 1, 2, 3-propanetriol), which is



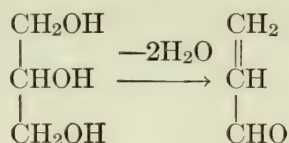
produced as a by-product in the manufacture of soap (p. 92).



(Details of this process will be given in the chapter on esters, p. 93.)

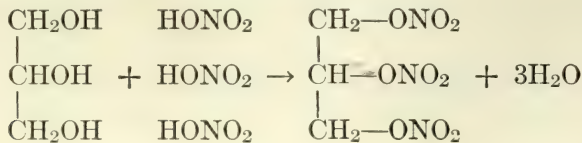
**Properties and Uses.**—Glycerol is a colorless, odorless syrupy liquid, having a sweetish taste. It is miscible with water and alcohol and is a good solvent and a dehydrating agent. It is used in medicine; as a sweetening agent; as a preservative for tobacco; in perfumery; in cosmetics; in ink for rubber stamps, etc.

When glycerine is heated alone or in the presence of a dehydrating agent such as  $\text{KHSO}_4$ , **acrolein** is produced:



(The odor of burnt fat is due to the production of acrolein.)

As may be seen from its formula, glycerol is both a primary and a secondary alcohol, and may, therefore, be expected to show the properties of both types of alcohols. When oxidized, aldehydes, acids and ketones are formed. Treatment with acids gives esters. One of the compounds obtained when nitric acid and glycerol react is of importance; and that is the glyceryl trinitrate or, as it is commonly called, **nitroglycerine**.



(Conc. sulfuric acid is added to remove the water that is formed.)

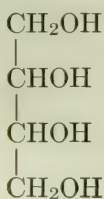
The nitroglycerine is a dangerous explosive to handle, but when mixed with an inert substance, like infusorial earth, "kieselguhr," thereby becoming **dynamite**, it can be handled with much less risk, though none of its explosive properties are lost. (Starch and sawdust are now used in the place of "kieselguhr," and oxidizing agents such as ammonium or potassium nitrate are added to aid combustion.)

We owe the invention of dynamite to *Alfred Nobel*, a Swedish engineer, who accumulated a fortune as a result of his invention and who bequeathed it to the Swedish Academy for the purpose of founding the *Nobel Prizes*.

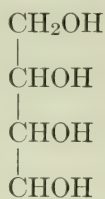
(Vapors of nitroglycerine produce severe headache. In medicine, a 1 per cent solution in alcohol is used. It has a powerful action on the arteries and is used as a heart stimulant.)

(Glycerol is formed in the digestive tract when the fat in food is hydrolyzed by the enzyme "lipase" of the pancreatic juice. It is also believed that glycerol plays an important part in the oxidation of fats and carbohydrates in the body, for it would seem that one of the intermediate substances formed in such oxidations is glycerol, or a substance very closely allied to it.)

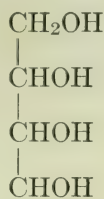
**Polyatomic Alcohols.**—The careful oxidation of the penta- and particularly the hexa-hydroxy alcohols, leads to the compounds known as sugars; but these we shall discuss later. In the meantime, we shall merely mention the names of a few polyatomic alcohols, and write their formulas:



Erythritol



Arabitol



Mannitol

Erythritol occurs in nature, either in the free or combined state, in algae and certain lichens. A source of arabitol is gum



arabic. The source of mannitol is the manna ash tree, which, however, is not believed to be related to the "manna" of the Bible. Dulcitol and sorbitol are isomers of mannitol.

#### UNSATURATED ALCOHOLS

$\text{CH}_2=\text{CHOH}$ , ethenol.

$\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ , allyl alcohol, or  $\Delta^2$ -1-propenol is present in pyroligneous acid.

(Remember that " $\Delta$ " indicates a "double bond," and that " $\Delta^2$ " indicates double bond in position 2. The ending "ol" in propenol indicates an alcohol, and the "1" before the name means that the OH group is in position 1.)

These compounds possess the general characteristics of alcohols, and being unsaturated compounds, they form additive products with hydrogen, with halogens, with halogen acids, etc.

#### READING REFERENCES

SADTLER—Chemistry of Familiar Things. (1915), chap. 16 (Fermentation).

DUNCAN—The Chemistry of Commerce. (1907), chap. 7 (Industrial Alcohol).

HARDEN—Alcoholic Fermentation.

HAWLEY—Wood Distillation.

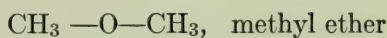
ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 634-652 (The Destructive Distillation of Wood); pp. 739-752 (Glycerine).

## CHAPTER VI

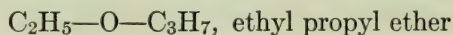
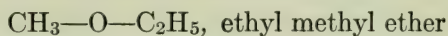
### ETHERS

ETHERS may be considered as derived from alcohols in which the H of the ROH is replaced by an R group; or they may be looked upon as derived from HOH in which both hydrogens are replaced by R groups. The ethers are really organic oxides. (HOH = H<sub>2</sub>O = water = hydrogen oxide; and R—O—R = R<sub>2</sub>O. For example, C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>—O—C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub> = (C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>O = ethyl oxide, commonly known as "ether.")

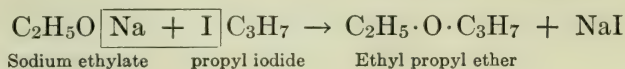
**Types of Ethers.**—If the two R's represent the same groups, then we get a **simple ether**.



If the two R's represent different groups, we get a **mixed ether**.

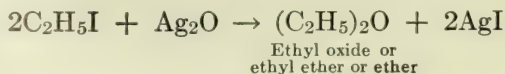


**General Methods of Preparation.**—The action of an alkyl halide on the sodium alcoholate; e.g.,



(This method, the *Williamson's* synthesis, enables one to prepare either a simple or a mixed ether.)

Heating a mixture of silver oxide and alkyl halide; e.g.,

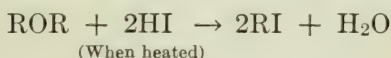
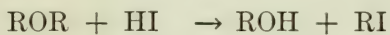


(This reaction proves that ether is an oxide.)

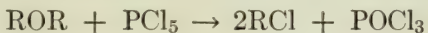


**General Properties.**—The ethers are colorless, neutral liquids, more volatile than the corresponding alcohols and lighter than water. They are very stable and inactive, and are therefore used as solvents. The ethers, especially the lower members, are highly flammable.

Sodium, ammonia, alkalies and dilute acids have no action on them. Hydriodic acid acts in one of two ways:



Phosphorus pentachloride has no action in the cold, but when heated,



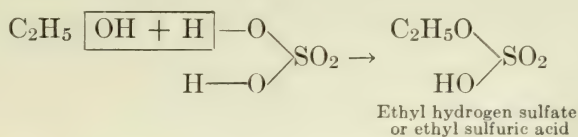
Steam at 150° decomposes them:



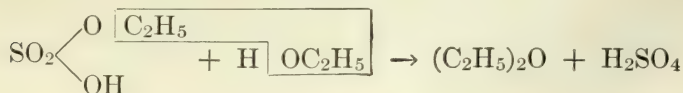
Chlorine replaces the hydrogens in the alkyl groups.

**Ether**,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{—O—C}_2\text{H}_5$  (also known as ethyl ether, sulfuric ether and ethyl oxide) is the most important substance of this group.

Ether is manufactured by the “continuous etherification process.” Equimolecular proportions of alcohol and sulfuric acid are mixed:

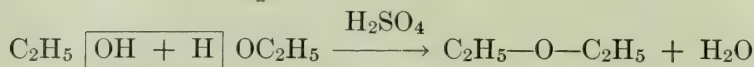


The mixture is now heated to 130–140° and more alcohol added:



(The sulfuric acid is regenerated and used over again until the acid becomes too weak to react with the alcohol.)

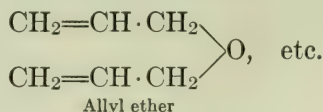
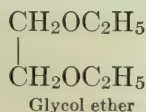
The equation may be expressed:



**Properties.**—Ether is a colorless, volatile liquid, with a very characteristic odor. b.p. 34.6°. Specific Gravity = .736 at 0°. It is highly flammable, burning with a luminous flame, and is explosive when mixed with air and ignited. It is slightly soluble in water and is used for extracting certain substances from an aqueous solution. As a solvent for fats, oils, resins, alkaloids, etc., ether is unsurpassed. It can be used as a solvent for quite a number of organic substances. It also dissolves iodine, bromine, sulfur, phosphorus, ferric chloride, etc. It is used with alcohol in the manufacture of guncotton. Due to its rapid evaporation, it can be used for refrigerating purposes. As an anesthetic, it was introduced in surgery by Dr. Morton, a Boston dentist, in 1846. As an anesthetic, ether is preferred to chloroform, for the physiological effects can be better controlled. Ether for this purpose must be highly purified.

(Ether, chloroform and other anesthetics are, chemically, more or less inert substances and are more soluble in lipoids—typical cell constituents—and lipid solvents than in water.)

#### Other Ethers.



#### READING REFERENCE

BASKERVILLE—The Chemistry of Anesthetics. *Science*, **34**, 161 (1911).



## CHAPTER VII

### ALDEHYDES AND KETONES

AN aldehyde,  $R \cdot CHO$ , may be regarded as a hydrocarbon wherein a hydrogen atom has been replaced by the  $\cdot CHO$  group.

The type formula for an aldehyde is  $R-C \begin{smallmatrix} \nearrow O \\ \searrow H \end{smallmatrix}$ , and for a ketone,

$\begin{smallmatrix} R \\ R \end{smallmatrix} > C=O$ ; so that a ketone may be regarded as an aldehyde in

which the H of the CHO group is replaced by R; and, on the other hand, an aldehyde may be regarded as a ketone in which

one of the R groups is replaced by H. Both have the  $>C=O$  or *carbonyl* grouping, have a number of common properties and they are, therefore, considered in the same chapter.

(In the chapter on sugars, the student will discover that most of the sugars contain either aldehyde or ketone groupings, and that a number of their properties depend upon these groups; so that much that is gleaned from this chapter can be applied later.)

**Nomenclature of Aldehydes.**—(1) Change the *e* ending of the hydrocarbon having the same number of carbon atoms (or the *ol* ending of the alcohol) to *al*.

$C_2H_6$ , ethane —  $C_2H_5OH$ , ethanol —  $CH_3 \cdot CHO$ , ethanal

(2) The aldehydes may also be named after the corresponding acids formed when the aldehydes are oxidized.

$H \cdot COOH$ , formic acid —  $H \cdot CHO$ , formic aldehyde or formaldehyde

$CH_3 \cdot COOH$ , acetic acid —  $CH_3 \cdot CHO$ , acetic aldehyde or acetaldehyde

$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , propionic acid —  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , propionic aldehyde  
or propionaldehyde

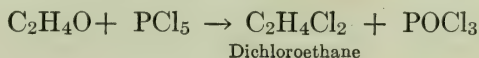
$\text{C}_3\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , butyric acid —  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , butyric aldehyde  
or butyraldehyde

etc.

(Never write the group  $\cdot\text{C}-\text{OH}$  to represent the aldehyde grouping, but always  $\cdot\text{CHO}$ . Remember that OH stands for alcohol and in alcohols the linking is  $\text{R}-\text{O}-\text{H}$  and in aldehydes,  $\text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O}$ .)

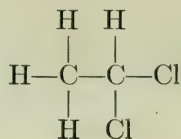


When an aldehyde is treated with phosphorus pentachloride, the reaction is quite different from that obtained when  $\text{PCl}_5$  acts on an alcohol. Taking acetaldehyde as an example,

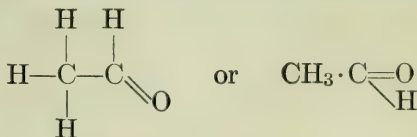


Dichloroethane

An examination of the dichloroethane reveals that it is the unsymmetrical variety, the two chlorine atoms being attached to the same carbon atom:



which suggests that the oxygen atom in aldehyde occupies a position in the chain corresponding to these two chlorine atoms; that is,



**Nomenclature of Ketones,  $\text{R} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{R}$ .**—(1) Change the *e* ending of the hydrocarbon with the same number of carbon atoms to *one*:

$\text{C}_3\text{H}_8$ , propane —  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , propanone

$\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}$ , butane —  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , butanone

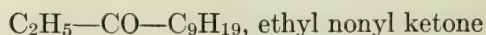
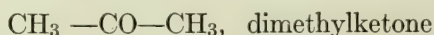
$\text{C}_5\text{H}_{12}$ , pentane —  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , 2-pentanone

$\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2\text{COCH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_3$ , 3-pentanone

etc.



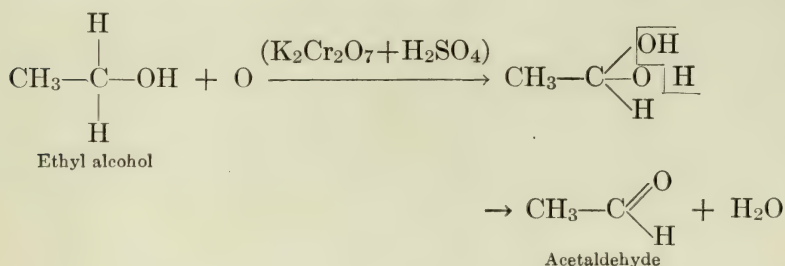
(The type structure for ketone,  $R \cdot CO \cdot R$ , indicates that even the simplest ketone must contain at least three carbon atoms.) (2) Name the compound in accordance with the type of group represented by  $R$ , remembering that  $>C=O$  is the ketonic grouping:



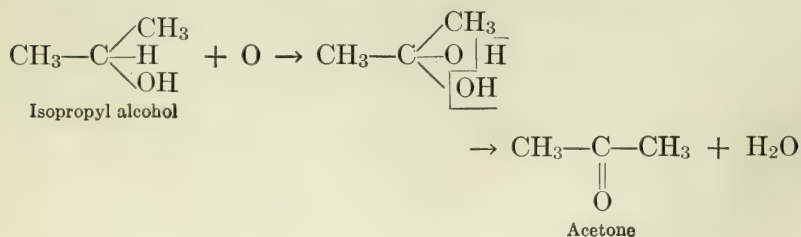
etc.

As with ethers, so with ketones: there are **simple and mixed ketones**. When  $R = R'$  we have a simple ketone; when  $R$  is different from  $R'$ , we have a mixed ketone; so that  $C_2H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_2H_5$  is a simple ketone, and  $C_2H_5 \cdot CO \cdot C_4H_9$  is a mixed ketone.

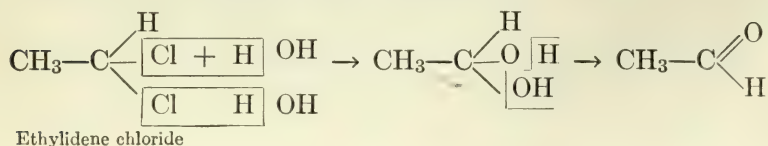
**Preparation of Aldehydes and Ketones.**—The oxidation of a primary alcohol yields an aldehyde; e.g.,



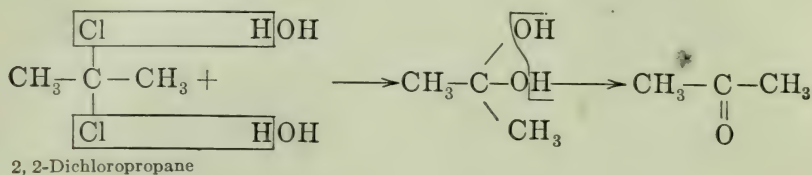
The oxidation of a secondary alcohol yields a ketone; e.g.,



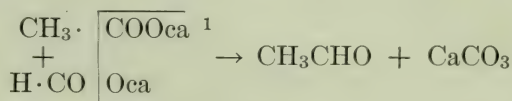
Hydrolysis of dihalogenated hydrocarbons; e.g.,



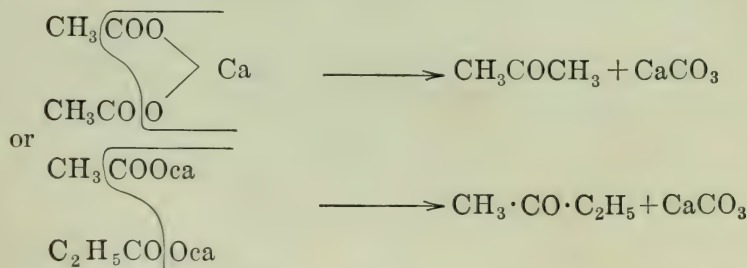
( $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}-\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  is ethylene chloride, but  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CHCl}_2$  is ethylidene chloride.)



Aldehydes may be obtained by heating the calcium salts of certain organic acids with calcium formate; e.g.,



When the calcium salts alone are heated we get ketones; e.g.,



**Chemical Properties of Aldehydes and Ketones.**—We have already mentioned the fact that since both aldehydes and ketones contain the carbonyl,  $\text{>C=O}$  group, they have many properties in common.

The  $\text{>C=O}$  group may be looked upon as an unsaturated group, for it contains a double bond; which means that certain types of addition compounds are possible.

**Acetaldehyde** ( $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CHO}$ ) and **acetone** ( $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ ) are here taken as typical examples of aldehydes and ketones respectively.

<sup>1</sup> The true formula for calcium acetate is  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COO} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COO} \end{array} \text{Ca}$ , but for the sake of convenience we have halved it, and write the symbol for calcium in small letters:  $\text{ca} = \frac{1}{2}\text{Ca}$ .



Reagents Used	Aldehydes, e.g. $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$	Ketones, e.g., $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$
Oxidation	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \text{OH} \end{array} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array}$ <p>Acetic acid</p>	<p>→ Decomposition of molecule producing acids with lower carbon content as <math>\text{H} \cdot \text{COOH}</math> and <math>\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOH}</math> and <math>\text{CO}_2 + \text{H}_2\text{O}</math></p>
Reduction	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\   \quad   \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{C}-\text{OH} \\   \quad   \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \end{array}$ <p>A primary alcohol</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{OH} \\   \\ \text{H} \end{array} + \begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{OH} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ <p>A secondary alcohol A pinacol (tetramethyl glycol)</p>
$\text{NaHSO}_3$ Sodium bisulfite	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \quad \text{H} \\   \quad   \\ \text{H}-\text{C}-\text{C}-\text{OH} \\   \quad   \\ \text{H} \quad \text{H} \end{array} \quad \text{OSO}_2\text{Na}$ <p>Acetaldehyde sodium hydrogen sulfite</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{OSO}_2\text{Na} \end{array}$ <p>Acetone sodium hydrogen sulfite</p>
$\text{NH}_3$	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}-\text{OH} \\   \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$ <p>Acetaldehyde ammonia</p>	<p>Complex condensation products, in place of an addition compound, are formed</p>

HCN	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{OH} \\   \\ \text{CN} \end{array}$ <p>Acetaldehyde hydrogen cyanide or ethylidene cyanohydrin</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\   \\ \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{CN} \end{array}$ <p>Acetone hydrogen cyanide</p>
PCl <sub>5</sub>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{Cl} \\   \\ \text{Cl} \end{array}$ <p>Ethylidene chloride</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{Cl} \\   \\ \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 - \text{C} - \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{Cl} \end{array}$ <p>2, 2-Dichloropropane</p>
Halogens	<p>→ substitute in CH<sub>3</sub> group: e.g.,</p> $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\    \\ \text{Cl} - \text{C} - \text{C} - \text{H} \\   \quad   \\ \text{Cl} \quad \text{Cl} \end{array}$ <p>Trichloroacetaldehyde</p>	<p>→ substitute in CH<sub>3</sub> groups: e.g.,</p> $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ <p>Trichloroacetone</p>
H <sub>2</sub> N·OH Hydroxylamine	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{OH} \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{NOH}^* \\   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Acetaldoxime</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{C} = \text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{OH} \rightarrow \text{C} = \text{NOH} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ <p>Acetketoxime</p>
H <sub>2</sub> N·NH <sub>2</sub> Hydrazine or aminoamine	$\begin{array}{c} \text{H} \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} = \text{N} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\   \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ <p>Acetaldehyde hydrazine</p>	$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\   \\ \text{C} = \text{O} + \text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \rightarrow \text{C} = \text{N} \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\   \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ <p>Acetone hydrazone</p>

\* The =NOH group is known as the "oxime" group.

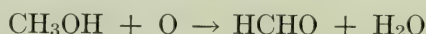


Reagents Used	Aldehydes, e.g., $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$	Ketones, e.g., $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$
$\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \dagger$ Phenylhydrazine	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{H} \\ \diagup \\ \text{O} + \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{H} \\ \diagup \\ \text{C} = \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ Acetaldehyde phenylhydrazone	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{O} + \text{H}_2 \end{array} \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \\ \text{C} = \text{N} \cdot \text{NHC}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ Acetone phenylhydrazone
$\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$ (In presence of a de- hydrating agent, such as $\text{HCl}$ gas)	$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{H} \\ \diagup \\ \text{O} + \text{H} \end{array} \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{H} \\ \diagup \\ \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ Acetal	No similar reaction
	Aldehydes reduce ammoniacal silver nitrate solution to produce silver mirror	Ketones do not

$\dagger$  Phenylhydrazine is hydrazine wherein one hydrogen has been replaced by the monovalent  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  (phenyl) group (p. 203). The phenyl group bears the same relationship to benzene,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ , that the methyl group does to methane.

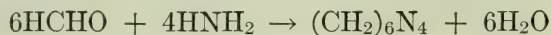
## ALDEHYDES

**Formaldehyde**,  $\text{H}\cdot\text{CHO}$  (also known as methanal) is manufactured by passing methanol vapor and air over copper gauze:



The reaction is exothermic and the copper need not be heated except to start the reaction. It is a gas with irritating odor, soluble in water. The **formalin** of commerce is a 35–40 per cent aqueous solution of the gas. A small amount of methanol must be present in the formalin to prevent the polymerization of the formaldehyde. For disinfecting purposes, specially constructed lamps are used containing methanol, which when burnt (in the presence of copper or platinum) yields formaldehyde. It is used as a food preservative, disinfectant and germicide, both in the form of gas and in solution. In the manufacture of dyes, such as indigo, the hardening of photographic films, the preservation of tissues (hardening the albuminous material), the manufacture of synthetic resins, such as **Bakelite** and “Redmanol” (see the chapter on phenol, p. 239), formaldehyde finds uses. The chart facing page 74 shows in detail the uses of formaldehyde.

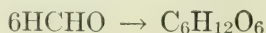
Ammonia and formaldehyde combine to form hexamethylene-tetramine:



commonly known as **urotropine** or “aminoform,” which finds a wide use as a diuretic and urinary antiseptic, liberating formaldehyde.

It is believed that in the formation of sugars from carbon dioxide and moisture (in the plant kingdom), formaldehyde is an intermediate product. Emil Fischer, the eminent German chemist, has actually been able to obtain a sugar (acrose) from formaldehyde, by treating the latter with barium or calcium hydroxide, thereby forming “formose” (a mixture of sugars), and isolating the acrose from the formose. We shall take this up again in the chapter on sugars.

The conversion of formaldehyde into a sugar involves polymerization, and may be represented as



LIBRARY

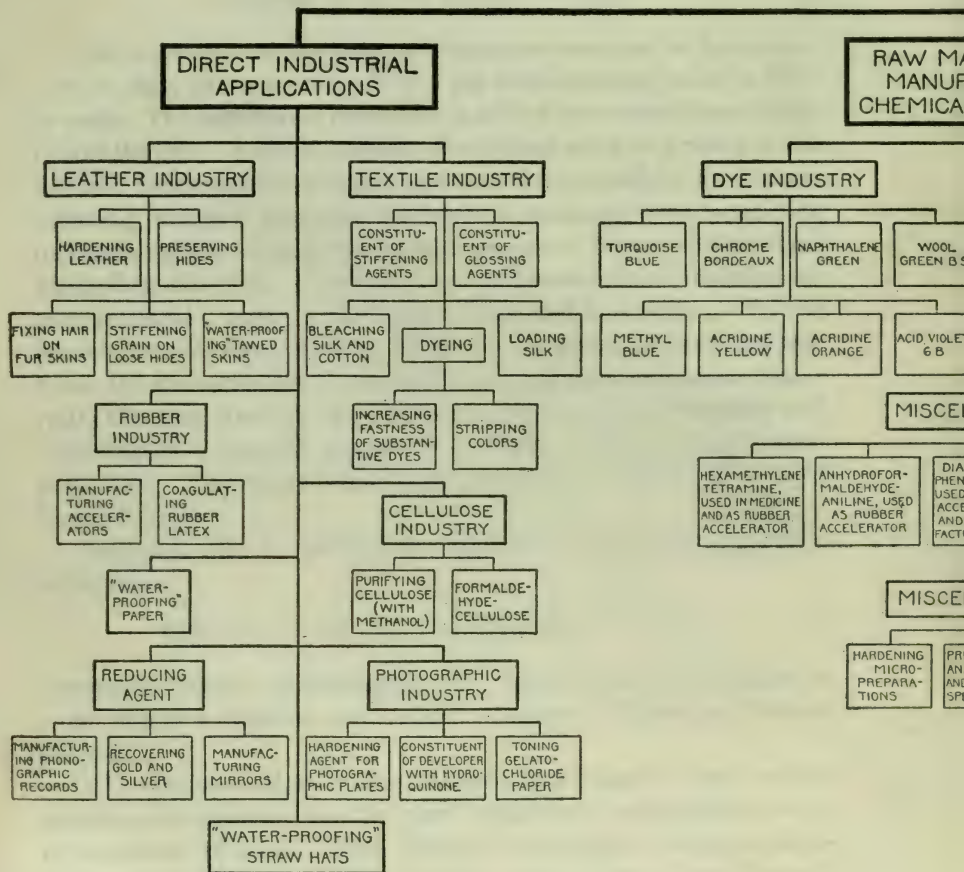
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN





USE  
FORMA

RAW MA  
MANUF  
CHEMICA



OF  
HYDE

AL IN  
RING  
DUCTS

OUS

OUS

CONSTITUENT  
OF  
EMBALMING  
FLUID

## APPLICATIONS IN DISINFECTION ETC.

### SYNTHETIC RESINS

ENOL-FORMALDEHYDE  
PHORONE-FORMALDEHYDE  
CASEIN-FORMALDEHYDE  
ROSIN-FORMALDEHYDE  
UREA-FORMALDEHYDE  
WOOD TAR-FORMALDEHYDE  
ACETONE-FORMALDEHYDE  
NAPHTHALENE-FORMALDEHYDE

PARAFORMAL-DEHYDE, USED IN DISINFECTING AND IN CHEMICAL SYNTHESIS  
"SYNTAN" USED IN TANNING

### DISINFECTANT

PER SE OR AS A POLYMER  
WITH INORGANIC DERIVATIVES  
WITH ALIPHATIC DERIVATIVES  
WITH AROMATIC DERIVATIVES  
WITH CARBOHYDRATES  
WITH TANNINS

#### DOMESTIC

REFRIGERATORS, CUPBOARDS, SINKS  
POTATO BINS, CELLARS  
FUMIGATING SICK ROOMS  
IN WHITEWASH

#### FARM

TREATMENT OF VARIOUS GRAINS FOR SMUT  
TREATMENT OF SOIL FOR VEGETABLES IN CASE OF ROOT KNOT  
TREATING OLD SOIL IN GREENHOUSES AND COLD FRAMES  
SPRAYING STABLES, PIG PENS, CHICKEN COUPS ETC.  
CLEANING CONTAINERS AND EQUIPMENT IN DAIRY

#### MEDICINE

TUBERCULOUS JOINTS  
ABCESSES AND INFECTED WOUNDS  
GARGLES AND MOUTH WASHES  
IRRIGATION OF CAVITIES

#### PHARMACY

AMPHOTROPIN, USED AS A URINARY ANTISEPTIC  
EMPYROFORM, USED IN SKIN DISEASES  
FORMICIN, USED AS LOCAL ANTISEPTIC  
GLUTON, USED AS AN ANTISEPTIC SURGICAL DRESSING  
HELMITOL, USED AS URINARY DISINFECTANT  
LYSOFORM FORMALDEHYDE-SOAP SOLUTION  
TANNOFORM, USED AS INTESTINAL ASTRINGENT  
VEROFORM, USED FOR CLEANSING AND DISINFECTING

SKIN DISEASES AS PSORIASIS AND LUPUS

1. 100  
2. 100

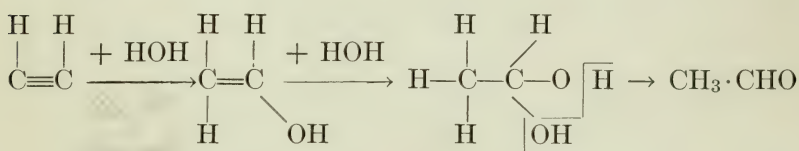
1. 100  
2. 100



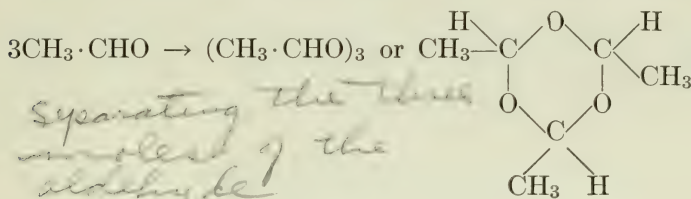


Another polymer of formaldehyde may be obtained by treating the substance with sulfuric acid and evaporating the solution. The paraformaldehyde (also known as "paraform") so obtained is a solid and is represented by the formula  $(\text{CH}_2\text{O})_x$ , where  $x$  stands for a number not yet definitely fixed. The formaldehyde gas may again be obtained by simply heating the polymerized formaldehyde.

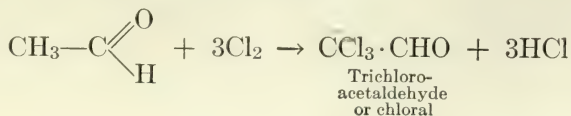
**Acetaldehyde**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$  (also called ethanal), is manufactured by passing acetylene into dilute  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  in presence of mercury salts (catalyst). It is probable that what happens may be represented thus:



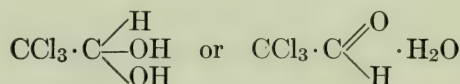
Acetaldehyde may be polymerized, just like formaldehyde. If acetaldehyde is treated with sulfuric acid we get **paraldehyde**:



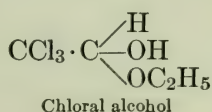
which, since it does not contain the carbonyl ( $>\text{CO}$ ) group, no longer behaves like an aldehyde. If the temperature be lowered (say to  $0^\circ$ ), instead of getting paraldehyde (a liquid), we get an isomeric compound, metaldehyde (a solid), with the same formula. Paraldehyde when heated with dilute acids is converted back to acetaldehyde. (Paraldehyde is used in medicine as a soporific.) Whereas  $\text{PCl}_5$  reacts with aldehydes, replacing the O of the CHO group by two Cl atoms, chlorine gas displaces the hydrogen atoms in the alkyl part of the molecule; so that, if acetaldehyde be taken as a type, we may get the following:



Chloral is prepared on a large scale from ethyl alcohol (see page 44). Chloral is an oily liquid with a penetrating smell. It reacts with water, forming **chloral hydrate**,

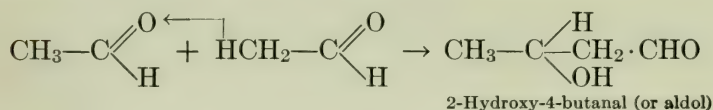


which is used as a soporific. In large doses, it acts as an anesthetic. Chloral also combines with alcohol to form a crystalline body



Bromal,  $\text{CBr}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$ , and iodal,  $\text{CI}_3 \cdot \text{CHO}$  are also known.

By means of dilute alkali, or a zinc chloride solution, two molecules of acetaldehyde may be made to combine with one another to form aldol, a derivative of butyraldehyde.



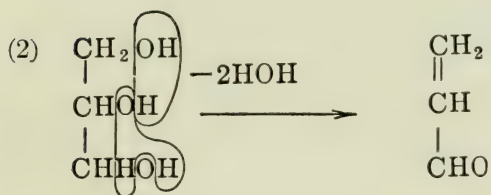
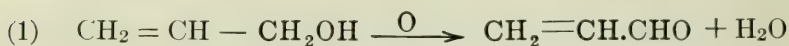
This is known as the **aldol condensation**, and, among other things, serves as a working hypothesis to explain the synthesis of fats in the plant kingdom and the conversion of sugars into fats in the animal body.

Aldehydes are detected (a) by their reduction of an ammoniacal silver nitrate solution to silver (silver mirror); (b) by the "resin" formation obtained with  $\text{NaOH}$ ; (c) by the formation of a reddish violet color with magenta, which has been decolorized with  $\text{SO}_2$  (the *Schiff* test); and (d) by reduction of an alkaline copper sulfate solution (*Fehling*' test), giving the red cuprous oxide.

Glyoxal,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CHO} \\ | \\ \text{CHO} \end{array}$ , is a dialdehyde. Its dimethyl derivative is dimethyl glyoxal,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}=\text{O} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C}=\text{O} \end{array}$ , and the dioxime of the latter is

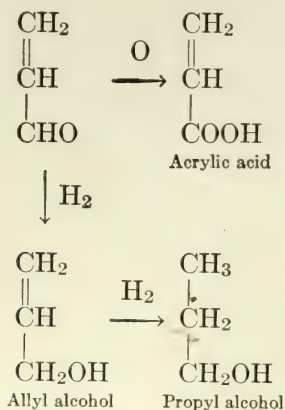
dimethyl glyoxime,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3-\text{C}=\text{NOH} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3-\text{C}=\text{NOH} \end{array}$ , a substance used in the gravimetric determination of nickel.

**Unsaturated Aldehydes.**—Acrylaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CHO}$ , (commonly called **acrolein**, and sometimes called propenal), is prepared either (1) by the oxidation of allyl alcohol, or (2) by heating glycerol with a dehydrating agent, as  $\text{KHSO}_4$ , or (3) by heating fats and oils to a somewhat high temperature.

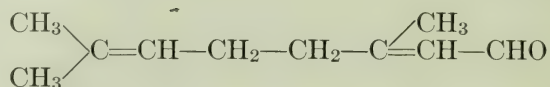


(The odor of burning fat and the odor observed when candles are extinguished are mainly due to acrolein. Due to its toxic and lachrymatory properties, it was used as a "tear gas" during the late war.)

The properties of acrolein depend, first, upon the fact that it has a double bond (and is, therefore, an unsaturated compound), and second, that it is an aldehyde; so that we get reactions such as these:





**Geranial or citral.**

is found in oil of lemons and citrons.

**KETONES**

**Acetone**,  $\text{CH}_3-\text{CO}-\text{CH}_3$  (also called propanone and dimethyl ketone) is prepared commercially by heating calcium acetate, and may also be isolated from the products obtained in the fermentation of maize, etc.

This liquid has a characteristic odor, a peppermint-like taste, and is miscible with water. b.p.  $56.1^\circ$ . It is flammable.

Acetone is used in the manufacture of chloroform, iodoform, sulfonal, smokeless powder, celluloid, etc. The chart facing p. 78 shows in detail the uses of acetone.

Acetone is an excellent solvent for animal and vegetable oils and for fats, gums, resins, cellulose acetate, nitrocellulose, etc.

Its chemical reactions have already been given (p. 71).

(Acetone is present in the urine and in the breath of persons suffering from severe diabetes.)

1881



# USES OF

## SOLVENT

### GARMENT CLEANING

COUPLE, OR COMMON SOLVENT, TO COMBINE TWO OR MORE IMMISCIBLE SOLVENTS

SPOTTING FLUIDS CONTAINING ACETONE ARE USED TO REMOVE VARNISH STAINS

USED WITH "TETRAPOLE" AND OTHER LIQUID SOAPS

AS A SOLVENT FOR ACETYLENE, IT IS THE MOST ECONOMICAL, DISSOLVING APPROXIMATELY 25 X ITS OWN VOLUME AT ORDINARY TEMPERATURE AND PRESSURE

## RAW MATERIALS

BENZYLIDINE ACETONE, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

BROMOFORM, USED IN MEDICINE AND ORGANIC PREPARATIONS

CHLOROBUTANE, A LOCAL ANESTHETIC AND ANTISEPTIC

INDIGO, USED IN DYE INDUSTRY

IODOFORM, USED IN MEDICINE

IONONE, USED IN PERFUME INDUSTRY

PINACONE, USED IN MFR. OF SYNTHETIC RUBBER

### PAINT AND VARNISH INDUSTRY

CONSTITUENT OF PAINT AND VARNISH REMOVERS

SOLVENT FOR NATURAL AND SYNTHETIC RESINS

SOLVENT IN BITUMINOUS PAINTS

### CHEMICAL PROCESSES

DEHYDRATION OR DESICCATION AGENT

EXTRACTION AGENT

SELECTIVE SOLVENT

PURIFICATION OF T.N.T. AND OTHER ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

### CELLULOSE ACETATE AND NITRATE INDUSTRIES

#### PROCESSING SOLVENTS

ARTIFICIAL SILK

ARTIFICIAL LEATHER

CELLULOSE ARTICLES

PARTIAL GRADES

#### VEHICLE-SOLVENTS

"DOPES"

LAC



# ACETONE

## INDUSTRIAL IN MANUFACTURE

CHLOROACETONE, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

CHLOROFORM, A SOLVENT AND ANESTHETIC

DIACETONE ALCOHOL, A SOLVENT FOR CELLULOSE ESTERS

ISOPRENE, USED IN MFR. OF SYNTHETIC RUBBER

ISOPROPYL ALCOHOL, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS AND MEDICINE

MESITYL OXIDE, USED IN CELLULOSE ACETATE SOLVENTS

SYNTHETIC RESINS AND PLASTICS

PYROXYLIN PLASTICS

SMOKELESS POWDER

## MISCELLANEOUS APPLICATIONS

### MEDICINE

AS A MILD ALTERNATIVE AND ANTHELMINTIC

AS A VEHICLE IN LINIMENTS

TREATMENT OF PURULENT WOUNDS

### CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

TO DETERMINE RESIN CONTENT OF CRUDE RUBBER

EXAMINATION OF BITUMENS

ACETONE SATURATED WITH  $\text{SO}_2$  IS USED IN COAL EXTRACTIONS AND SEPARATION OF UNSATURATED HYDROCARBONS FROM SATURATED BODIES

### AUTOMOTIVE INDUSTRY

CONSTITUENT OF CARBON-REMOVERS, TO REMOVE CARBON FROM CYLINDERS OF INTERNAL-COMBUSTION ENGINES

USED AS A BLENDING AGENT IN COMPOSITE MOTOR FUELS

SULFITE AND HYDROSULFITE OF ACETONE ARE USED IN PHOTOGRAPHY

DENATURANT FOR ETHYL ALCOHOL

ARTIFICIAL SEASONING OF WOOD

PURIFICATION OF CRUDE RUBBER

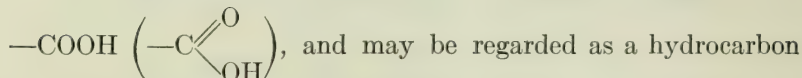
FREEZING OF MICROTOMES



## CHAPTER VIII

### ACIDS

An organic acid contains the "carboxyl" group,



in which one or more of the hydrogens is replaced by COOH groups; e.g.,  $\text{CH}_3\text{H} \longrightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOH}$ . If the compound contains one COOH group, it is known as a monobasic acid; if two such groups, dibasic; if three, tribasic; etc. The basicity depends on the number of  $\cdot\text{COOH}$  groups present in the molecule. We have analogous types in inorganic chemistry; e.g.,  $\text{HCl}-\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4-\text{H}_3\text{PO}_4$ , etc.

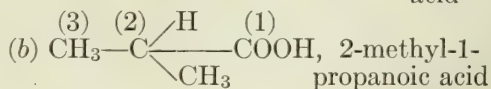
**Nomenclature.**—Several acids have names that suggest their origin (formic from "formica," butyric from butter, valeric from "valeriana," palmitic from palm oil, etc.). The acids may also be named by changing the ending *e* of the hydrocarbons containing the same number of carbon atoms, to *oic*; so that

$\text{CH}_4$ , methane becomes  $\text{H} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , methanoic acid

$\text{C}_2\text{H}_6$ , ethane becomes  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , ethanoic acid

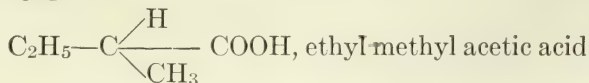
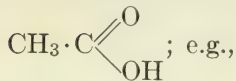
$\text{C}_3\text{H}_8$ , propane becomes  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , propanoic acid

$\text{C}_4\text{H}_{10}$ , butane becomes (a)  $\text{CH}_3-\text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2-\text{COOH}$ , butanoic acid



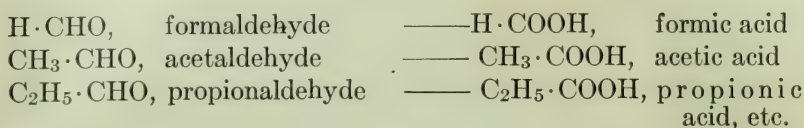
This type of nomenclature is seldom used.

Or they may be named as derivatives of acetic acid,

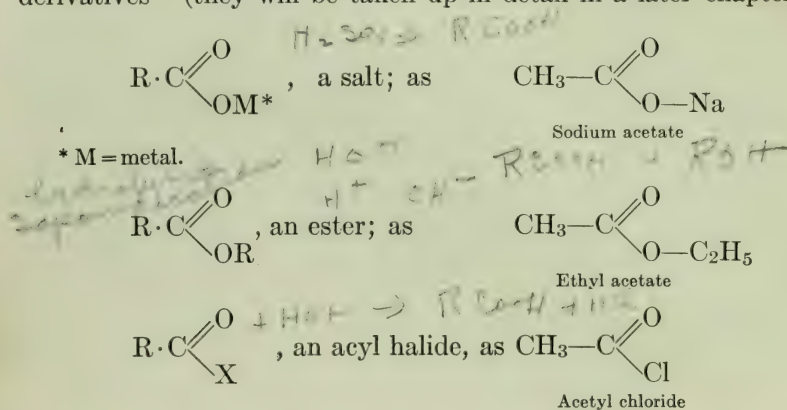




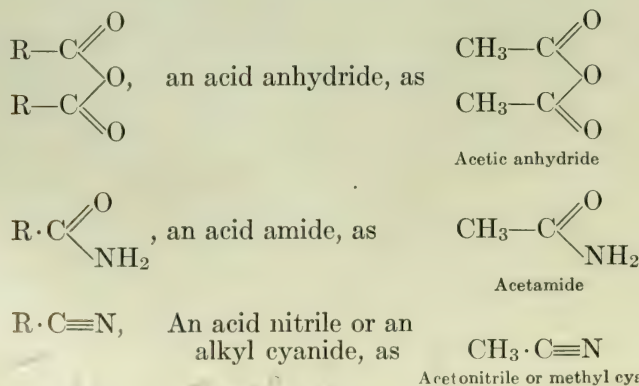
or as the acids of the corresponding aldehydes:



**Types of Acid Derivatives.**—Acids in which some element or group has been substituted in the  $\cdot\text{COOH}$  group are called “acid derivatives” (they will be taken up in detail in a later chapter):



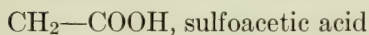
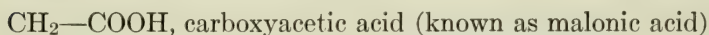
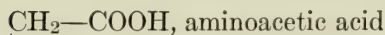
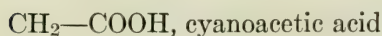
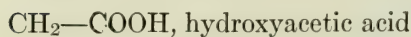
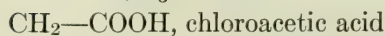
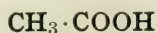
The  $\text{R} \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{O} \\ // \\ \text{O} \end{array}$  group is known as the “acyl” group;  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{O} \\ // \\ \text{O} \end{array}$  group is the acetyl group.



**Types of Substituted Acids.**—Acids in which the  $\cdot\text{COOH}$  groups remain, but substitution has taken place in the residual

groups (as  $\text{CH}_3$ ), are known as "substituted acids." (They will be taken up in detail in later chapters.)

Illustration with acetic acid:

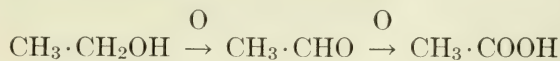


(The  $\text{—SO}_3\text{H}$  group is known as the sulfonic acid group or sulfo group.)

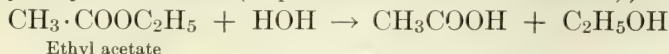
The student should at this point thoroughly familiarize himself with these type compounds, as frequent allusion will be made to them.

#### MONOBASIC ACIDS (FATTY ACID SERIES<sup>1</sup>), $\text{R—COOH}$

**General Methods of Preparation.**—1. Oxidation of a primary alcohol, or of an aldehyde; e.g.,



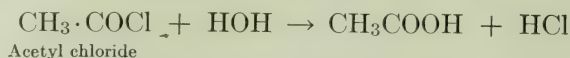
2. Hydrolysis of esters (in presence of acids or alkalies); e.g.,



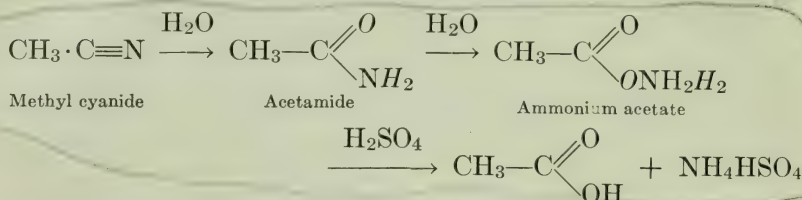
Ethyl acetate

<sup>1</sup>Named **Fatty acids** because many of them are contained in fats, or are formed from fats on hydrolysis.

3. Hydrolysis of acyl halides with water; e.g.,

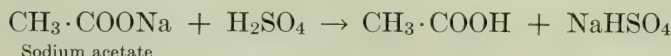


4. Hydrolysis of alkyl cyanides or of acid amides; e.g.,



(A  $-\text{CN}$  group hydrolyzes to a  $-\text{COOH}$  group.)

5. Decomposition of salts of organic acids with mineral acids; e.g.,



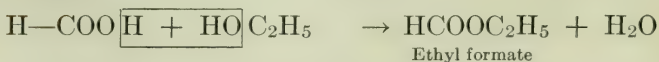
**General Properties.** The lower members up to  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_{19} \cdot \text{COOH}$  are liquids with strong odors, and the higher ones, waxy solids. They ionize to a slight extent (e.g.,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COO}^-\text{H}^+$ ) but their salts ionize quite considerably. They are stable substances and difficult to oxidize.

The acids form:

(a) Salts with bases; e.g.,



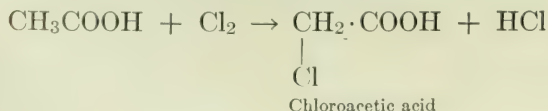
(b) Esters with alcohols; e.g.,



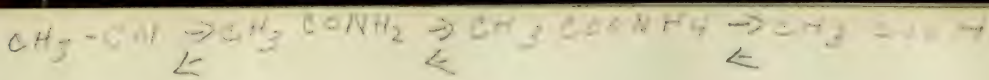
(c) Acyl halides with  $\text{PCl}_5$ ; e.g.,



(d) Halogen substitution products (where halogen substitutes in the alkyl group); e.g.,







# NORMAL FATTY ACIDS

83

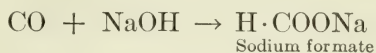
## NORMAL FATTY ACIDS \*

Name	Formula
Formic acid.....	H·COOH
Acetic acid.....	CH <sub>3</sub> ·COOH
Propionic acid.....	C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>5</sub> ·COOH
Butyric acid.....	C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>7</sub> ·COOH
Valeric acid.....	C <sub>4</sub> H <sub>9</sub> ·COOH
Caproic acid.....	C <sub>5</sub> H <sub>11</sub> ·COOH
Heptic acid.....	C <sub>6</sub> H <sub>13</sub> ·COOH
Caprylic acid.....	C <sub>7</sub> H <sub>15</sub> ·COOH
Nonylic acid.....	C <sub>8</sub> H <sub>17</sub> ·COOH
Capric acid.....	C <sub>9</sub> H <sub>19</sub> ·COOH
Undecylic acid.....	C <sub>10</sub> H <sub>21</sub> ·COOH
Lauric acid.....	C <sub>11</sub> H <sub>23</sub> ·COOH
.	.
.	.
.	.
* Palmitic acid.....	C <sub>15</sub> H <sub>31</sub> ·COOH
Margaric acid.....	C <sub>16</sub> H <sub>33</sub> ·COOH
* Stearic acid.....	C <sub>17</sub> H <sub>35</sub> ·COOH
Arachidic acid.....	C <sub>19</sub> H <sub>39</sub> ·COOH
.	.
.	.
.	.
Melissic acid.....	C <sub>23</sub> H <sub>59</sub> ·COOH

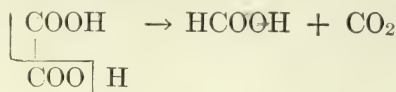
\* For source of these acids, see chapter on fats (p. 100).

**Formic Acid**, H—COOH (also known as methanoic acid) is a colorless liquid, with an odor resembling sulfur dioxide. It is the strongest acid of this series. It occurs in bees, ants, nettles and pine needles. (The “stinging” by bees is due to penetration of formic acid under the skin.)

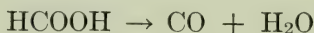
Formic acid is manufactured by heating sodium hydroxide to 150°–170° with carbon monoxide under 6–7 atmospheres of pressure:



In the laboratory, it is prepared by heating oxalic acid with glycerol. The reactions involved are somewhat complex, but the essential feature may be represented thus:

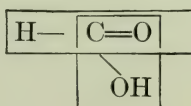


When formic acid is heated with sulfuric acid, we get carbon monoxide and water:



(CO cannot be regarded as the anhydride of HCOOH since CO mixed with water does not give formic acid.)

Formic acid is a reducing agent. This may be explained on the theory that it contains an aldehyde (CHO) as well as an acid (COOH) group:



Formic acid is used in the manufacture of dyestuffs, in dyeing and finishing of textiles, in tanning, etc.

*Bacterium* X  
**Acetic Acid.**— $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{COOH}$  (ethanoic acid), occurs in fruits and oils in the form of esters. The common form, known as **vinegar**, is produced by the fermentation of fruit juices (such as the apple), which contain sugar. The sugar is first converted to alcohol (due to the presence of the enzyme, zymase), giving us cider, and the latter is oxidized to acetic acid by oxidizing bacteria present in the juice. For large scale production, dilute (6–9 per cent) alcoholic liquor (product of fermentation) is allowed to trickle over beechwood shavings, which are impregnated with “*Bacterium aceti*,” or mother of vinegar. Air is admitted on the side of the vats to oxidize the  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{OH}$  into  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{COOH}$ . The temperature is kept at about  $35^\circ$ . After the conversion of the alcohol to acetic acid, the product is sold as vinegar.

Vinegar contains from about 3–6 per cent of acetic acid, but also contains other acids (derived from fruit), esters, albuminous matter, etc. Stronger concentration of the acid is obtained from “pyroligneous acid,” which contains acetic acid (4–10 per cent), this being separated from the other constituents of pyroligneous acid by conversion into calcium acetate,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{COO})_2\text{Ca}$  and the subsequent liberation of the acid by the addition of sulfuric acid.

**Glacial acetic acid** is practically 100 per cent acetic acid, and, as its name implies, resembles ice when frozen.

Acetic acid is used as a solvent and to prepare acetates. It

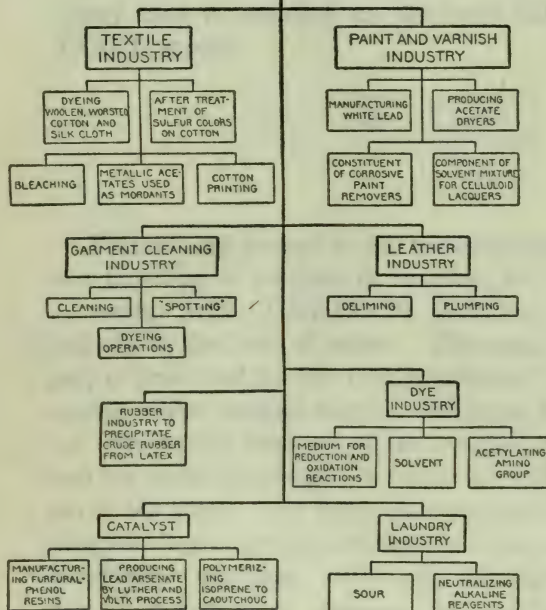




USES  
ACETIC

RAW MAT  
MANUFAC  
CHEMICAL

# DIRECT INDUSTRIAL APPLICATIONS



## SALTS

ALUMINUM ACETATE, USED IN WATERPROOFING CLOTH AND AS MORDANT IN TEXTILE DYEING	AMMONIUM ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE AND AS CHEMICAL REAGENT	BARIUM ACETATE, USED AS CHEMICAL REAGENT	CALCIUM ACETATE, USED IN MANUFACTURING ACETONE AND ACETIC ACID
CHROMIUM ACETATE, USED IN TEXTILE INDUSTRY	COBALT ACETATE, USED IN SYMPATHETIC INK	COPPER ACETATE, USED IN INSECTICIDE, TEXTILE AND CERAMIC INDUSTRIES	BASIC COPPER ACETATE, USED IN PAINT, PIGMENTS, INSECTICIDES AND TEXTILE INDUSTRY
FERRIC ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE AND TEXTILE INDUSTRY	BASIC FERRIC ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE AND TEXTILE INDUSTRY	LEAD ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE AND TEXTILE INDUSTRY	BASIC LEAD ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE AND ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY
TRIBASIC LEAD ACETATE, USED IN WEIGHING SILK AND TEXTILE PRINTING	MANGANESE ACETATE, USED IN TEXTILE INDUSTRY	MERCURIUS ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE	POTASSIUM ACETATE, USED AS DEHYDRATING AGENT AND IN MEDICINE
SODIUM ACETATE, USED IN MANUFACTURING PIGMENTS, ACETIC ETHER AND COUMARINE	TIN ACETATE, USED IN TEXTILE INDUSTRY	URANIUM ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE AND ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY	YTRIUM ACETATE, USED IN ANALYTICAL CHEMISTRY
ZINC ACETATE, USED IN MEDICINE PRESERVING WOOD AND TEXTILE INDUSTRY			

## ESTERS

AMYL ACETATE, USED AS SOLVENT AND IN PREPARATION OF FLAVORING COMPOUNDS	BENZYL ACETATE, USED IN PERFUMES	CELLULOSE ACETATE, USED IN MANUFACTURING FILMS, SILKS, LACQUERS, ETC.	ETHYL ACETATE, USED AS SOLVENT IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS AND PERFUMES
GERANYL ACETATE, USED IN PERFUMES	LINALYL ACETATE, USED IN EXTRACTS	METHYL ACETATE, USED AS SOLVENT AND IN EXTRACTS AND PERFUMERY	PHENYLETHYL ACETATE, USED IN PERFUMES
RHODINAL ACETATE, USED IN PERFUMES		TERPINYL ACETATE, USED IN PERFUMES	

N  
TS

C  
A  
E

S  
S

D,  
S

E,  
ND  
Y

E,  
ND  
Y

# MISCELLANEOUS APPLICATIONS

## ACIDS

AMYGDALIC ACID, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

CACODYLIC ACID, USED IN MEDICINE AND ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

CINNAMIC ACID, USED IN MEDICINE AND IN PERFUMES

CROTONIC ACID, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

THIOACETIC ACID, USED AS CHEMICAL REAGENT

## HALOGENATED COMPOUNDS

ACETYL CHLORIDE, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

ACETYL IODIDE, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

MONOBROMO-ACETIC ACID, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

MONOCHLORO-ACETIC ACID, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS AND MEDICINE

TRICHLORO-ACETIC ACID, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS AND MEDICINE

## MISCELLANEOUS COMPOUNDS

ACETANILIDE, USED IN MEDICINE AND AS PRESERVATIVE FOR  $H_2O_2$

ACETIC ANHYDRIDE, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

ACETIN, USED IN EXPLOSIVES

ACETOPHENONE, USED IN MEDICINE

ACETOPHENONE, USED IN MEDICINE AND PERFUMERY

ANTIPYRINE, USED IN MEDICINE

DIACETYL-TANNIN, USED IN MEDICINE

INDOFORM, USED IN MEDICINE

ISOVALERIC ALDEHYDE, USED IN FLAVORING AND PERFUMERY

p-NITROACET-ANILIDE, USED IN ORGANIC SYNTHESIS

TETRAMETHYL-DIAMINE, USED IN DYE STUFFS

## MEDICINE

DILUTE ACETIC

GLACIAL ACETIC

CAUSTIC IN SKIN AFFECTIONS

WARTS

CONDYLOMATA

PARASITE IN RINGWORMS

PHYREASIS

INTERNAL AS A REFRIGERANT

INTERNAL TO REDUCE OBESITY AND SLIGHT HEMORRHOGE

INHALATION OF VAPOR FOR RELIEF OF POST ANESTHETIC NAUSEA

SEVEN PER CENT SOLUTION AS A GERMICIDE

USED BY ENEMA FOR DESTRUCTION OF ASCARIDES

AS AN ASTRINGENT AND STYPTIC

LOCALLY IN SUPERFICIAL INFLAMMATION

IN ADHESIVES GLUES AND PLASTERS

IN MEAT PRESERVATIVES

AS A VERMIN KILLER

IN CHEMICAL STAINS

IN POLISHES

IN INK REMOVERS

IN CLEANING CELLULOID ARTICLES

IN FROSTING CELLULOID ARTICLES

IN PREPARING OF VINEGAR

AS AN AGGLUTINANT IN MAKING CEMENTS

## CHEMICAL ANALYSIS

OIL AND FAT

MISCELLANEOUS

IODINE ABSORPTION NUMBER

ACETYL VALUE

DETERMINATION OF URANIUM IN CARNOTITE

BASIC ACETATE SEPARATION IN FORM OF ACETATE

VALENT'S TEST

JEAN'S TEST

LOW'S TEST FOR AZO COLORS

PHYSIOLOGICAL

GASTRIC, PROTEIN, FECAL, BLOOD AND URINE ANALYSIS

AS A WEAK ACIDIFYING AGENT

IN PREVENTING ROPE IN BREAD

PREVENTING FOG IN COLLOIDION

LIQUIFIER OF GELATIN

AS AN ACIDULENT IN BEVERAGES

TO COAGULATE CASEIN IN MILK

PREPARING MOULDED CASEIN PRODUCTS

TO FORTIFY CIDER VINEGAR

FOR FIXATION OF ALCOHOL AND ETHER

EXTRACTION AGENT FOR WATER-SOLUBLE VITAMIN B





is also employed in the manufacture of dyes, drugs (like acetanilide, p. 225) and white lead. The chart facing p. 84 shows the extensive uses of acetic acid.

**Propionic Acid.**— $C_2H_5 \cdot COOH$ , is present in small amounts in pyroligneous acid.

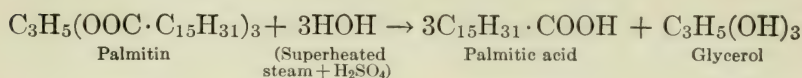
**Butyric Acid.**— $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , occurs in two forms: as the normal (the formula for which has just been given), and the

iso,  $\begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ CH_3 \end{matrix} \rangle CH \cdot COOH$ . The normal variety is present in rancid

butter, muscle, sweat, cheese, feces, etc. It has a disagreeable odor. (Calcium *n*-butyrate is one of the few substances more soluble in cold than in hot water.)

**Isovaleric Acid,**  $\begin{matrix} CH_3 \\ CH_3 \end{matrix} \rangle CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot COOH$ , occurs in angelica and valerian roots.

✓ **Palmitic Acid,**  $C_{15}H_{31} \cdot COOH$ , and **stearic acid,**  $C_{17}H_{35} \cdot COOH$  are widely distributed, accompanied by oleic acid,  $C_{17}H_{33} \cdot COOH$ , in most animal and vegetable oils and fats, as the glyceryl esters. (See Chapter X.) From these esters the acids are obtained by hydrolysis; e.g.,



The stearin candles of commerce consist of a mixture of palmitic with excess of stearic acid, and some paraffin added to prevent crystallization and brittleness.

#### UNSATURATED MONOBASIC ACIDS

**Acrylic Acid,**  $CH_2=CH \cdot COOH$  (also called propenoic acid) shows characteristic properties due to its double bond and to its carboxyl group.

**Crotonic Acid,**  $CH_3-CH=CH \cdot COOH$ , derives its name from croton oil.

✓ **Oleic Acid,**  $CH_3(CH_2)_7CH=CH(CH_2)_7COOH$ , ( $C_{17}H_{33} \cdot COOH$ ) is present as the glyceryl ester in fats and oils (p. 99), and is usually found associated with palmitic and stearic acids. Oleic acid is a liquid and on a large scale it is separated from the solid

palmitic and stearic acids by squeezing it out under hydraulic pressure. Commercial oleic acid is known as "Red oil" and is used for the manufacture of soap, greases, etc. It is an unsaturated acid, having its double bond between the ninth and tenth carbon atoms. With hydrogen, it is converted into the saturated stearic acid.

**Linoleic Acid**,  $C_{17}H_{31}COOH$ , contains two double bonds. It is present in the form of a glyceryl ester in linseed oil and other drying oils.

#### DIBASIC ACIDS, $C_nH_{2n}(COOH)_2$

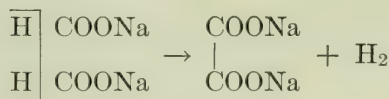
These compounds contain two carboxyl groups. (They are analogous to  $H_2SO_4$ , which contains two replaceable hydrogens.) They are capable of forming two series of salts, viz., acid and normal, and likewise two series of amides, esters, chlorides, etc. The general type reactions are analogous to those given for monobasic acids.

**Oxalic Acid**,  $COOH$ , is present, in the form of salts (potassium,



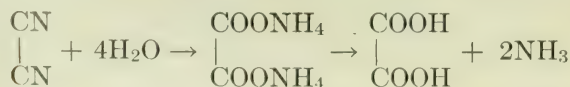
calcium, etc.) in some plants (oxalis variety). Rhubarb is rich in it. The urine often contains small quantities of calcium oxalate.

**Preparation.**—Sugars, cellulose and starch, when oxidized with nitric acid, yield oxalic acid. The commercial method is to heat sawdust with  $NaOH$  at  $240^\circ$ , which yields sodium oxalate. A still more recent method is to heat sodium formate (obtained from carbon monoxide and sodium hydroxide, p. 83) to  $400^\circ$ :

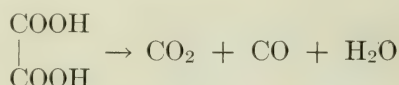


Another method of preparation will be referred to because it is based on a reaction already discussed.

When cyanogen is hydrolyzed, we get oxalic acid:



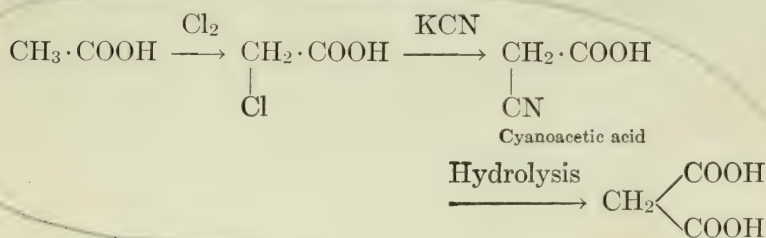
When oxalic acid is heated with sulfuric acid, we get carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ :



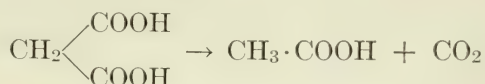
(The student will remember the reaction as a laboratory method for the preparation of CO. The  $\text{CO}_2$  is removed by passing the mixture of gases through alkali.)

Oxalic acid is a highly poisonous substance (perhaps by liberating CO in the system). It is used in analytical chemistry, in the manufacture of dyes, bleaching, metal polishes, tanning, etc. Oxalic acid is the strongest organic acid.

**Malonic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{COOH} \\ \searrow \text{COOH} \end{array}$ , was first obtained by oxidizing malic acid (the acid present in apples, p. 125). Its synthesis is accomplished as follows:



When heated, malonic acid is first converted into acetic acid by the loss of  $\text{CO}_2$ :

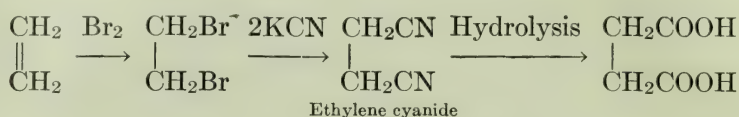


and this proves malonic acid to be a dicarboxylic acid derivative of methane.

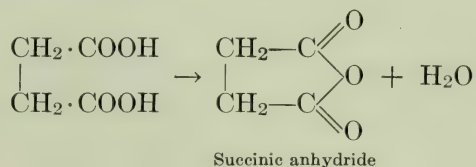
**Succinic Acid**,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , occurs in amber, fossil wood and  $\begin{array}{c} | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH} \end{array}$  in the urine of animals. It is produced in processes involving



fermentation and may be obtained by distilling amber. Its synthesis may be accomplished thus:



When the acid is heated, it loses a molecule of water and is converted to its anhydride:



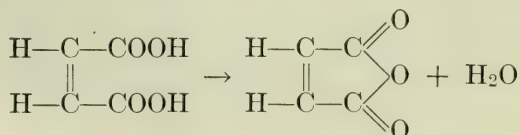
#### UNSATURATED DIBASIC ACIDS

Two compounds with the formula  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_2(\text{COOH})_2$  are known, one being **maleic acid** and the other **fumaric acid**.

Fumaric acid occurs in various fungi, iceland moss, etc. Maleic acid is not a natural product. The formulas ascribed to the two isomers are:



This type of isomerism is known as the "ethylene" or "geometric type."<sup>1</sup> When maleic acid is heated it produces an anhydride.

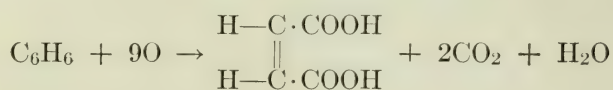


Fumaric acid does not yield an anhydride, which suggests that a compound represented by two  $\cdot\text{COOH}$  groups in juxtaposition has the maleic acid formula.

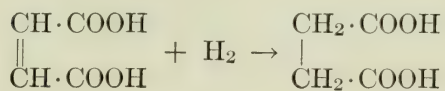
<sup>1</sup> It is suggested that the instructor show this type of isomerism with the Kekulé models.

(The system of nomenclature adopted to distinguish between the two isomers is to term the compound with similar groups on the same side as the *cis*-form, and the compound with similar groups on opposite sides on the molecule as the *trans*-form.)

Maleic acid is prepared on a commercial scale by the catalytic (air) oxidation of benzene vapor:



Both fumaric and maleic acids on reduction yield succinic acid:



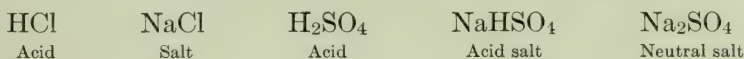
## CHAPTER IX

### SALTS AND ESTERS OF INORGANIC AND ORGANIC ACIDS

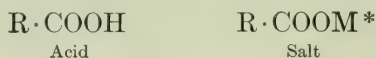
#### SALTS

SALTS of organic acids are important for a number of reasons. In the first place, they are used in the preparation of various organic compounds (see below); then again a number of them are the source of certain elements which the body needs; and finally a group of them belong to the household substances which go under the common name of "soap."

In inorganic chemistry, a salt may be looked upon as an acid in which the acid hydrogen is replaced by a metal; e.g.,

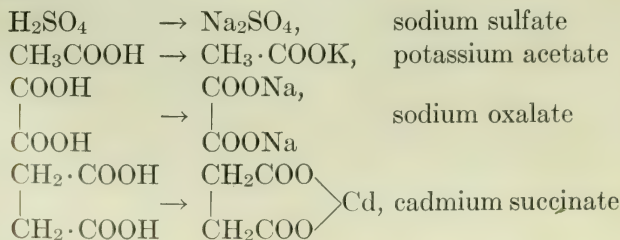


In a similar way, when the acid hydrogen of an organic acid is replaced by a metal, we get a **salt**:



For example:  $\text{CH}_3\text{COONa}$  (sodium acetate),  $(\text{H} \cdot \text{COO})_2\text{Cu}$  (copper formate),  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{33} \cdot \text{COONa}$  (sodium oleate), etc.

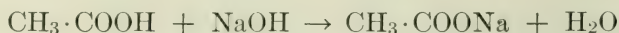
The naming of these salts is analogous to the naming of inorganic salts:



\* M = metal.



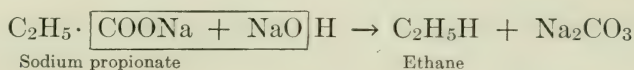
**General Methods of Preparation.**—1. The action of an acid on a base; e.g.,



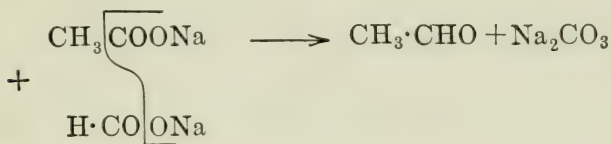
2. The action of an acid on an oxide, or a carbonate; e.g.,



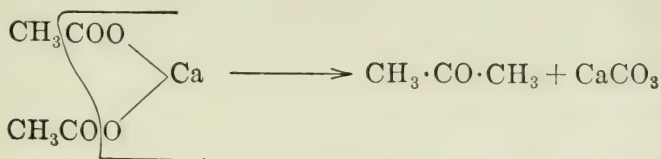
**General Properties.**—They are usually crystalline substances and often contain water of crystallization. Some, when heated with soda lime, yield hydrocarbons; e.g.,



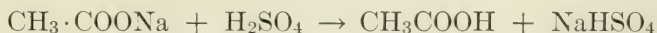
others yield aldehydes;



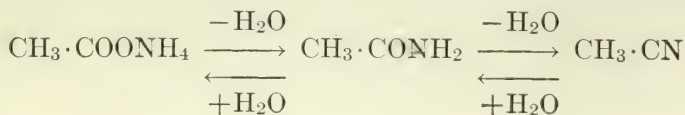
and still others, ketones;



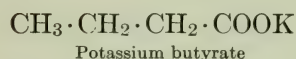
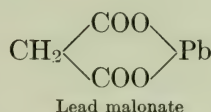
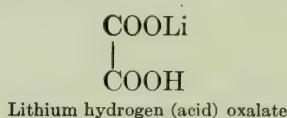
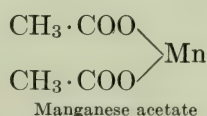
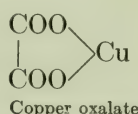
The free acid may be liberated from these salts by the addition of a stronger acid; e.g.,



The ammonium salts, when heated, are first converted to the acid amides and then to the cyanides (the reverse process of converting a cyanide into the acid being one of hydrolysis); e.g.,



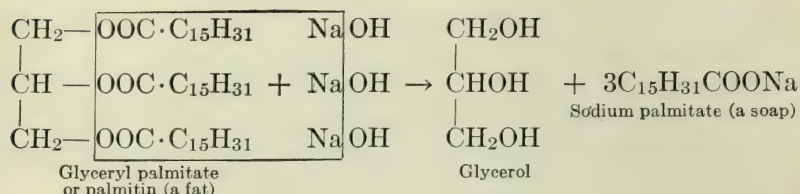
Very many salts are known. The names and composition of only a few of these will be given:



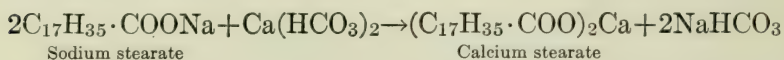
$\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COO} \\ | \\ \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COO} \end{array} \text{Pb} \cdot 3\text{H}_2\text{O}$  is "sugar of lead"; the "basic lead acetate," used to purify sugar and many biological substances, is  $\text{Pb} \begin{array}{c} \text{OH} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{OOC} \cdot \text{CH}_3 \end{array}$ ; "verdigris," or "green pigment," is a com-

bination of copper hydroxide and copper acetate,  $\text{Cu}(\text{OH})_2 \cdot (\text{CH}_3\text{COO})_2\text{Cu}$ ; "Paris green," the insecticide, is a combination of copper arsenite and copper acetate,  $(\text{CH}_3\text{COO})_2\text{Cu} \cdot \text{Cu}_3\text{As}_2\text{O}_6$ ; iron, aluminum and chromium acetates are used as mordants in dyeing and calico printing.

**Soaps.**—The sodium or potassium salts of some of the higher acids (obtained from fats and vegetable oils), such as palmitic,  $\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31} \cdot \text{COOH}$ ; stearic,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{35} \cdot \text{COOH}$ ; and oleic,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{33} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , are known as **soaps**. Without going into the details of manufacture of these soaps, it may be pointed out that the principle involved is the conversion of the fat into soap and glycerol by boiling with alkali, and the separation of the soap from the glycerol by a process known as "salting out," which means that salt ( $\text{NaCl}$ ) is added to the mixture, whereby the soap comes to the surface and is then ladled off. The reaction may be represented thus:



The solid soaps are sodium salts while the soft soaps are potassium salts. Soaps added to "hard" water (containing calcium or magnesium salts in solution) have their sodium atom replaced by either calcium or magnesium, thereby forming soaps insoluble in water:



This explains the "curds" formed when soap is used in hard water.

("Lead plaster" is a lead soap made from lead oxide or lead acetate, which has been boiled with fat and water. Lead, manganese or cobalt soaps are used as "dryers" in paints, to hasten the process of drying. Calcium soaps are used for lubricating greases. Zinc stearate finds extensive use in toilet powders. The "medicated" soaps contain one or more of such substances as carbolic acid, salicylic acid, sulfur, cresol, resorcinol, etc. Perfume and coloring materials are often added to soaps.)

## ESTERS

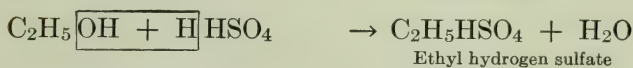
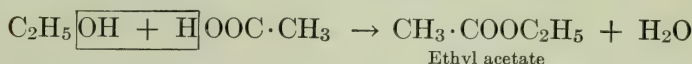
An **ester** is either an inorganic or organic acid in which the acid hydrogen has been replaced by an R group (or a salt in which the metal is replaced by an R group):

HCl, acid	RCl,	ester
H <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub> , acid	RHSO <sub>4</sub> ,	acid ester
	or	
	R <sub>2</sub> SO <sub>4</sub>	ester
HONO <sub>2</sub> , acid	RONO <sub>2</sub> ,	ester
HONO, acid	RONO,	ester
CH <sub>3</sub> ·COOH, acid	CH <sub>3</sub> ·COOR,	ester
COOH,	COOR	
acid	ester	or
COOH,	COOR,	COOR
		acid ester
		COOH,

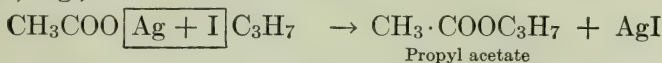


Esters are widely distributed in nature, and are responsible for the characteristic odors of many fruits, flavors and flowers. They have very agreeable odors and are used as flavoring materials and in perfumes. Since they are volatile, the esters are also called "ethereal salts." They ionize to a very slight extent and are usually insoluble in water.

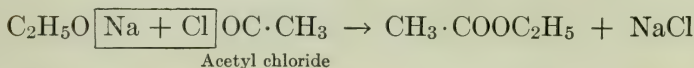
**General Methods of Preparation.**—1. By the interaction of an alcohol and an acid; e.g.,



2. By the interaction of a salt of an acid with an organic halide; e.g.,



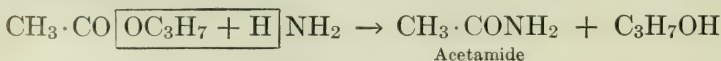
3. The action of an acyl halide on an alcoholate; e.g.,



**General Properties.**—The esters are neutral substances, insoluble in water. Though the salts ionize quite readily, the esters do not. Upon boiling with dilute acid or alkali, hydrolysis takes place, the process being known as **saponification** (a process employed in making soap); e.g.,



Ammonia converts them to the corresponding amide; e.g.,



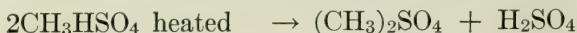
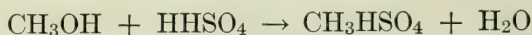
**Esters of Inorganic Acids.**—(The alkyl halides discussed in Chap. IV (p. 43) are esters of hydriodic, hydrobromic and hydrochloric acids. They will not be discussed again in this section.)

**Ethyl nitrite**,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\cdot\text{ONO}$ , has an apple-like odor. Its alcoholic solution is the "sweet spirit of nitre." **Isoamyl nitrite**,

$C_5H_{11} \cdot ONO$ , is used in medicine as an antispasmodic and anodyne.

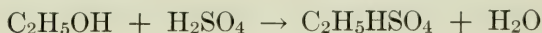
**Ethyl nitrate**,  $C_2H_5ONO_2$ , has a fruity odor. It is explosive.

**Dimethyl sulfate**,  $(CH_3)_2SO_4$ , may be prepared thus:



It finds use as a methylating agent (to introduce methyl groups into compounds).

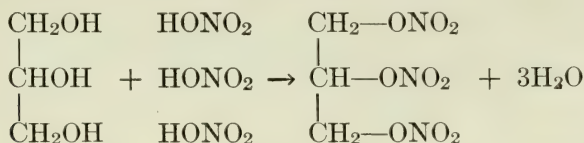
**Ethyl sulfuric acid**,  $C_2H_5HSO_4$  (also called **ethyl hydrogen sulfate**), may be prepared by the action of conc. sulfuric acid on ethyl alcohol at  $100^\circ$ :



It may be recalled at this point that when ethyl hydrogen sulfate is heated to about  $170^\circ$  we get ethylene (p. 42) and when treated with alcohol it yields ether (p. 65).

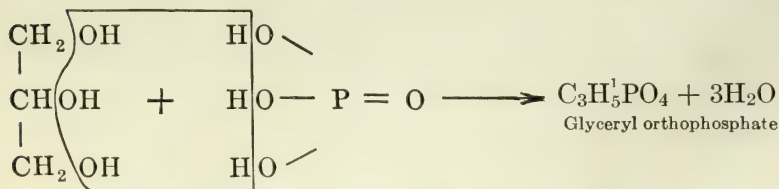
**Diethyl sulfate**,  $(C_2H_5)_2SO_4$ , is used as an ethylating agent. It has a peppermint-like odor.

**Glyceryl trinitrate**, commonly, but erroneously, called **nitroglycerine**, is prepared by the action of nitric acid on glycerine ( $H_2SO_4$  is used as dehydrating agent):



It is used in medicine as a circulatory depressant and is the active constituent of dynamite (see p. 62).

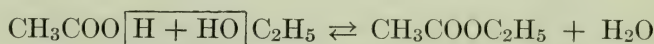
**Glyceryl phosphate** (ortho) is prepared in a similar manner:



<sup>1</sup> The  $C_3H_5$  group, if trivalent, is known as the glyceryl group; if  $C_3H_5$  is monovalent, it is known as the allyl group.

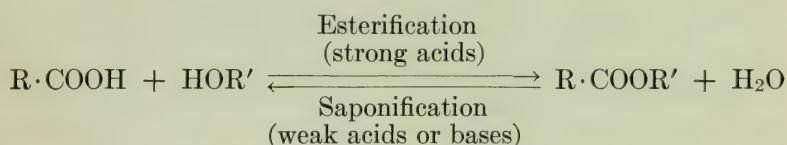
(RCN may be regarded as an ester of HCN. This type of compound will be treated later—(p. 155.)

**Esters of Organic Acids.**—When an inorganic acid and an alkali react, a salt is immediately formed; when, however, an organic acid and an alcohol (in some respects the analogue of the alkali) react, the ester is formed, but slowly:



When equimolecular quantities are used, only 66 per cent of the ester is produced. An increase of temperature increases the velocity of the reaction, but not the yield of ester. The latter may be increased by the addition of a catalyst, or a dehydrating agent, such as  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  or  $\text{HCl}$  gas.

**Saponification** to which we have alluded (p. 94) is hydrolysis, and **esterification** is the reverse of this:



Many of these esters are known. They are used extensively in artificial fruit essences, flavors, perfumes, extracts, etc. Very many soft drinks on the market are artificially colored and flavored. Synthetic esters are used to flavor them and a number of coal-tar dyes to color them. Only a few can be mentioned here.

**Ethyl acetate**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , is used as a solvent for nitro-cellulose, in the preparation of photographic films, and in resins and essences.

**Isoamyl acetate**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOC}_5\text{H}_{11}$ , is found in pear oil and is used as a solvent for gun-cotton and in the preparation of banana oil or "bronzing" liquid.

**Ethyl butyrate**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , is a constituent of pine-apples.

**Isoamyl isovalerate**,  $\text{C}_4\text{H}_9 \cdot \text{COOC}_5\text{H}_{11}$ , is found in apples.

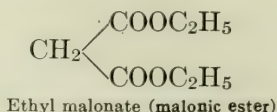
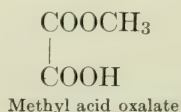
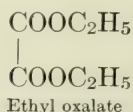
**Octyl acetate**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOC}_8\text{H}_{17}$ , occurs in oranges.

**Ethyl formate**,  $\text{H} \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$ , is a constituent of artificial rum.

**Amyl butyrate**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_7 \cdot \text{COOC}_5\text{H}_{11}$ , has an apricot flavor.

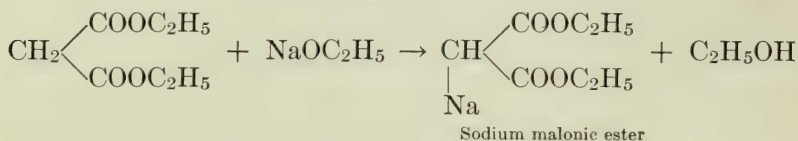


**Myricyl palmitate**,  $C_{15}H_{31} \cdot COOC_{30}H_{61}$ , is present in beeswax. The esters of dibasic acids are also well known; e.g.,

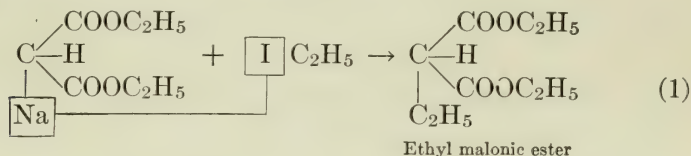


**Uses of Malonic Ester.**—Malonic ester can be used to synthesize homologues of malonic and acetic acids.

When malonic ester is treated with sodium or sodium alcoholate, the following reaction takes place:

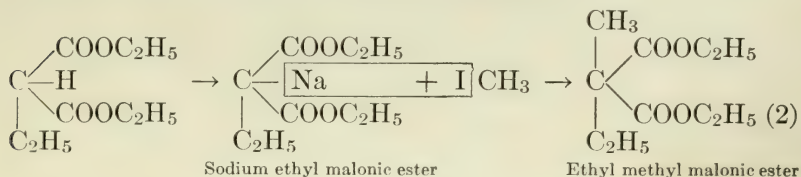


If an alkyl halide is now added; e.g.,

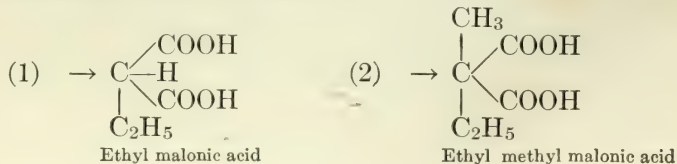


a derivative of malonic ester is obtained.

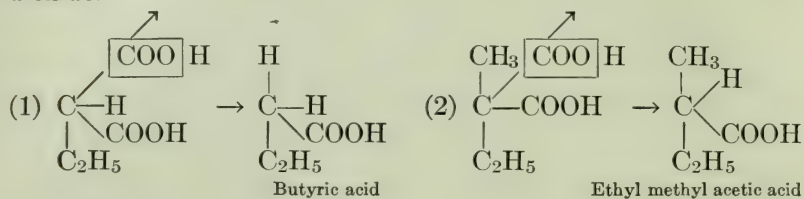
A second alkyl group (the same or a different one) may be introduced by repeating the above operation; e.g.,



On hydrolysis with sodium hydroxide and subsequent acidification the following acids are formed:



On heating, malonic acid and its derivatives lose carbon dioxide.



(Fats and vegetable oils are glyceryl esters. They will be taken up in detail in the next chapter.)

#### READING REFERENCE

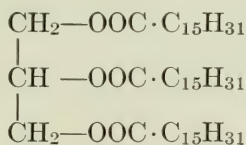
ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 723-738 (Soaps and Soap Powders).

## CHAPTER X

### FATS AND OILS, WAXES AND LIPOIDS

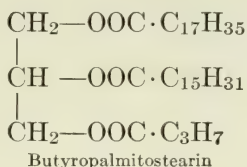
#### FATS AND OILS

THESE are glyceryl esters of fatty acids (usually of high molecular weight). An example of one of these substances is glyceryl palmitate (tripalmitin).



The glyceryl esters of stearic ( $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{35}\text{COOH}$ ), palmitic and oleic ( $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{33}\text{COOH}$ ) acids constitute the main bulk of the fats and oils in food and of body fat.

If the three acid radicals in a fat or oil are the same, it is known as a simple glyceride, e.g., tripalmitin. A fat containing radicals of two or three different fatty acids is known as a mixed glyceride, e.g.,



There is no essential chemical difference between fats and vegetable oils. **Stearin**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{OOC}\cdot\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{35})_3$ , and **palmitin**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{OOC}\cdot\text{C}_{15}\text{H}_{31})_3$  are solids, while **olein**,  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5(\text{OOC}\cdot\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{33})_3$  is a liquid. The consistency of a fat or oil depends on the amount of solid or liquid esters present. The fats are solid at the ordinary temperatures, whereas the oils are liquid.



## IMPORTANT FATS AND OILS

Fat or Oil	Contains the Glyceryl Ester of	Source of Fat or Oil
Almond oil	Oleic, palmitic, linoleic acids, etc.	Bitter or sweet almonds
Butterfat	Butyric, caproic, capric, palmitic, stearic, oleic acids, etc.	Cow's milk
Cacao butter	Palmitic, oleic, stearic, myristic acids, etc.	Seeds of cocoa nibs
Castor oil	Ricinoleic, stearic, oleic acids, etc.	Seeds of castor beans
Cocoanut oil	Caproic, caprylic, capric, lauric acids, etc.	Seeds of "cocos nucifers," kernel of nuts
Codliver oil	Oleic, myristic, palmitic, stearic acids and cholesterin, etc.	Livers of cod fish
Cottonseed oil	Oleic, stearic, palmitic, linoleic acids, etc.	Seeds of the cotton-plant
Hemp oil	Isolinolenic, oleic acids, etc.	Seeds of hemp
Human fat	Stearic, palmitic, oleic, butyric, caproic acids, etc.	Human beings
Lard	Stearic, palmitic, oleic, linoleic acids, etc.	Body fat of swine
Linseed oil	Linoleic, linolenic, oleic, palmitic, myristic acids, etc.	Seeds of flax
Maize oil	Arachidic, stearic, palmitic, oleic acids, etc.	Seed germs of corn oil
Menhaden oil	Palmitic, myristic, oleic, stearic, and other unsaturated acids, etc.	Bodies of menhaden fish
Mustard oil	Erucic, arachidic, stearic, oleic acids, etc.	Seeds of mustard
Neatsfoot oil	Palmitic, stearic, oleic acids, etc.	Hoofs of cattle
Olive oil	Linoleic, oleic, arachidic acids, etc.	Fruit of olive tree

IMPORTANT FATS AND OILS—*Continued*

Fat or Oil	Contains the Glyceryl Ester of	Source of Fat or Oil
Palm oil	Palmitic, lauric, oleic acids, etc.	Palm seed
Peanut oil	Arachidic, linoleic, hypogoeic, palmitic acids, etc.	Peanuts
Poppy oil	Linoleic, isolinolenic, palmitic, stearic acids, etc.	Poppy seeds
Rape oil	Erucic, arachidic, stearic acids, etc.	Rape seeds
Sperm oil	Oleic, palmitic acids, waxes, etc.	Head and blubber of sperm whale
Tallow	Stearic, palmitic, oleic acids, etc.	Fat of ox or sheep
Whale oil	Linoleic, isolinolenic acids, etc.	Blubber of whales

**Oleomargarine** consists mainly of refined lard, "oleo oil" (the soft part of beef fat) and cottonseed oil, often mixed with a small amount of butter and churned with milk or cream.

**Hydrogenation of Oils.**—Liquid fatty oils can be converted to fatty bodies of almost any desired degree of consistency by means of hydrogenation. The unsaturated liquid oils unite directly with hydrogen in presence of catalysts (nickel being used on commercial scale) to form saturated bodies.



Stearin has greater commercial value than olein. The "hardened fats" now find extensive use in the preparation of lard substitutes, in the manufacture of soap, etc. "Hardened" cottonseed oil, peanut oil and other edible oils have largely replaced lard compounds. "Crisco," "vegetol," are examples of "hardened" (or hydrogenated) vegetable oils.

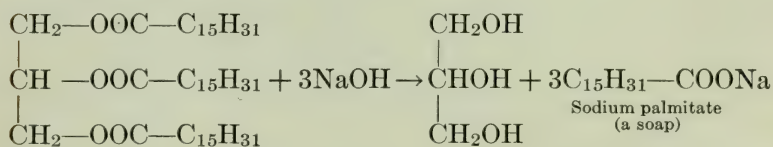
"Intarvin" (Glyceryl margarate  $(\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33} \cdot \text{COO})_3\text{C}_3\text{H}_5$ ), has recently been introduced by Kahn in the treatment of diabetes. In this disease, it has been found that the naturally-occurring fats and oils, containing an even number of carbon atoms in the acid



radicals, give rise to "acetone bodies" ( $\beta$ -hydroxybutyric acid, acetoacetic acid and acetone) which poison the system, whereas "intarvin," which contains an odd number of carbon atoms in the acid radicals, does not.

Crude fats and oils range from yellow to red in color. The refined products are generally yellow to colorless. Sometimes vegetable oils are green, due to the presence of chlorophyll (the green coloring matter of plants). Fats and oils are insoluble in water, but readily soluble in ether, benzene, chloroform, etc. The rancidity of a fat (as in butter-fat) is mainly due to hydrolysis (bacterial decomposition, or otherwise) yielding the free fatty acids. Butter in this way produces butyric acid, which has a disagreeable odor.

**Properties.**—Fats can be hydrolyzed or saponified. When the glyceryl esters of stearic, palmitic or oleic acids are saponified with NaOH or KOH, soaps are formed:



This is the principle employed in the manufacture of soap. (The reaction also explains the hydrolysis of fats in the small intestine by the enzyme (lipase) which is formed in the pancreas.)

A number of methods used for identifying fats are:

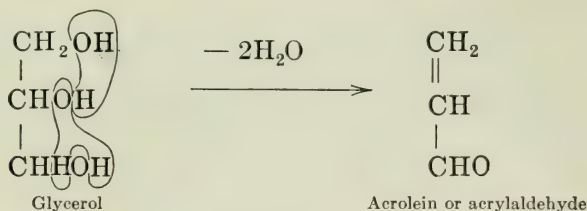
1. Saponification value: the number of milligrams of KOH needed to saponify 1 gram of fat or oil.
2. The iodine number: the percentage of iodine absorbed by the sample. (The amount of "absorption," or extent of "addition" will depend upon the amount of unsaturated glycerides present—such as in olein, for example.)
3. Specific gravity.
4. Melting point.
5. Index of refraction.
6. Viscosity and other physical constants.

(As has been stated, the fats in the body are first hydrolyzed into fatty acids and glycerol. A little soap is also formed, due to the alkalinity of the medium. The fatty acids and glycerol are absorbed as such through the lining of the small intestine, where they are re-synthesized again into fat, most of which passes into



the lymphatic system, and finally finds its way into the blood stream. Some of the fat is oxidized in the cells to  $\text{CO}_2$  and water, see the steps in this oxidation, p. 178, but much of it is often deposited in the adipose tissue, and acts as a reserve fuel.)

The fats and oils, when strongly heated, either alone, or with a dehydrating agent like  $\text{KHSO}_4$ , develop a penetrating odor, due to the formation of acrolein. This acrolein is really derived from the glycerol part of the molecule:



## WAXES

**Waxes**, like fats, are esters, but instead of containing the trihydroxy alcohol, glycerol, they contain high molecular weight monatomic alcohols, such as cetyl alcohol,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\text{OH}$ , carnaubyl alcohol,  $\text{C}_{24}\text{H}_{49}\text{OH}$ , myricyl alcohol,  $\text{C}_{30}\text{H}_{61}\text{OH}$ , etc.

Among vegetable waxes, we have "carnauba wax," and among animal waxes, we have wool wax (or "lanolin"), beeswax, spermaceti, Chinese insect wax, etc.

Waxes (like fats) are soluble in ether, benzene, chloroform, carbon tetrachloride, etc. Since they do not contain glyceryl radical, they do not yield acrolein when heated. The waxes do not become rancid like fats and are less easily hydrolyzed.

Carnauba wax is derived from a species of palm; it is used in varnish, for candle making and for adulterating beeswax. Lanolin, obtained from wool grease, is used in pharmacy as a basis for salves, ointments and emulsions. Beeswax is derived from the honeycomb of bees and is used in candle making, in pharmacy, etc. Spermaceti, found in the head of the sperm whale, finds uses in candle making, in pharmacy and in confectionery. Chinese wax, secreted by an insect, is also used in candle making, in medicine and as a furniture polish, etc.

## LIPOIDS

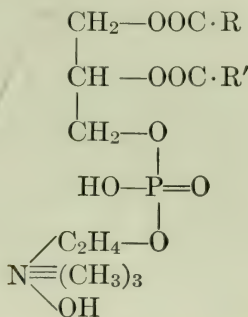
These are a group of substances, soluble in ether and the usual fat solvents, which are found in abundance in animal tissues, particularly in the brain. We know little at present about their physiological significance. They may be classified as follows:

1. Containing nitrogen and phosphorus (phosphatids); e.g., lecithin and cephalin (N : P as 1 : 1), and sphingomyelin (here N : P as 2 : 1).

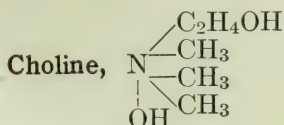
2. Containing nitrogen: e.g., phrenosin and cerasin (the so-called "cerebrins" or "cerebrosides").

3. Nitrogen and phosphorus are absent; e.g., cholesterol.

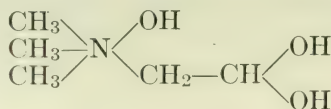
**Lecithin** is a combination of glycerol, fatty acid, phosphoric acid and choline, and its structure may be represented as:



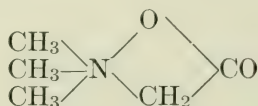
(R and R' represent groups present in acids. As in fats, R and R' may be the same or different.)



or trimethyl-β-hydroxyethyl ammonium hydroxide, is closely related to **muscarine**—the aldehyde hydrate of choline—

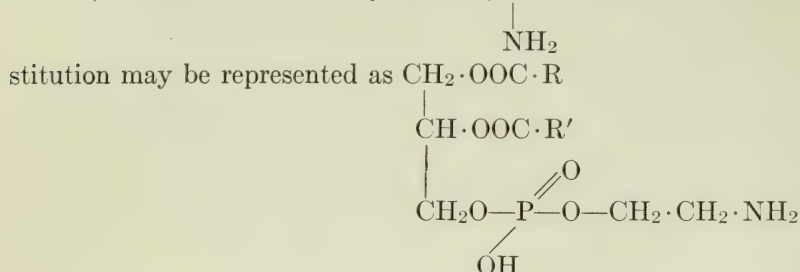


which is the poisonous constituent of the deadly toad-stool, and to **betaine**—the acid anhydride—



a non-toxic plant product. In a crude form, lecithin may be obtained by extracting egg yolk with ether and precipitating with acetone.

**Cephalin** is similar to lecithin in that it contains glycerol, fatty acids and phosphoric acid, but in the place of the base choline, it contains aminoethyl alcohol,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ . Its con-



Unlike lecithin, cephalin is insoluble in alcohol. (Cephalin is sometimes written "kephalin.")

**Sphingomyelin** is a complex combination of phosphoric acid, choline, a base, sphingosine,  $\text{C}_{17}\text{H}_{32}(\text{OH})\text{NH}_2$ , and an acid, lignoceric acid,  $\text{C}_{25}\text{H}_{47} \cdot \text{COOH}$ .

**Phrenosin** is a combination of cerebronic acid (the hydroxy acid of lignoceric), galactose and sphingosine.

**Cerasin**, like phrenosin, yields when hydrolyzed, galactose and sphingosine, but in the place of cerebronic acid gives lignoceric acid.

**Cholesterol**,  $\text{C}_{26}\text{H}_{43}\text{OH}$  or  $\text{C}_{27}\text{H}_{45}\text{OH}$ , is an unsaturated secondary alcohol and a member of the terpene series, though its exact structure is not yet known. It is widely distributed in animal tissues, particularly in egg yolk and nervous tissue. (An isomer, **phytosterol**, is found in the vegetable kingdom.) "Lanolin," the fatty matter obtained from sheep's wool, is an ester of cholesterol. This alcohol is also present in bile and in blood. The determination of the amount of cholesterol in the blood is



often of chemical significance, since in gall stones, pregnancy, nephritis, diabetes, etc., the quantity may be in excess of the normal value.

#### READING REFERENCES

MACLEAN—Lecithin and Allied Substances.

LEVENE—Structure and Significance of the Phosphatides (Lecithin, etc.).  
*Physiological Reviews*, **1**, 327 (1921).

LEATHES—The Fats.

ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 653–689 (Oils, Fats and Waxes); pp. 701–710 (Hydrogenation of Oils).

MITCHELL—Edible Oils and Fats.

PHILLIP—Romance of Modern Chemistry. (1910), chap. 21 (Fats and Oils).

## CHAPTER XI

### ACID ANHYDRIDES, ACYL HALIDES AND ACID AMIDES

The type formula for an acid anhydride is

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O} \\ \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \quad \text{O} \\ \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O} \end{array}$$

The type formula for an acyl halide is

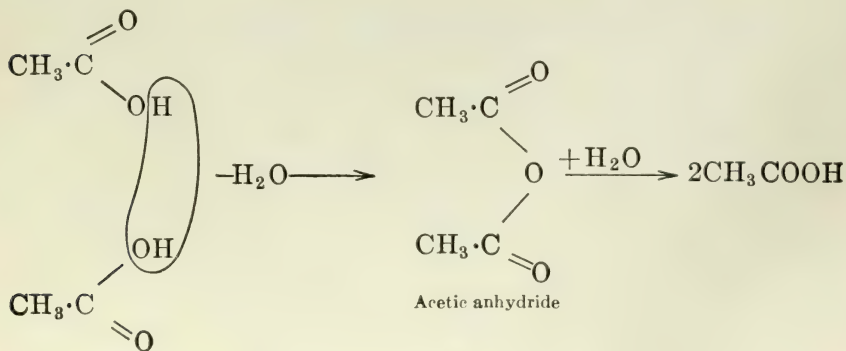
$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O} \\ \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \quad \text{O} \\ \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{R}-\text{C}=\text{X} \end{array}$$

The type formula for an acid amide is

$$\begin{array}{c} \text{R}-\text{C}=\text{O} \\ \quad \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \quad \text{O} \\ \quad \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{R}-\text{C}=\text{NH}_2 \end{array}$$

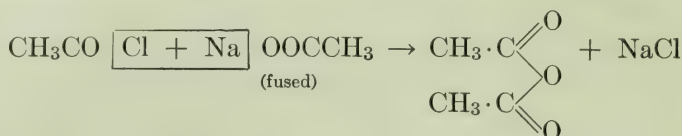
#### ACID ANHYDRIDES

Acid anhydrides are similar in many respects to inorganic acid anhydrides. Sulfur trioxide, for example, is the acid anhydride of sulfuric acid, for  $\text{SO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ . Similarly, acetic (acid) anhydride is the anhydride of acetic acid, for



(An anhydride may be looked upon as an acyl oxide.)

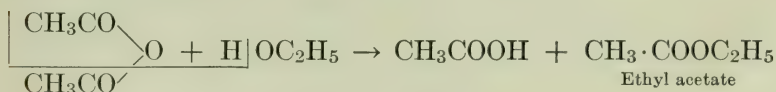
**General Methods of Preparation.**—1. By heating an acyl halide and the salt of an acid, e.g.,



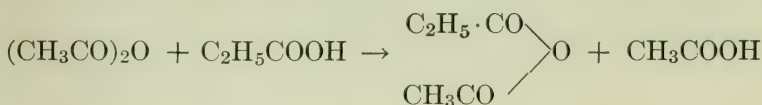
2. By the action of a dehydrating agent (such as  $\text{P}_2\text{O}_5$ ) on the acid. Acetic anhydride may in this way be prepared from glacial acetic acid. However, the yield is poor.

**Acetic anhydride** is the most important member of the series and the general properties of these anhydrides can be illustrated by summarizing the properties of acetic anhydride. (Formic anhydride is not known.)

It has already been mentioned that acetic anhydride reacts with water to form acetic acid. With alcohol, a mixture of acid and ester is formed:



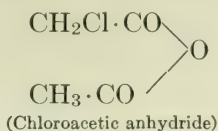
With propionic acid, a mixed anhydride is obtained:



With ammonia, the corresponding amide is formed:



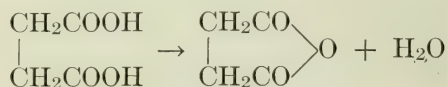
Chlorine and bromine yield substituted anhydrides; e.g.,



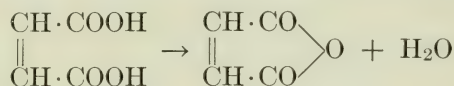
Acetic anhydride is a liquid with a pungent, suffocating odor. It finds extensive use as a means of introducing the  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}$  (acetyl) group into compounds.



**Succinic anhydride** may be obtained by heating succinic acid:



Similarly **maleic anhydride** may be obtained from maleic acid:



The properties of these compounds are analogous to acetic anhydride

#### ACYL HALIDES

**Acyl Halides**,  $\text{R}-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \text{X} \end{array}$ , may be regarded as acids in which

the OH of the COOH group is replaced by a halogen:



(The acyl chloride compounds are common, but few of the corresponding iodide and bromide compounds are known, and they are used only infrequently.)

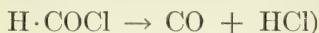
**Nomenclature.**—The group  $\text{R}-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \end{array}$  is known as the “acyl” group.

The group  $\text{CH}_3-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \end{array}$  is known as the “acetyl” group.

The group  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \end{array}$  is known as the “propionyl” group.

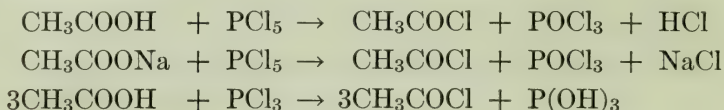
Therefore, in naming the acyl halide, we need merely change the *ic* (last two letters) of the acid to *yl*.

(Formyl chloride is not known. When the attempt is made to prepare it, it breaks down into CO and HCl:

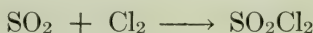


**Acetyl chloride** finds extensive use in organic syntheses and its preparation and properties will, therefore, be considered.

**Preparation.**—1. By the action of phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus trichloride, or phosphorus oxychloride on acetic acid, or sodium acetate:



2. The commercial method of obtaining the chloride is to heat sodium acetate and to pass sulfur dioxide and chlorine over it. The sulfur dioxide and chlorine combine to form sulfuryl chloride:



which then reacts with the sodium acetate:



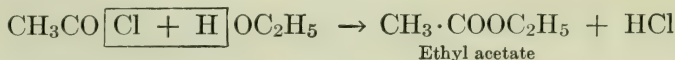
**Properties.**—Acetyl chloride is used extensively to introduce the  $\text{CH}_3\text{—C} \begin{smallmatrix} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \end{smallmatrix}$  (acetyl) group into organic compounds. It is a very reactive substance. The moisture of the atmosphere very readily converts it to acetic acid:



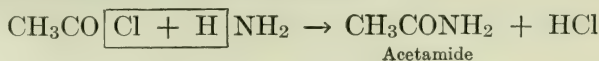
Acetyl chloride reacts with sodium acetate to form acetic anhydride:



and with ethyl alcohol to form an ester:



and with ammonia to form an amide:

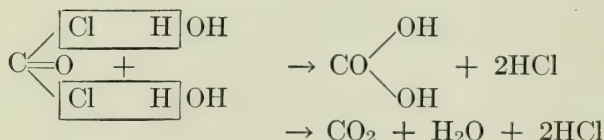


If the OH groups in carbonic acid,  $\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \nearrow \text{OH} \\ \searrow \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix}$  are replaced by Cl,

we get  $\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \nearrow \text{Cl} \\ \searrow \text{Cl} \end{smallmatrix}$  (chloro-formyl chloride), which is commonly known

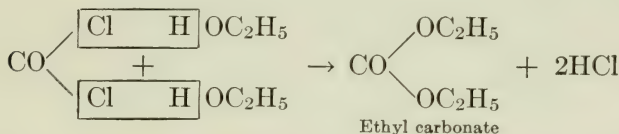
as **phosgene**. This substance is a colorless, suffocating gas. Owing to its poisonous character, the comparative ease with which it can be liquefied and prepared (by passing chlorine and carbon monoxide over charcoal), phosgene was used very extensively in the late war. It was loaded in shells and bombs and exploded when the shell struck ground. Phosgene is also used in the manufacture of dyes.

Water decomposes phosgene as follows:

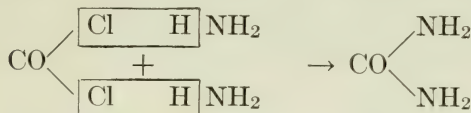


(The poisonous effects of phosgene are said to be due to the liberation of a high concentration of HCl gas.)

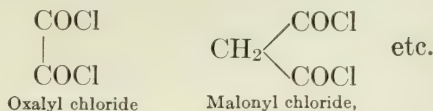
Ethyl alcohol forms an ester:



Ammonia transforms phosgene into urea (or carbamide):



Other acyl halides are:



#### ACID AMIDES

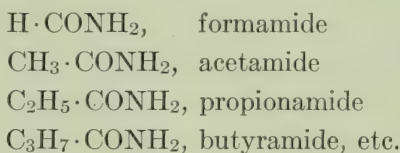
**Acid Amides**,  $\text{R}-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$ , may be looked upon as acids in

which the OH group is replaced by  $\text{NH}_2$ . Or, they may be regarded as derived from ammonia,  $\text{NH}_3$ , in which one of the hydrogen atoms is replaced by the RCO (acyl) group. The



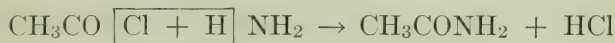
—NH<sub>2</sub> group when attached to an acyl group is known as the "amido" group. If the —NH<sub>2</sub> group is attached to an alkyl group, it is known as the "amino" group.

The nomenclature is based on the names of the corresponding acids (amides of acids); e.g.,

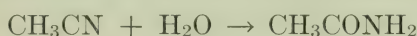


(With the exception of formamide, which is a liquid, all the others are solids.)

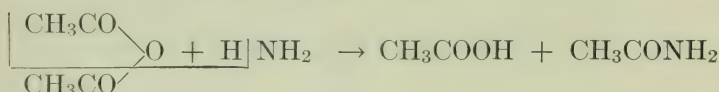
**Preparation and Properties.**—(Acetamide will be taken as a type.) 1. The action of ammonia on acetyl chloride:



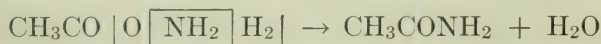
2. The partial hydrolysis of methyl cyanide:



3. The action of ammonia on acetic anhydride:



4. The dehydration of ammonium acetate (by heating):



(The group NH<sub>4</sub>, or HNH<sub>3</sub> is basic; so is the compound RNH<sub>2</sub>. The compound RCONH<sub>2</sub> is practically neutral, a result due to the acid properties of RCO and to the basic properties of NH<sub>2</sub>.)

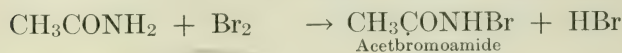
Acetamide is transformed into ammonium acetate when boiled with acids or bases (compare with reaction 4 above):



and when dehydrated forms methyl cyanide (compare with reaction 2 above);



**Hofmann's reaction.**—This is a method by which the CO group can be eliminated from an amide, so that  $R \cdot \text{CONH}_2$  becomes  $\text{RNH}_2$  (amine). When acetamide is treated with bromine in an alkaline solution the following reactions take place:

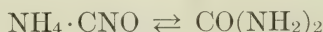


**Urea** (carbamide or aminoformamide),  $\text{CO} \begin{matrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{matrix}$ , may be

considered as the diamino derivative of carbonic acid,  $\text{CO} \begin{matrix} \text{OH} \\ \text{OH} \end{matrix}$ .

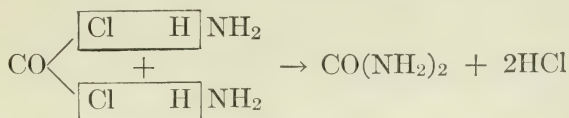
This is a substance of great biological importance, since it is the chief end product resulting from the changes that proteins undergo in the body. (The amount of urea in the urine is directly proportional to the amount of protein present in the food which is eaten.)

**Preparation.**—1. By heating ammonium cyanate:

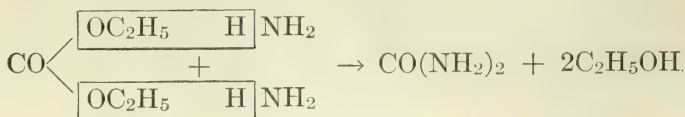


This method was discovered by Wöhler in 1828. The student will recall that Wöhler's preparation is one of the earliest recorded instances of the laboratory preparation of an "organic" substance (p. 1).

2. By the action of ammonia on phosgene:

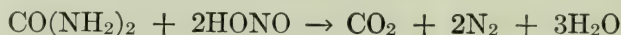


3. By the action of ammonia on ethyl carbonate:



**Properties.**—Urea is easily hydrolyzed, yielding carbon dioxide and ammonia. These same products are also obtained when the enzyme urease (found in the soya bean, etc.) is allowed to act on

urea. (Incidentally, by far the best method for the determination of urea is based on its reaction with urease.) Nitrous acid liberates nitrogen, etc.:



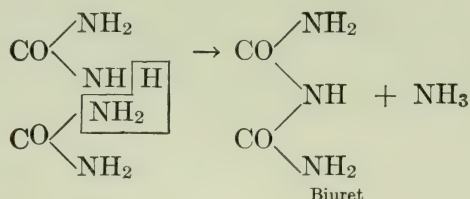
So does sodium hypobromite:



(This method was for a long time used to determine urea. The nitrogen evolved was measured, and from it the amount of urea in the sample was calculated. The determination at best is only approximate for the errors involved are high. The method has been entirely replaced by the urease method.)

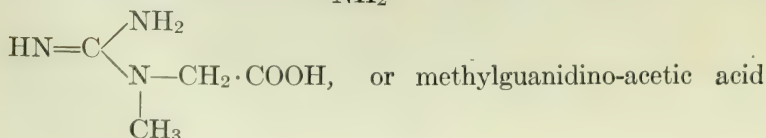
Urea combines very readily with nitric and oxalic acids to form urea nitrate,  $\text{CO}(\text{NH}_2)_2 \cdot \text{HNO}_3$ , urea oxalate,  $[\text{CO}(\text{NH}_2)_2]_2 \cdot (\text{COOH})_2$ , respectively. These salts crystallize very readily and are often used for identifying urea.

When urea is heated, two molecules combine to form a substance known as **biuret**:



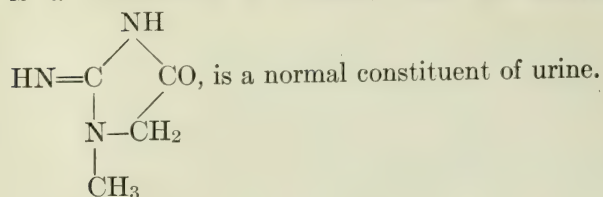
When a drop of copper sulfate and a few cc.'s of fairly concentrated alkali are added to biuret, a violet color is formed. This is known as the "biuret reaction." All proteins give the biuret reaction—a reason for assuming that the protein molecule has, among other things, a "biuret" configuration.

Guanidine,  $\text{HN}=\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagdown \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$ , is related to urea. Creatine,





is a constituent of muscle; and its anhydride, **creatinine**,



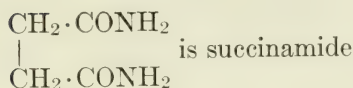
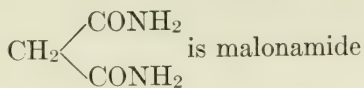
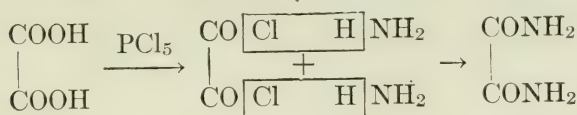
(A number of derivatives of urea, such as urethane,  $\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH}_2 \\ = \text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ ,

or ethyl carbamate, **barbital**,  $\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH}-\text{C}=\text{O} \\ = \text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}-\text{C}=\text{O} \end{array} \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ , or diethyl-

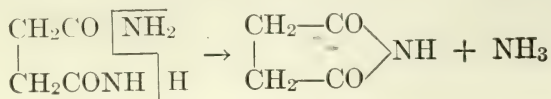
malonyl urea, and **luminal**,  $\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{NH}-\text{C}=\text{O} \\ = \text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{NH}-\text{C}=\text{O} \end{array} \text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \end{array}$ , or phenyl

ethyl malonyl urea, are used extensively as hypnotics.)

**Oxamide**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CONH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CONH}_2 \end{array}$ , is formed as follows:

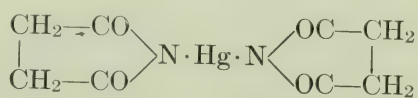


When succinamide is heated, we get succinimid, the  $\text{>NH}$  group being known as the imido group:



# 116 ACID ANHYDRIDES, ACYL HALIDES AND ACID AMIDES

The mercuric salt,



is used in the treatment of syphilis.

## READING REFERENCES

SLOSSON—Chats on Science. (1924), No. 12 (Perfumes from Poison Gas).

WERNER—The Chemistry of Urea.

CH<sub>3</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub> cont  
 D 2 B L  
 delta gamma beta alpha

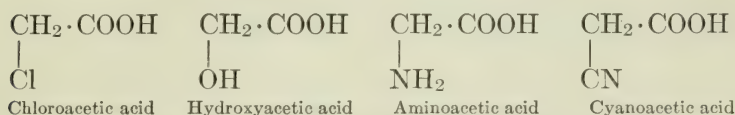
## CHAPTER XII

### HALOGEN SUBSTITUTED ACIDS AND HYDROXY ACIDS

THESE are acids in which one or more of the hydrogen atoms in the group, which is attached to the COOH group, is replaced by X, OH, CN, NH<sub>2</sub>, etc. For example, CH<sub>2</sub>·COOH, acetic acid,

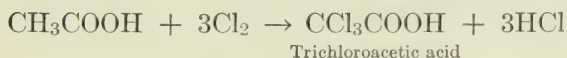
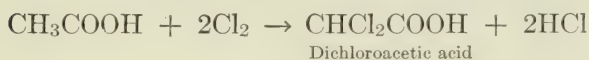
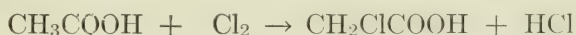


gives rise to



#### HALOGEN SUBSTITUTED ACIDS

**Preparation.**—The action of chlorine on acetic acid:

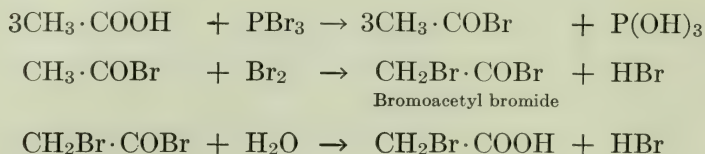


(The number of hydrogen atoms replaced by chlorine atoms depends upon the amount of chlorine used, the temperature and the time of the reaction. These reactions are carried out in the presence of sunlight and "carriers"—catalysts—such as iodine or sulfur.)

Analogous compounds may be formed by substituting bromine for chlorine, but here the reaction proceeds only under pressure and at higher temperatures. Iodine does not react. (In order to make such a substance as iodoacetic acid, we allow potassium iodide to react with chloroacetic acid: CH<sub>2</sub>Cl·COOH + KI → CH<sub>2</sub>I·COOH + KCl.)



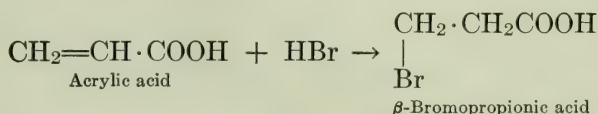
Better yields are obtained in the following way:



Direct halogenation always replaces the hydrogen attached to the  $\alpha$ -carbon. The nomenclature may be gathered from this graphic illustration:  $\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\text{—COOH}$ .

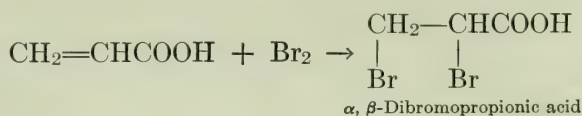
$\delta \qquad \gamma \qquad \beta \qquad \alpha$

The  $\beta$ -halogenated acids may be obtained in the following way:

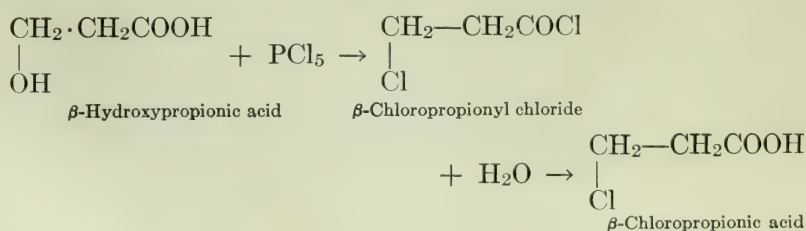


(The halogen enters the position as far removed from the COOH group as possible.)

$\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -halogenated acids may be prepared thus:

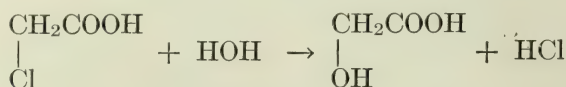


Halogenated acids may also be prepared from hydroxy-acids:

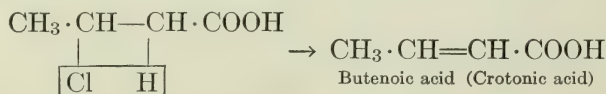


**Properties.**—Some of the properties (such as the formation of salts, esters, etc.) are due to the presence of a carboxyl group and some to the radical attached to the carboxyl group. For example, the greater the number of halogens attached to the carboxyl group, the stronger the acidity. Trichloroacetic acid,

$\text{CCl}_3\text{COOH}$ , is a strong acid. The  $\alpha$ -halogen acids in the presence of hot alkali yield the corresponding hydroxy-acids:

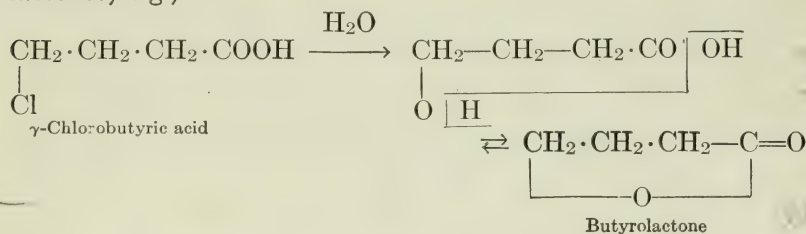


The  $\beta$ -halogen acids yield unsaturated acids when heated with water or alcoholic KOH; e.g.,



(In certain cases—where, for example, sodium carbonate is used— $\text{CO}_2$  is also evolved, so that butenoic acid is converted to the corresponding unsaturated hydrocarbon,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} = \text{CH}_2$ .)

The  $\gamma$ -halogen acids form with water inner anhydrides or lactones; e.g.,



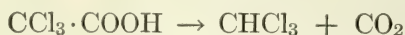
With ammonia, the halogen-substituted acids form amino-acids:



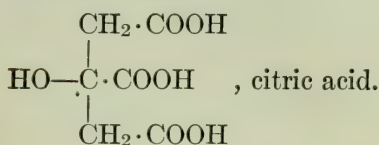
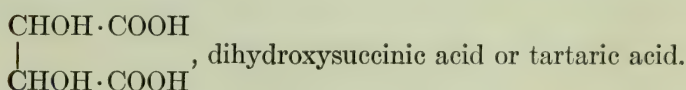
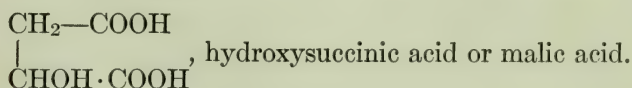
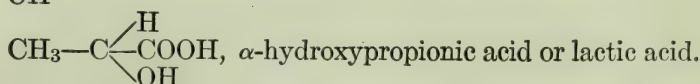
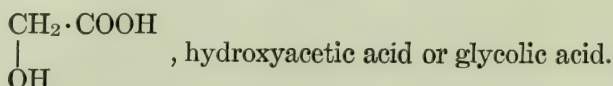
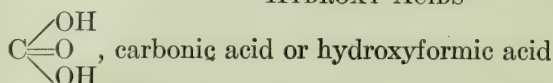
With potassium cyanide, we get the cyano-acids; e.g.,



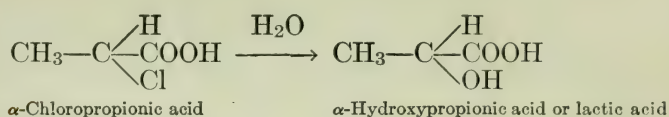
Very many of these halogen-substituted products are known. Chloroacetic acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is used in the manufacture of synthetic indigo. The vapors attack the eyes, and they also act corrosively on the skin. Trichloroacetic acid,  $\text{CCl}_3 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , also acts corrosively on the skin and is used to remove warts and other growths. It has recently come into use as a protein precipitant. When boiled with water we get chloroform:



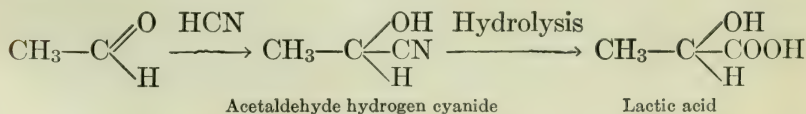
## HYDROXY ACIDS



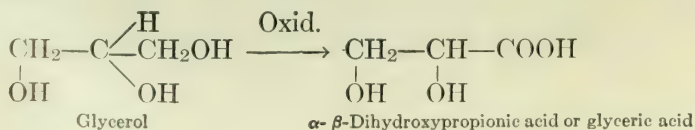
**General Methods of Preparation.**—1. Hydrolysis of halogen acids; e.g.,



2. The hydrolysis of the addition product formed when hydrogen cyanide reacts with an aldehyde; e.g.,

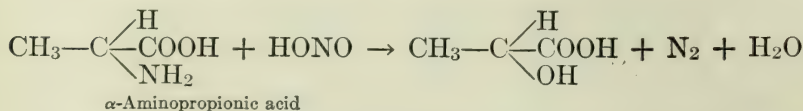


3. The oxidation of a primary alcohol containing a hydroxyl group; e.g.,

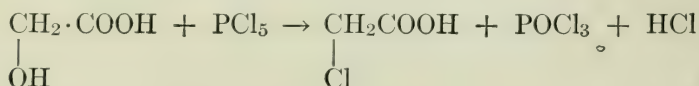




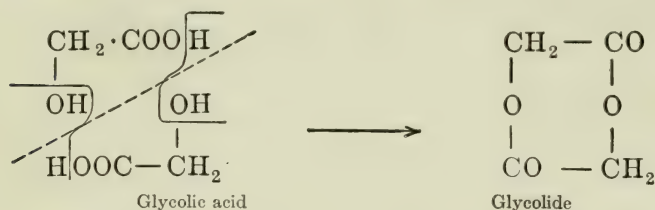
## 4. Action of nitrous acid on amino-acids; e.g.,



**Properties.**—As might be expected, these compounds show the properties both of hydroxy and carboxylic substances. The chloro-acids are formed with  $\text{PCl}_5$ ; e.g.,



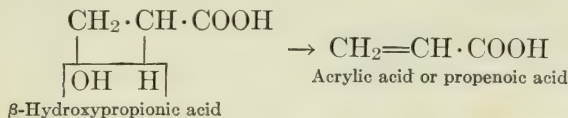
When the  $\alpha$ -hydroxy-acids are heated, two molecules unite with the elimination of two molecules of water:



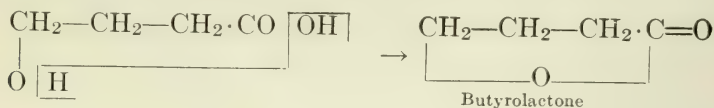
In a similar manner lactic acid is converted to lactide.

When  $\beta$ -hydroxy acids are heated, we get unsaturated acids;

e.g.,



When  $\gamma$ -hydroxyacids are heated an inner anhydride (lactone) is formed; e.g.,



This is also true of  $\delta$ -hydroxyacids.

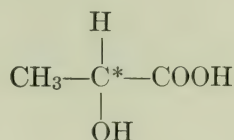
Hydroxyacetic acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{COOH}$  (also known as **glycolic acid**) occurs in unripe grapes.

$\alpha$ -Hydroxypropionic acid,  $\text{CH}_3-\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \text{H} \\ \diagup \text{COOH} \\ \diagdown \text{OH} \end{array}$  (better known

as lactic acid), is known in three forms, the dextro and levo optically active modifications, and the racemic, or inactive form (which can, however, be resolved into the two optically active forms).

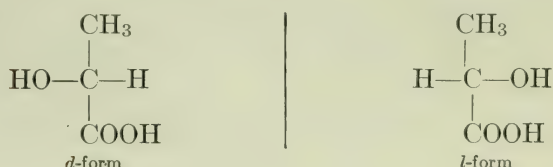
**Optical Activity.**—Three forms of lactic acid are known. These three varieties have the same chemical and physical properties but behave quite differently towards polarized light. One turns the plane of polarized light to the right (and is, therefore, known as dextro, or *d*-lactic acid); the other turns it to the left (levo, or *l*-variety); and the third is inactive (*dl*). This last is made up of equal parts of the dextro and levo forms.<sup>1</sup>

Le Bel and van't Hoff, quite independently of one another, discovered that all optically active substances have at least one carbon in the molecule attached to four different atoms or groups. For example, in lactic acid:



we have a carbon atom marked \* which is attached to H, OH, CH<sub>3</sub> and COOH. Such a carbon atom is known as an **asymmetric carbon atom**.

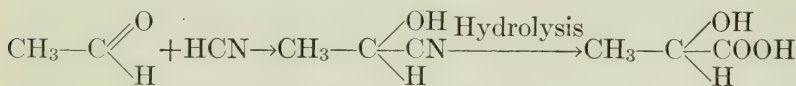
Structurally, the *d*-form of lactic acid is related to the *l*-form as an object is to its mirror image:



<sup>1</sup> By polarized light we mean light in which all the vibrations lie in one plane. An ordinary ray of light vibrates in every direction. Polarized light may be obtained by passing ordinary light through a Nicol prism or tourmaline plate—as illustrated in the instrument known as the “polarimeter.” An optically active substance has the power of rotating this plane of polarized light, the extent depending, among other things, upon the nature of the substance. For further details, consult a practical physical chemistry; for example, Firth—Practical Physical Chemistry.

Usually, when a compound containing an asymmetric carbon atom is synthesized, we get equal parts of the dextro and levo varieties. Such a mixture is designated as *dl*-, or *i* (inactive), and is known as "racemic." This inactive mixture can, as a rule, be resolved into the active constituents in a number of different ways. One of these depends upon the property which certain organisms possess of destroying one component more rapidly than another. For example, bacteria destroy the *l*-lactic acid and penicillium the *d*-lactic acid.

The souring of milk is due to the formation of lactic acid (the inactive variety), and this is brought about by the action of certain bacteria (which are also present in the air) on the milk sugar or lactose present in the milk. The acid so formed precipitates the principal protein (caseinogen) in milk, giving rise to what is known as "curdling." The synthetic lactic acid of commerce is prepared from acetaldehyde, as follows:



Lactic acid is made commercially by fermentation of sugar. It is a colorless, viscous liquid and is used in medicine, dyeing and calico printing. The antimony, zinc and iron lactates are used as mordants. Silver lactate is a powerful antiseptic.

Dextro-lactic acid, or *d*-lactic acid (also called sarcoplactic acid and paralactic acid) is found in muscle tissue, meat extract, blood and urine. Inactive muscle is alkaline and after activity it becomes acid, a change which has been ascribed to the formation of lactic acid. When the *d*-acid is heated it loses its optical activity and is converted to the inactive or *dl*- variety.

Levolactic acid, or *l*-lactic acid, is obtained when sugar is fermented with *bacillus acidi levulactici*.

The *d*- and *l*- lactic acids and the *dl*- or *i*- variety show the same physical and chemical properties; they differ only as regards optical activity.

(The intermediate changes that proteins, fats and particularly sugars undergo in the body in their ultimate breakdown to carbon dioxide, water and simple nitrogenous bodies, are associated with the formation, it is believed, of lactic acid, among other substances. The evidence is accumulating to show that lactic acid





LOUIS PASTEUR (1822-1895)

CHEMIST, FOUNDER OF THE MODERN SCIENCE OF BACTERIOLOGY AND ONE OF THE GREATEST SCIENTISTS OF ALL TIMES. ONE OF HIS EARLIEST RESEARCHES DEALT WITH THE CRYSTALLINE FORMS OF TARTARIC ACID AND ITS SALTS (P. 126), AND THIS LED DIRECTLY TO LE BEL AND VAN'T HOFF'S CONCEPTION OF STEREOISOMERISM.

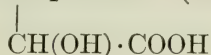
is an important intermediate product in the decomposition within the body of the common foodstuffs.)

(An isomer of lactic acid is  $\beta$ -hydroxypropionic acid, or hydracrylic acid,  $\text{CH}_2\text{—CH}_2\cdot\text{COOH}$ , in which the hydroxyl

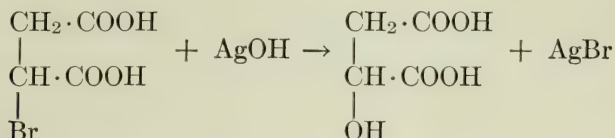


group is in the  $\beta$ -position.)

Hydroxysuccinic acid,  $\text{CH}_2\cdot\text{COOH}$  (commonly known as

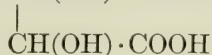


**malic acid**) is present in unripe apples, cherries, grapes, etc. It may be prepared from bromosuccinic acid by the action of silver hydroxide:

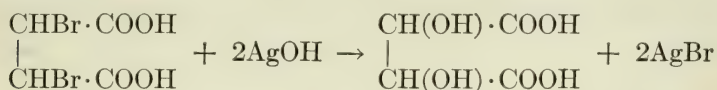


Malic acid is optically active and has the general properties of hydroxy acids.

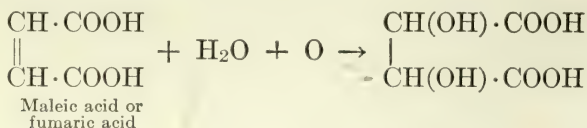
Dihydroxysuccinic acid,  $\text{CH(OH)}\cdot\text{COOH}$  (commonly known



as **tartaric acid**), contains two hydroxyl groups and is a dibasic acid. It can be prepared from dibromosuccinic acid by the action of silver hydroxide:

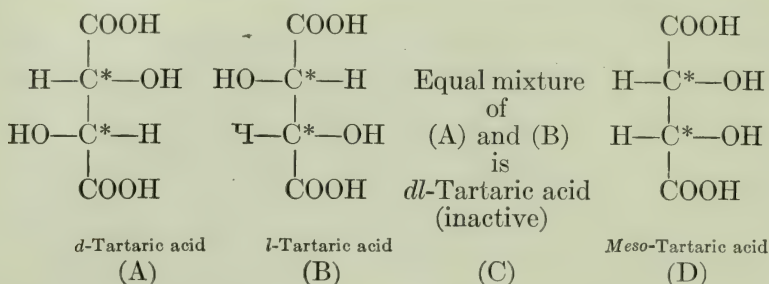


The reduction of tartaric acid (with hydrogen iodide) first yields malic acid and then succinic acid. Interesting, also, is the fact that maleic acid, or fumaric acid, representing the unsaturated dibasic acids, may be converted to tartaric acid by oxidation with potassium permanganate:





The following four forms of tartaric acid are known:



Thus we have two forms of tartaric acid which are optically active [(A) and (B)]; and two which are optically inactive [(C) and (D)]. (A) is the mirror image of (B), while in (D) the upper part of the graphic formula is a mirror image of the lower part. (C) can be resolved into the *d*- and *l*-forms, while (D) cannot. (C) is said to be optically inactive by external compensation, while (D) is optically inactive by internal compensation.

*d*-Tartaric acid is the one found in grapes in the form of potassium acid tartrate. *l*-Tartaric acid may be obtained from the inactive form by "splitting" or resolution into the active isomers.

Racemic (inactive) or *dl*-acid, is found in grapes and is formed when the *d*-acid is boiled with NaOH solution. It may be resolved into the *d*- and *l*-forms.

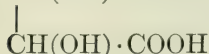
A fourth variety, meso-tartaric acid (first prepared by Pasteur by heating the cinchonine salt of *d*-tartaric acid) is also inactive, but, unlike the racemic acid, cannot be resolved into the *d*- and *l*-forms.

(The history of tartaric acid is intimately associated with the development of our ideas of optical activity and of the asymmetric carbon atom; and with these ideas the names of Pasteur, van't Hoff and Le Bel will forever be linked. It was Pasteur who first showed that the racemic acid was really a mixture of two types of crystals, one the image of the other, and that when mechanically separated and dissolved in water, the one type turned polarized light to the right and the other turned it to the left, suggesting at once that the racemic acid was really a mixture of the *d*- and *l*-forms. The later researches of van't Hoff and Le Bel connected optical activity with the presence of one or more asymmetric car-



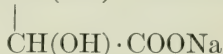
bon atoms within the molecule. There are two asymmetric carbon atoms in the molecule of tartaric acid; these have already been referred to.)

**Salts of Tartaric Acid.** — Potassium acid tartrate,  $\text{CH(OH)·COOK}$  (also known as **cream of tartar**) is a constituent



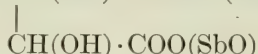
of baking powders, and is used in dyeing.

Sodium potassium tartrate,  $\text{CH(OH)·COOK·4H}_2\text{O}$  (com-



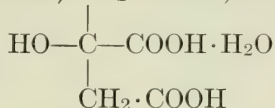
monly known as **Rochelle salt**), is a constituent of Fehling's solution and is also used as a purgative (in "Seidlitz" powders).

Potassium antimonyl tartrate,  $\text{CH(OH)·COOK}$  (also known



as **tartar emetic**), is used in medicine as an emetic, and also in dyeing.

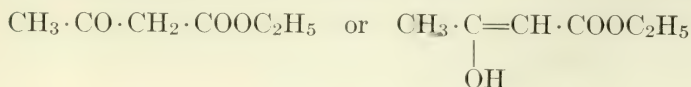
**Citric acid**,  $\text{CH}_2\text{·COOH}$ , is a monohydroxy tribasic acid, and



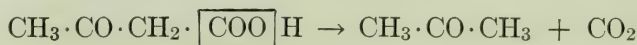
is found in lemons (from the juice of which it is commonly prepared), berries, limes and other acidulous fruits. It is also prepared on large scale by the fermentation of glucose or sucrose, by certain mould fungi as *citromycetes pfefferianus*. It is used in lemonade and other beverages, and in calico printing.

Magnesium citrate ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{O}_7$ )<sub>2</sub>Mg<sub>3</sub> is used as a laxative, and ferric ammonium citrate, in blue-print paper manufacture and in calico printing. Sodium citrate is used extensively for the prevention of blood coagulation.

**Acetoacetic acid**,  $\text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_2\text{·COOH}$ , or acetyl acetic acid, and its ethyl ester, acetoacetic ester,  $\text{CH}_3\text{·CO·CH}_2\text{·COOC}_2\text{H}_5$  are here considered because the ester may be looked upon as a derivative of a  $\beta$ -hydroxy unsaturated acid:

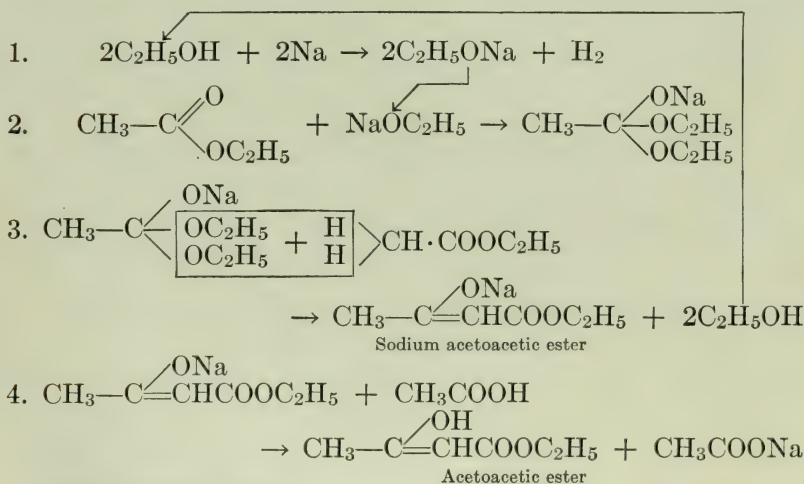


Acetoacetic acid is one of the "acetone bodies" present in the urine of persons suffering from diabetes, and it is commonly known as "diacetic acid." It is an unstable acid and decomposes into acetone:

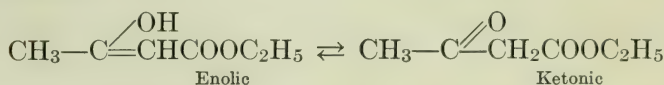


which explains the presence of acetone in the urine and breath of diabetics.

Acetoacetic ester,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOC}_2\text{H}_5$  (or, more correctly, ethyl acetoacetate) is a compound of considerable importance in synthetic organic chemistry. Claisen's explanation of its synthesis, which follows, is the one generally accepted to-day:



Tautomeric forms:



Acetoacetic ester is prepared by the action of sodium on ethyl acetate. A small amount of alcohol is needed for reaction (1); additional quantities of alcohol are formed as shown in (3).

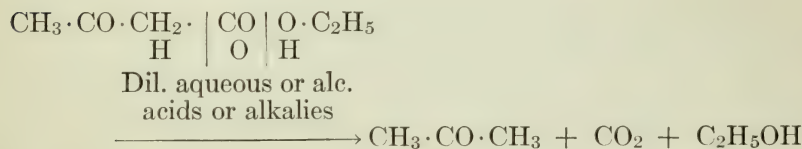
The enolic form  $\left( -\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{OH} \\ \searrow \text{CH} \end{array} - \right)$ , first produced [see (4)], rearranges to the more stable keto form  $\left( -\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \nearrow \text{O} \\ \searrow \text{CH}_2 \end{array} - \right)$ . An equilibrium mixture of the enolic and ketonic forms contains 7 per cent and 93 per cent respectively.

(The type of isomerism wherein, under certain conditions, a compound passes from one structural form into another, is known as **tautomerism**.)

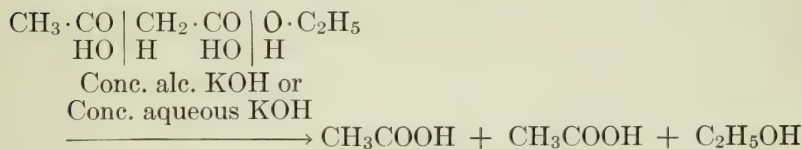
Acetoacetic ester is a colorless liquid with a fruity odor.

**Uses of Acetoacetic Ester.**—Depending upon the reagents used, as well as the concentration of solutions, the following two types of decomposition take place:

(a) *Ketonic hydrolysis*:



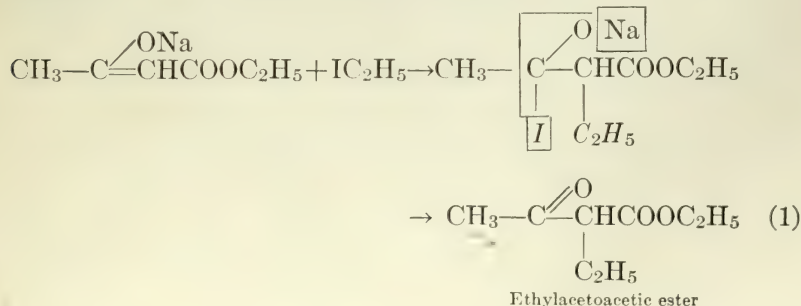
(b) *Acid hydrolysis*:



One or both hydrogens in the  $-\text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2-$  part of the acetoacetic ester may be replaced by various groups, giving rise to substituted acetoacetic ester derivatives. (A somewhat analogous case may be found in malonic ester, p. 97.) If one mole of sodium ethylate reacts with one mole of acetoacetic ester, the compound

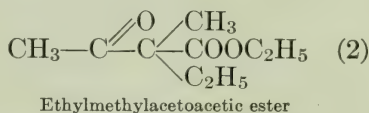


is produced. This reacts with an alkyl halide, for example, as follows:

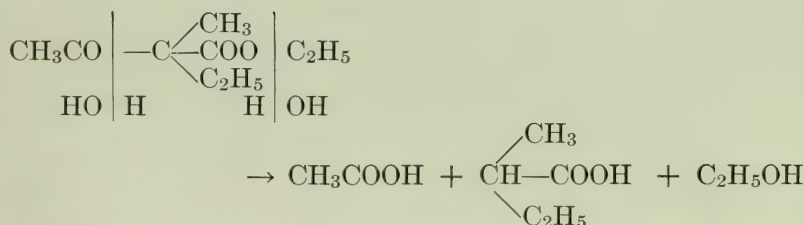
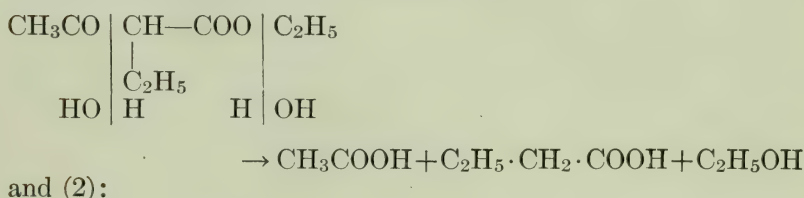




(1) still contains a replaceable hydrogen atom  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ -\text{C}-\text{CH}- \\ \backslash \\ \text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \end{array} \right)$  and by means of a series of analogous reactions another alkyl group may be introduced, giving, for example:

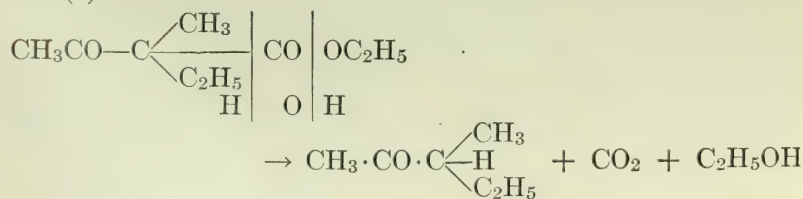
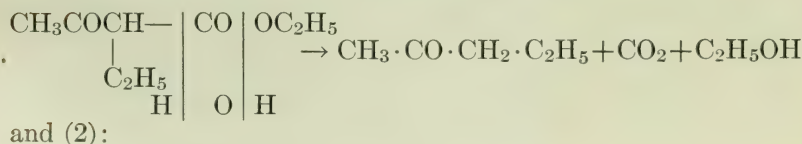


On *acid hydrolysis*, (1) decomposes thus:

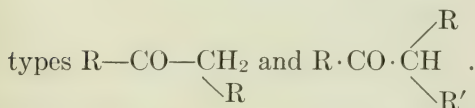


which means that we are able to build up (synthesize) monobasic acids of the types  $\text{R}-\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$  and  $\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \\ \nearrow \\ \text{CHCOOH} \\ \searrow \\ \text{R} \end{array}$ .

On *ketonic hydrolysis*, (1) decomposes thus



which means that we are able to synthesize higher ketones of the



(Acetoacetic ester is also used in the manufacture of anti-pyrine—p. 311—and a number of dyes.)

READING REFERENCES

- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), Chap. 12 (Architecture of Molecules).  
 JONES—New Era in Chemistry. (1913), Chap. 4 (Origin of Stereochemistry).  
 VALLERY-RADOT—The Life of Pasteur.  
 STEWART—Chemistry and Its Borderland. (1914), Chap. 7 (Chemistry in Space).  
 FINDLAY—Chemistry in the Service of Man. (1916), Chap. 11 (Molecular Structure).  
 STEWART—Stereochemistry.  
 HARROW—Eminent Chemists of Our Time. (1920), pp. 79-110 (van't Hoff).

## CHAPTER XIII

### AMINES OR ORGANIC BASES

THESE compounds are derivatives of ammonia:



Ammonia



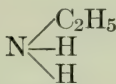
Primary amine



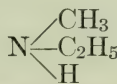
Secondary amine



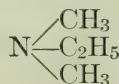
Tertiary amine



Ethylamine



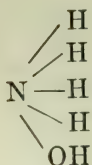
Ethyl methyl-amine



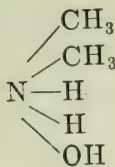
Dimethyl ethylamine

(In  $\text{R} \cdot \text{NH}_2$  the  $-\text{NH}_2$  is an amino group, in  $\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \\ \diagup \\ \text{N} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{R} \end{array}$  the  $=\text{NH}$  is an imino group).

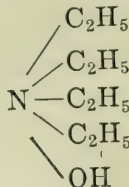
We have similar relationships in  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ , where one or more hydrogens in the  $\text{NH}_4$  group may be replaced by R groups.



Ammonium hydroxide

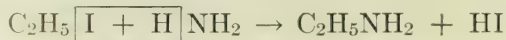


Dimethylammonium hydroxide



Tetraethylammonium hydroxide

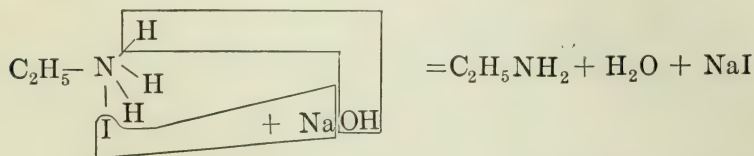
**Methods of Preparation of Primary Amines.**—1. Theoretically the simplest method should involve the reaction between ammonia and an alkyl halide:



but due to the basicity of  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , an addition compound ( $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{NH}_3\text{I}$ , ethylammonium iodide) is first formed, which may

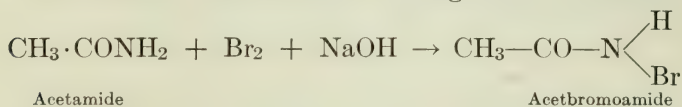


be decomposed by means of alkali just as an ammonium salt may be decomposed by means of alkali:



(This method is little used because of complicated secondary reactions which take place (p. 134)).

2. The action of bromine and a strong base on an amide, e.g.,

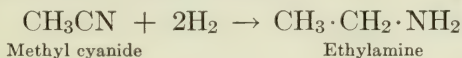


In brief,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CONH}_2 \rightarrow \text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{NH}_2$

(This is known as the *Hofmann* reaction.)

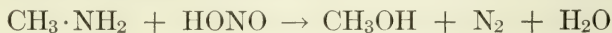
Notice that the conversion of acetamide to methylamine involves the loss of a carbon atom. The *Hofmann* reaction is often used in the conversion of one member of a series to another containing one less carbon atom. (See indigo, p. 316.)

3. The reduction of alkyl cyanides; e.g.,



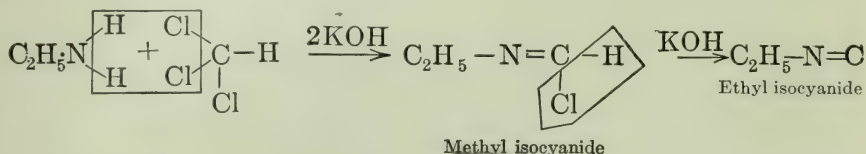
**Properties of Primary Amines.**—These compounds are more basic than ammonia and are readily soluble in water. They have a strong, fish-like odor, and their vapors are flammable. They combine with acids, giving such compounds as methylammonium bromide,  $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HBr}$ ; methylammonium nitrate,  $\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2 \cdot \text{HNO}_3$ , and methylammonium sulfate  $(\text{CH}_3\text{NH}_2)_2 \cdot \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ .

The amines are acted upon by nitrous acid, yielding the corresponding hydroxy compounds:



(The *Van Slyke* method for determining the rate of hydrolysis of a protein is based on this reaction. See under amino acids, p. 140.)

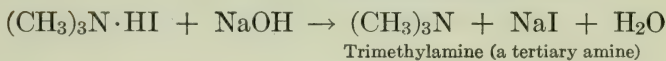
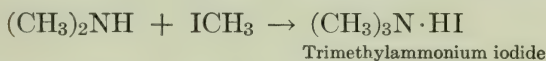
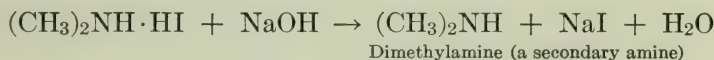
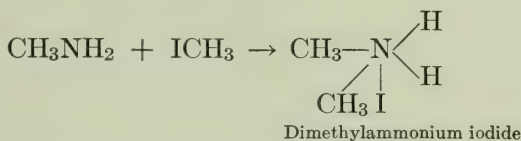
Chloroform and alcoholic potassium hydroxide react with primary amines with the formation of isocyanides (isonitriles).



(This is the **carbylamine reaction** and is used to distinguish primary from secondary and tertiary amines. The isocyanides have characteristic and highly disagreeable odors.)

Methylamine is a common constituent of many putrefactive mixtures.

**Secondary and tertiary amines** may be obtained by the following series of reactions:



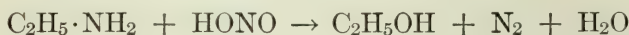
(Trimethylamine can combine with methyl iodide to form tetramethylammonium iodide  $(\text{CH}_3)_4\text{N} \cdot \text{I}$ . Since the reactions given above proceed more or less simultaneously, it becomes somewhat difficult to separate the different amines.)

(For another method see p. 228.)

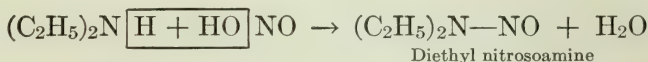
The physical properties of the secondary and tertiary amines are similar to those of the primary amines. Trimethylamine is produced by the destructive distillation of the residue obtained in the sugar beet industry. They, and the primary compound, are found in herring brine and in the products obtained from the distillation of nitrogenous substances.

**The Action of Nitrous Acid on Primary, Secondary and Tertiary Amines.**—It has already been stated that the action

of nitrous acid on a primary amine forms the corresponding hydroxy compound: e.g.,



With secondary amines, nitrous acid forms nitroso compounds e.g.,



(The nitroso-compounds are usually yellow-colored, volatile liquids of aromatic odor.)

Tertiary compounds do not react with nitrous acid (though oxidation of an indefinite type may take place).

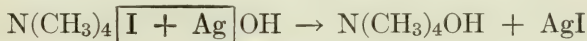
Nitrous acid is, therefore, used to distinguish the amines. (The "carbylamine reaction" given above, p. 134, is specific for primary amines.)

"Quaternary bases" are compounds derived from ammonium hydroxide; e.g.,



(Choline, neurine and muscarine, compounds of physiological importance—See Chapter X—may be regarded as derivatives of quaternary bases.)

Tetramethylammonium hydroxide may be prepared thus:



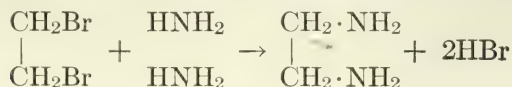
It is a colorless, hygroscopic solid, the solution of which is strongly basic, resembling potassium hydroxide. When heated, it decomposes into trimethylamine:



which is really a very good method for the preparation of tertiary amines.

Compounds containing two amino groups are known as diamines:

Ethylenediamine may be made from ethylene bromide:

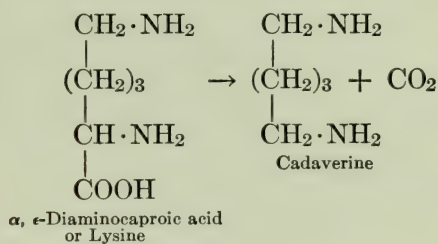




Trimethylene diamine has the formula  $\text{CH}_2 \begin{cases} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \end{cases}$

Tetramethylene diamine,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{NH}_2 \end{array}$  or **putrescine**, and

pentamethylenediamine,  $(\text{CH}_2)_5(\text{NH}_2)_2$ , or **cadaverine**, are putrefactive products of the corresponding amino acids, ornithine and lysine (p. 142), and are found among the putrefactive products in the intestine. It is the belief that the putrefactive products in the intestine are formed by the action of bacteria on various amino acids, which are converted into the corresponding amines by loss of  $\text{CO}_2$ ; e.g.,



(The chemical properties of the diamines are similar to the monoamines, except that as we have to consider two primary  $\text{NH}_2$  groups instead of one  $\text{NH}_2$  group.)

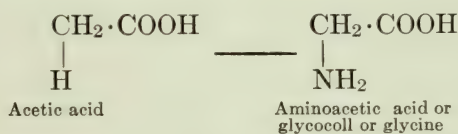
(For a group of compounds related to the amines and of great physiological importance, such as choline, neurine, lecithin, betaine and muscarine, see Chapter X, p. 104.)

## CHAPTER XIV

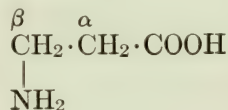
### AMINO ACIDS AND PROTEINS

#### AMINO ACIDS

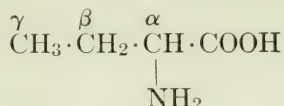
An amino acid is a compound in which a hydrogen in the group attached to the COOH is replaced by an NH<sub>2</sub> group; e.g.,



(The nomenclature is analogous to that used in the halogen and hydroxy substituted acids, so that



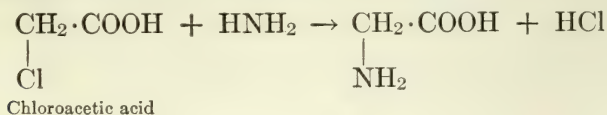
is  $\beta$ -aminopropionic acid; and



is  $\alpha$ -aminobutyric acid.)

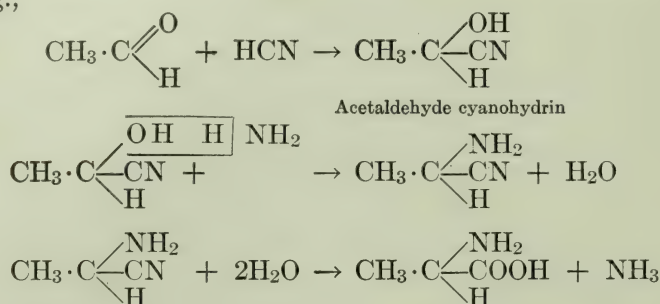
The  $\alpha$ -amino acids are of great importance physiologically, since these are the main products obtained when proteins are hydrolyzed.

**Methods of Preparation.**—1. The action of ammonia on halogen acids; e.g.,



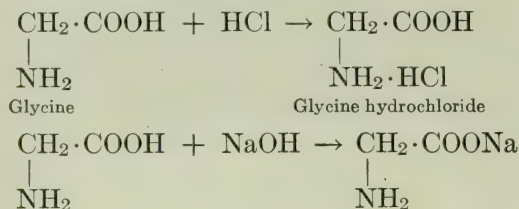
2. The action of hydrogen cyanide on aldehydes and ketones,

and the subsequent reaction with ammonia and ultimate hydrolysis; e.g.,

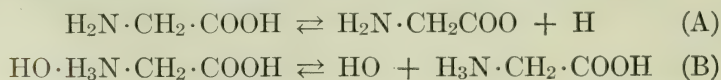


3. The hydrolysis of proteins (either by enzymes, acids or alkalies) yields a succession of products (metaproteins, proteoses, peptones, polypeptides), the final products being amino acids. (In the digestive tract, the enzymes pepsin, trypsin and erepsin hydrolyze the various proteins of the food into different amino acids.)

**Properties.**—Since the amino acids contain  $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{COOH}$  groups, they may act as bases or acids; e.g.,

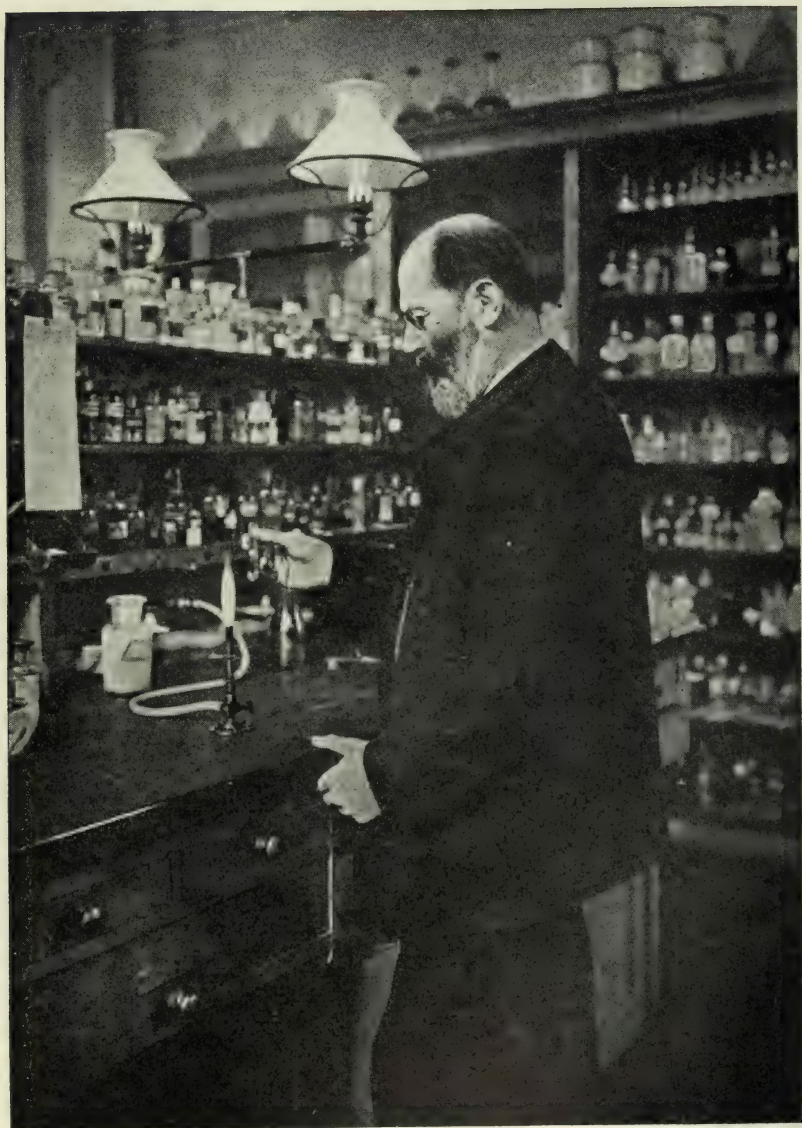


(They are, in reality, amphoteric substances, like aluminium hydroxide or zinc hydroxide. Glycine, for example, is a feeble electrolyte and is partially dissociated thus:



At some particular hydrogen ion concentration, the dissociation represented by (A) will be equal to the dissociation represented by (B). This is the "isoelectric point," and at this point the solution is electrically neutral. The significance of the "isoelectric point" and its bearing on the behavior of such substances as proteins, is only now beginning to be appreciated.)

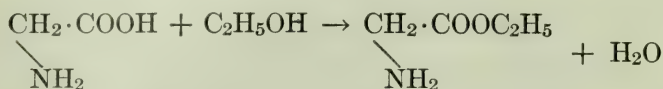




EMIL FISCHER (1852-1919)

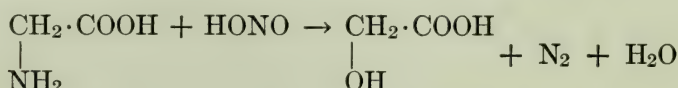
ONE OF THE FOREMOST ORGANIC CHEMISTS OF THE NINETEENTH CENTURY, DID MUCH TO ELUCIDATE THE CHEMISTRY OF CARBOHYDRATES (P. 163), PURINES (P. 149) AND PROTEINS (P. 143).

When dissolved in alcohol and saturated with hydrogen chloride (dehydrating agent), the amino acids form esters; e.g.,



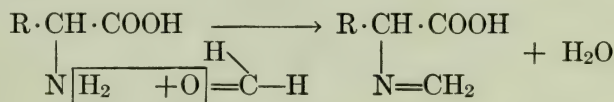
(Emil Fischer has used this "ester" method to separate the amino acids obtained by the hydrolysis of proteins.)

Nitrous acid converts amino acids into the corresponding hydroxy compounds with the liberation of nitrogen; e.g.,



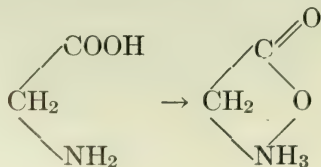
(This is the principle of the *Van Slyke* method for the determination of amino acids in blood and tissues, and for following the rate of protein hydrolysis.)

Aldehydes react with amino acids to form methylene derivatives; e.g.,



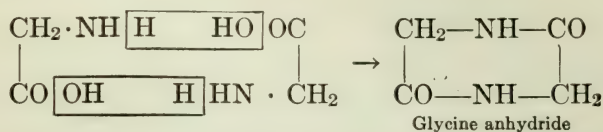
(This reaction converts an approximately neutral substance—because of the presence of the  $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{COOH}$  groups—into an acid substance, by a substitution in the  $\text{NH}_2$  group. Sørensen has used this principle for determining amino acids in blood, urine and tissues, and for estimating the extent of protein hydrolysis. The greater the hydrolysis, the more free  $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{COOH}$  groups are formed and hence, when the  $\text{NH}_2$  group is removed by formaldehyde, the greater the acidity of the hydrolytic products.)

Since an amino acid contains a basic and an acidic group, internal neutralization is possible, with the resulting formation of "inner" salts:

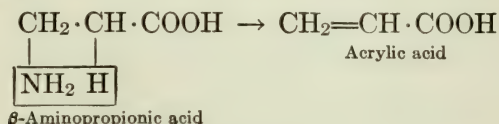




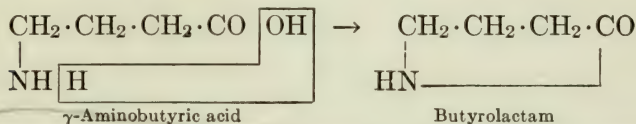
When an  $\alpha$ -amino acid is heated, two of its molecules combine to form an anhydride:



$\beta$ -Amino acids, when heated, lose ammonia and yield unsaturated acids:



$\gamma$ -Amino acids give "lactams":



(These reactions are analogous to those given under hydroxy acids, p. 121.)

*Amino acids obtained from the hydrolysis of proteins.*

**Glycocoll**,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , also called glycine, is aminoacetic acid.



**Alanine**,  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is  $\alpha$ -aminopropionic acid.



**Valine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is  $\alpha$ -aminoisovaleric acid.



**Leucine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3 \\ \text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is  $\alpha$ -aminoisocaproic acid.



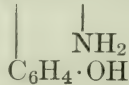
acid.

**Phenyl alanine**,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is  $\beta$ -phenyl- $\alpha$ -aminopropionic acid.



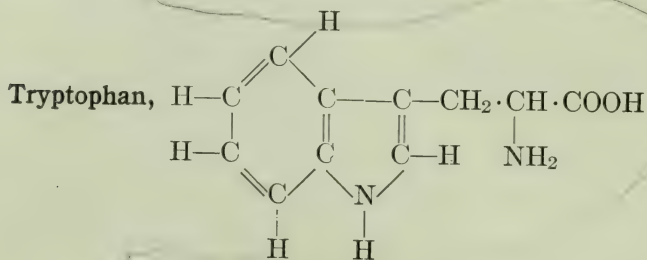


**Tyrosine**,  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH}$ , is  $\alpha$ -amino- $\beta$ -para-hydroxyphenyl-

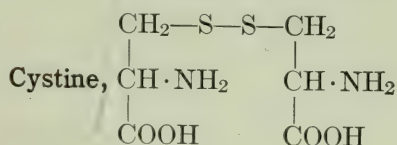


propionic acid.

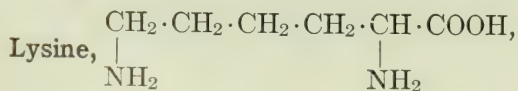
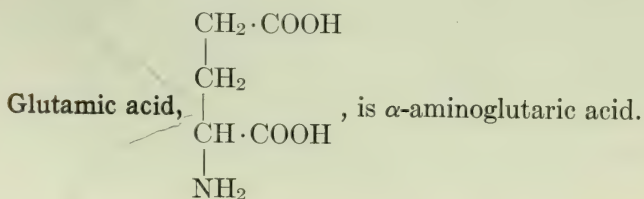
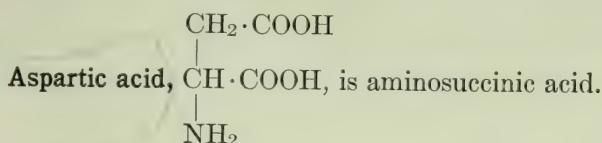
(The student will appreciate the naming of some of these substances after he has studied the sections devoted to aromatic chemistry.)



is  $\alpha$ -Amino- $\beta$ -indolepropionic acid.

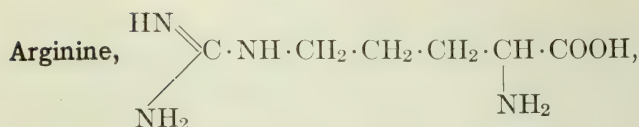


is di-( $\beta$ -thio- $\alpha$ -aminopropionic acid.)

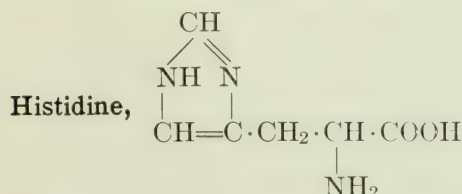


is  $\alpha$ ,  $\epsilon$ -diaminocaproic acid.

*Most amino acids*



is  $\alpha$ -amino- $\delta$ -guanidino-valeric acid.



is  $\alpha$ -amino- $\beta$ -imidazolepropionic acid

# PROTEINS

Proteins are essential, and in many ways, the most characteristic constituents of protoplasm. They may be regarded as combinations of  $\alpha$ -amino acids. Their chemical properties are dependent upon the presence of these amino acids. Their physical properties, on the other hand, are largely due to the fact that they form colloidal solutions. Among the three classes of foodstuffs, fats, carbohydrates and proteins, the proteins alone contain the element nitrogen, and, as a rule, sulfur. The average percentage composition of proteins is (in per cent)  $C=53$ ,  $O=23$ ,  $N=16$ ,  $H=7$ , and  $S=1$ .

They may be classified as follows:

**Albumins.**—Soluble in water and coagulated on boiling. (Examples: ovalbumin in egg white, lactalbumin in milk, serum albumin in blood, etc.)

**Globulins.**—Insoluble in water, but soluble in dilute solutions of a number of salts (such as sodium chloride) and coagulable on heating. (Examples: serum globulin in blood, edestin in hempseed, ovoglobulin in egg white, etc.)

**Protamines.**—Basic substances forming stable salts with mineral acids. In comparison with some of the other proteins, these yield relatively few amino acids on hydrolysis. They are soluble in water and not coagulated on heating. (Examples: salmine in salmon sperm, and in general, in the heads of ripe spermatozoa and in ova.)

**Histones.**—Somewhat similar to protamines. These are soluble in water and precipitated by ammonia. (Examples: globin in hemoglobin, scombrone in mackerel sperm, thymus histone, etc.)

**Glutelins.**—Proteins common in the vegetable kingdom. These are insoluble in neutral solvents, but soluble in acids and alkalies. (Example: glutenin in wheat.)

**Prolamines.**—These are also common in the vegetable kingdom. They are soluble in 70–80 per cent alcohol (which distinguishes them from glutelins and other proteins), but, like other proteins, insoluble in absolute alcohol. They are also insoluble in water and neutral solvents. (Examples: zein in corn, gliadin in wheat and rye, hordein in barley, etc.)

**Albuminoids.**—These are found in the skeletal and connective tissue of animals, and are characterized by their far greater insolubility in reagents than other proteins. (Examples: keratin in hair, collagen in connective tissue, etc.)

The proteins which have so far been enumerated are known as “simple proteins,” to distinguish them from the following “conjugated proteins”:

**Nucleoproteins.**—These are combinations of protein and nucleic acid, and are characterized by yielding purine bases (p. 149) on hydrolysis. (Examples: nucleoprotein in thymus, pancreas, spleen, and in glandular tissue in general. They are found in nearly all cells, and particularly in the nuclei of cells.)

**Glycoproteins.**—Combinations of protein and a compound containing the carbohydrate group. They are characterized by yielding, on hydrolysis, a sugar which reduces *Fehling's-Benedict* solution. (Examples: mucin in saliva, osseomucoid in bone, tendomucoid in tendon, etc.)

**Phosphoproteins.**—These proteins, like the nucleoproteins, are rich in phosphorus, but, unlike the latter, do not yield purine bases on hydrolysis. (Examples: casein in milk, vitellin in egg yolk, etc.)

**Hemoglobins.**—Combinations of protein with a pigment-containing substance. (Example: hemoglobin in blood, which on hydrolysis yields the histone, globin, and the iron-containing substance, hematin.)

In addition to these, we have a number of “secondary” or “hydrolyzed” proteins, obtained in the course of hydrolysis



of proteins when acted upon by certain enzymes, acids or alkalies. They are:

**Metaproteins.**—These represent the first stage in protein hydrolysis. They are soluble in acids and alkalies, but insoluble in neutral solvents (from which they are coagulated on boiling).

**Proteoses.**—The primary proteoses are soluble in water, not coagulated on boiling, and precipitated by one-half saturated solution of ammonium sulfate. The secondary proteoses show similar properties, except that they require a completely saturated solution of ammonium sulfate for precipitation, a crude distinction, it must be confessed.

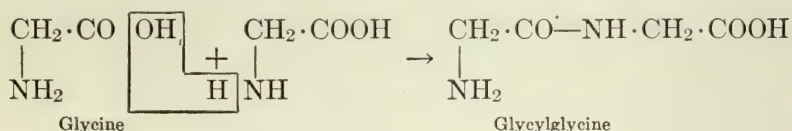
**Peptones.**—These are similar to the proteoses, but are not precipitated by ammonium sulfate.

As hydrolysis proceeds, we arrive at the **polypeptide** stage (compounds of a somewhat simpler type, chemically, than peptones), and finally obtain the individual amino acids.

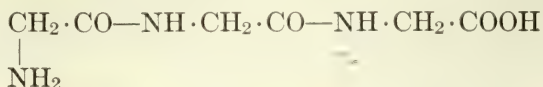
**Composition of Proteins.**—The various proteins, when completely hydrolyzed (by acid, alkali or enzyme) yield amino acids. The essential difference among proteins is in the number and in the amount of amino acids which they yield. Up to the present, about eighteen of these amino acids have been isolated (see amino acids, p. 146), and the extent to which they occur in a number of proteins is given in the table on the following page.

The isolation of the various amino acids is a laborious task and cannot be discussed here.

**Constitution of Proteins.**—Emil Fischer has shown that the proteins may be regarded as combinations of amino acids, linked in the following way (to take the simplest case):



Glycylglycine (dipeptide) is the simplest example of a polypeptide. It, in turn, may combine with another molecule of glycine to form diglycylglycine (tripeptide).



PER CENT OF AMINO ACIDS ISOLATED FROM VARIOUS PROTEINS

	Gliadin— Wheat	Salmin— Salmon <sup>1</sup>	Keratin— Sheeps' Horn	Ovalbumin— Cryst.	Muscle— Scallop	Japanese— Silk Cocoons	Globin—Horse Hemoglobin	Gelatin	Casein—Cow	Elastin
Glycocoll.....	0.02	0.00	0.45	0.00	0.00	35.00	0.00	16.5	0.45	25.75
Alanine.....	2.00	0.00	1.6	2.22	.....	22.6	4.2	0.8	1.85	6.58
Valine.....	0.21	4.3	4.5	2.50	.....	.....	.....	1.0	7.95	1.4
Leucine.....	5.61	0.00	15.3	10.71	8.78	0.7	29.0	2.1	9.7	21.38
Proline.....	7.06	11.0	3.7	3.56	2.28	0.7	2.3	5.2	7.63	1.74
Phenylalanine..	2.35	0.0	1.9	5.07	4.90	1.3	4.2	0.4	3.88	3.89
Aspartic acid..	0.58	0.0	2.5	2.20	3.47	1.3	4.4	0.56	1.77	
Glutamic acid..	42.98	0.0	17.2	9.10	14.88	0.07	1.7	1.88	21.77	0.76
Serine.....	0.13	7.8	1.1	?	.....	.....	0.6	0.4	0.5	
Cystine.....	0.45	0.0	7.5	?	.....	.....	0.3	0.0	0.07	?
Tyrosine.....	1.20	0.0	3.6	1.77	1.95	9.7	1.3	0.00	4.5	
Arginine.....	3.16	87.4	2.7	4.91	7.38	.....	5.4	7.62	3.81	0.3
Histidine.....	0.61	0.0	?	1.71	2.02	.....	11.0	0.4	2.5	
Lysine.....	0.00	0.0	0.2	3.76	5.77	.....	4.3	2.75	7.62	
Ammonia.....	5.1	.....	?	1.34	1.08	.....	.....	.....	1.61	
Tryptophan...	Pres.	0.0	.....	.....	Pres.	.....	Pres.	0.0	1.5	

and so on. Of course, the combinations need not involve glycine only, but other amino acids may take a part in such reactions—in fact, any substance containing the  $\text{NH}_2$  and  $\text{COOH}$  groups; so that the number of such possible polypeptides is very large.

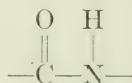
Fischer has prepared an octadecapeptide, consisting of three leucine and fifteen glycine units, which is not easily distinguishable from a protein found in nature. Apart from being a colloid, this octadecapeptide is hydrolyzed by the enzyme trypsin (of the pancreas) into amino acids, just like any of the common proteins.

As further evidence of the polypeptide nature of proteins, it should be recalled that when proteins are hydrolyzed, polypeptides (such as glycylytyrosine) have actually been isolated from among the hydrolytic products.

**General Reactions.**—*Biuret.*—When the protein is mixed with a conc. solution of sodium hydroxide and a drop or two of dilute copper sulfate solution is added, a violet to pink color is obtained. (Generally the simpler the protein the more pinkish



the color, so that peptones show a distinct pink and albumins a distinct bluish-violet.) The reaction is given by nearly all substances containing two



groups attached to one another, to the same nitrogen atom, or to the same carbon atom. The name "biuret" is derived from the fact that biuret (which is obtained by heating urea, p. 114) gives this reaction.

*Xanthoproteic.*—Heating a protein solution with conc. nitric acid produces a yellow color. This is changed to orange on the addition of an excess of ammonium hydroxide. (The yellow color is dependent upon the formation of a nitro compound.)

*Millon's.*—Heating with Millon's reagent (essentially, mercury dissolved in nitric acid), a brick-red color or precipitate is obtained. (This reaction is given by phenol and phenolic derivatives.) The substance in the protein molecule responsible for this test is probably tyrosine.

*Glyoxylic acid (Hopkins-Cole).*—When the protein is mixed with glyoxylic acid and conc. sulfuric acid added, a violet ring is obtained. (This reaction is due to the presence of tryptophan in the protein molecule.)

*Molisch.*—With alpha-naphthol and conc. sulfuric, the protein solution forms a violet ring. (The reaction is due to the presence of the carbohydrate glucosamine in the protein molecule.)

(While no one of these color tests is evidence of the presence of a protein, any substance which gives two or more of these tests may be suspected of being a protein.) The following reactions are further confirmatory tests.

Proteins are precipitated by the salts of heavy metals, such as lead acetate, mercuric chloride, copper sulfate, etc.

The proteins are precipitated by the "alkaloidal reagents," such as phosphotungstic, phosphomolybdic, tannic, picric acids, etc.


Proteins are precipitated by strong alcohol.

Many of the proteins, like the albumins and the globulins, are coagulated on heating.

("Argyrol," a protein-silver combination, is used in conjunctivitis, laryngitis, etc.)



## READING REFERENCES

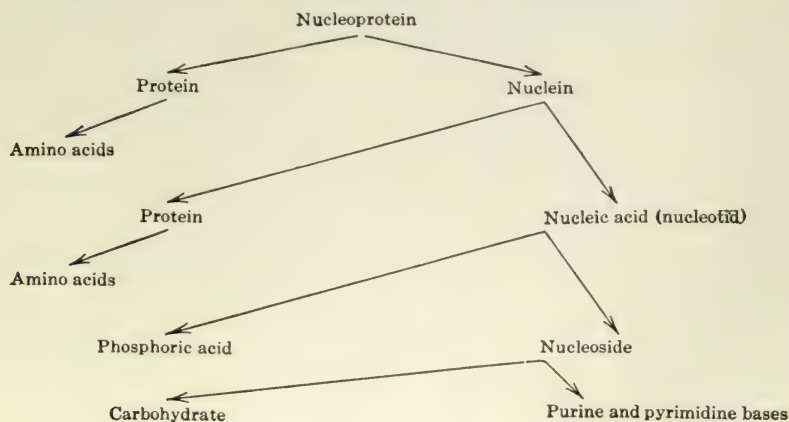
- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century.  
(1916), Chap. 29 (Proteins).  
PLIMMER—The Chemical Constitution of the Proteins.  
OSBORNE—The Vegetable Proteins.  
HARROW—Eminent Chemists of Our Time. (1920), pp. 217-239 (Fischer).
- 

## CHAPTER XV

### NUCLEOPROTEINS, PURINES, URIC ACID AND PYRIMIDINES

**Nucleoproteins** are a group of combined proteins of especial interest to us, since, on the one hand, they are principally constituents of the nuclei of cells (animal and plant), and on the other, they yield, on decomposition, a group of important organic substances (purines and pyrimidines). They may be extracted from animal or vegetable sources by water or dilute alkali, and precipitated by acid (for example, the nucleoprotein in yeast may be extracted with dilute alkali and then precipitated by acid, or the lymphatic glands of the ox or sheep, or the thymus of a calf, may be extracted with water, and the nucleoprotein precipitated with acid.)

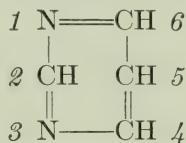
A careful study of the hydrolytic products of nucleoproteins shows that they, like the proteins and higher carbohydrates, "split up" in stages. The following is a schematic representation:



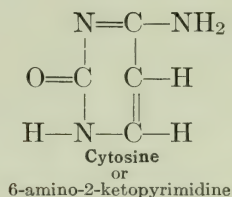
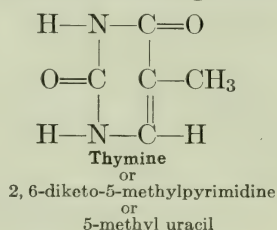
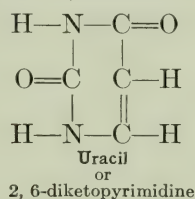
The nucleoprotein, in other words, may be regarded as a combination of protein and nucleic acid, the latter, in turn,

being a combination of phosphoric acid, carbohydrate (usually a pentose if the carbohydrate is of plant origin, and a hexose if of animal origin), and pyrimidine bases.

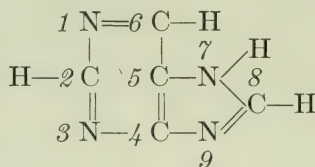
Among the common **pyrimidines** are uracil, thymine and cytosine. **Pyrimidine** itself has the formula:



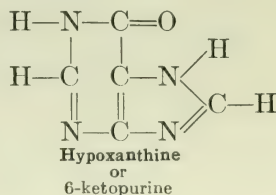
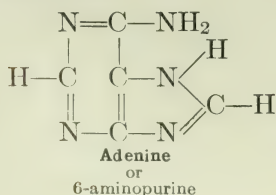
and uracil, thymine and cytosine have the following structures:



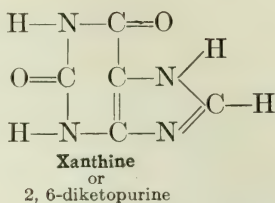
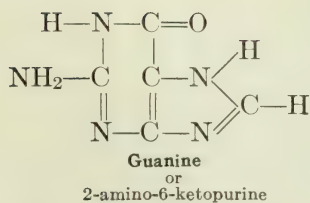
Among the **purine bases** are adenine, hypoxanthine and guanine. **Purine** itself has the formula:



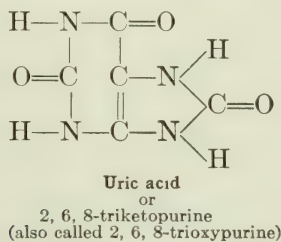
and the structures for adenine, hypoxanthine, guanine and xanthine are:





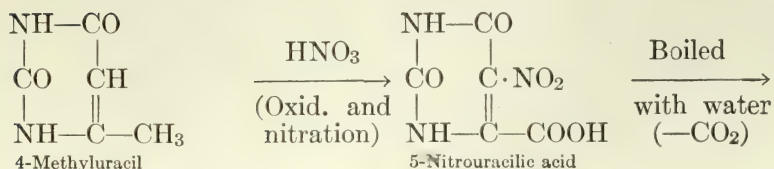
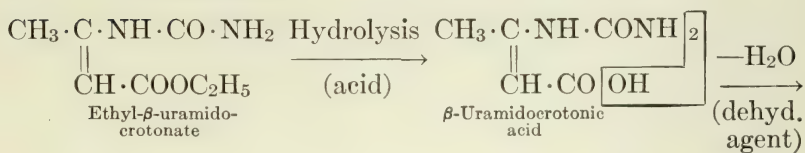
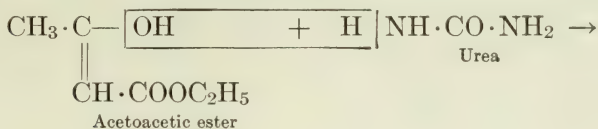


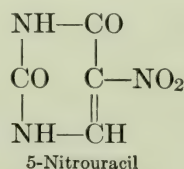
The purines are very largely oxidized to uric acid in the body:



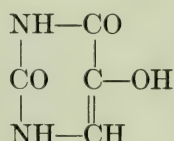
**Uric acid** is an important nitrogenous constituent of the urine. It is present in the joints, bladder, and in abnormally high amounts in the blood of persons suffering from gout and rheumatism.

We shall give one of several syntheses of uric acid. This will illustrate not only the synthetic preparation of an important purine derivative, but incidentally that of a pyrimidine derivative, namely, a methyluracil:

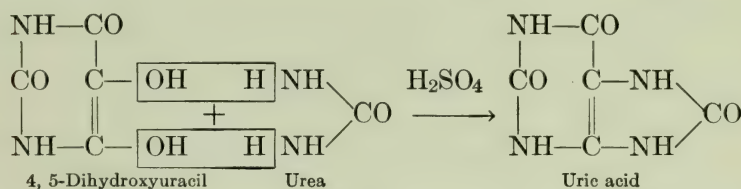




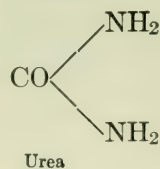
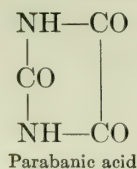
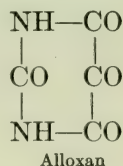
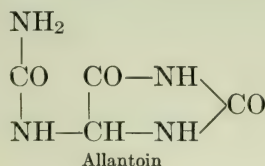
With tin and HCl, part of the 5-nitrouracil is reduced to the corresponding 5-amino-compound (5-aminouracil) and part of it to 5-hydroxyuracil:



This compound is oxidized by bromine water to 4,5-dihydroxyuracil, which, when heated with urea and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , yields uric acid:

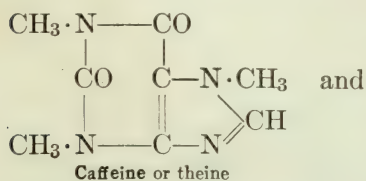


The oxidation of uric acid may yield any one of the following products (depending on the reaction and the reagent employed):



Allantoin occurs to a small extent in human urine, but in mammals,—other than man and anthropoid apes it takes the place of uric acid, it being the principal end product of purine metabolism.

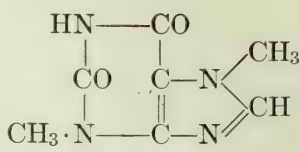
Other important purine derivatives are:



**Caffeine or theine**

or  
1, 3, 7-trimethyl-2, 6-diketopurine

or  
1, 3, 7-trimethylxanthine



**Theobromine**

or  
3, 7-dimethyl-2, 6-diketopurine

or  
3, 7-dimethylxanthine

Theobromine is present in cocoa beans (chocolate) and **theophylline** (isomeric with theobromine) occurs in tea leaves, while caffeine is a constituent of coffee (about 1 per cent) and tea (about 1-4 per cent).

Caffeine, theobromine and theophylline are strong diuretics, but caffeine is peculiar in having a strong excitant action upon the central nervous system.

#### READING REFERENCE

JONES—Nucleic Acids.



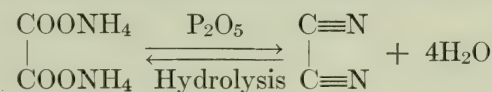
## CHAPTER XVI

### CYANIDES, ISOCYANIDES AND OTHER NITROGEN COMPOUNDS

THE student having taken inorganic chemistry is already familiar, to some extent, with cyanide compounds. He has used potassium ferrocyanide and potassium ferricyanide in testing for iron salts; and he remembers potassium cyanide and hydrogen cyanide as examples of deadly poisons.

**Cyanogen**  $(\text{CN})_2$ , is a colorless, poisonous gas, with a pungent odor, and burns with a blue flame, giving carbon dioxide and nitrogen. It may be prepared:

1. By heating ammonium oxalate with a dehydrating agent:

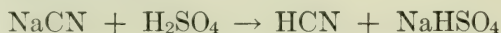


(The cyanogen can be hydrolyzed back to the ammonium oxalate.)

2. By heating mercuric cyanide:

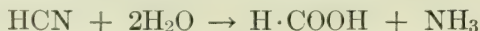


**Hydrogen Cyanide**,  $\text{HCN}$  (also called **hydrocyanic acid**), is a colorless, poisonous volatile liquid, burning with a violet flame. Its water solution is called "prussic acid." (Some attempt was made during the war to use it as a "poison gas.") It occurs in bitter almonds, wild cherry bark and other plant products. It is a very weak acid. Its formula may be represented as  $\text{H}-\text{C}\equiv\text{N} \rightleftharpoons \text{H}-\text{N}=\text{C}$ . It may be prepared by heating sodium cyanide with sulfuric acid:

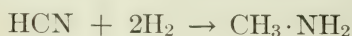


a reaction quite analogous to the preparation of the halogen acids.

Hydrogen cyanide hydrolyzes to formic acid:

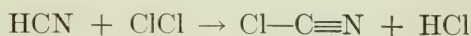


and reduces to methylamine:



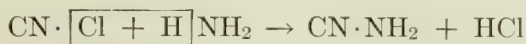
It is used in medicine (a 2 per cent solution) in respiratory diseases and to quiet a cough. Recently, it has been recommended as a fungicide and insecticide (spraying trees). Ships are very often disinfected with HCN gas.

**Cyanogen Chloride**,  $\text{CN} \cdot \text{Cl}$ , is a poisonous liquid of low boiling point, and was used as a "poison gas" in the late war. It may be prepared by the action of chlorine on hydrogen cyanide:

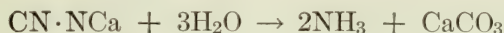


Recently it has been recommended to replace HCN for disinfecting purposes.

**Cyanamide**,  $\text{CN} \cdot \text{NH}_2$ , is prepared by the action of ammonia on cyanogen chloride:



(**Calcium cyanamide**,  $\text{CN} \cdot \text{NCa}$ , made by heating calcium carbide and nitrogen,  $\text{CaC}_2 + \text{N}_2 \rightarrow \text{CaCN}_2 + \text{C}$ , finds extensive use as a fertilizer, for in the presence of water it decomposes in the soil, liberating ammonia:

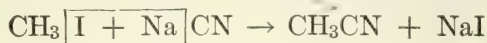


The calcium cyanamide of commerce ( $\text{CaCN}_2 + \text{C}$ ), goes under the name of "nitrolime.")

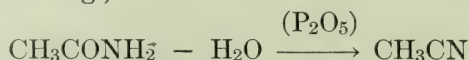
#### ALKYL CYANIDES, $\text{R}-\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$

**Nomenclature.**— $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  may be called either methyl cyanide, or cyanomethane, or acetonitrile. The  $-\text{C}\equiv\text{N}$  is the "nitrile" group, and the name of the substance depends upon the acid obtained when the substance is hydrolyzed. For example,  $\text{CH}_3\text{CN}$  is acetonitrile because it hydrolyzes to acetic acid. Similarly,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CN}$  is propionitrile.

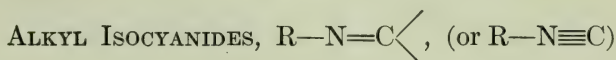
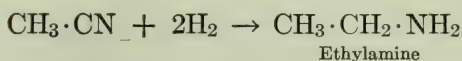
**Preparation.**—1. The action of  $\text{NaCN}$  on an alkyl halide; e.g.,



2. Heating the corresponding amide in the presence of a dehydrating agent: e.g.,

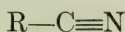


**Properties.**—The alkyl cyanides are reactive on account of their unsaturated character (a triple linkage):

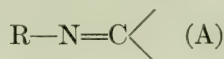


**Nomenclature.**  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{N}=\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \\ \diagdown \end{smallmatrix}$  may be called methyl isocyanide, methyl isonitrile or methyl carbylamine. ( $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{—N}=\text{C} <$  is commonly spoken of as “carbylamine.”)

In organic cyanides the R is connected to the carbon atom:

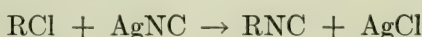


whereas in the organic isocyanides the R is connected to nitrogen:



[The formula (A) is selected because the isocyanides are highly reactive substances, forming, among other things, additive compounds.]

**Preparation.**—1. Action of silver cyanide on alkyl halide; e.g.,



(which suggests that silver cyanide may exist in one of two forms, either as  $\text{AgCN}$  or  $\text{AgNC}$ ).

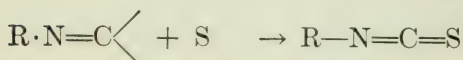
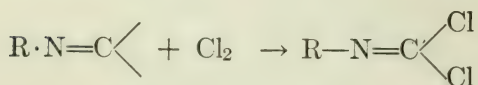
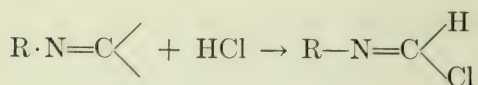
2. The reaction of a primary amine with chloroform in an alkaline solution; e.g.,



(This is a test for primary amines. See p. 134.)

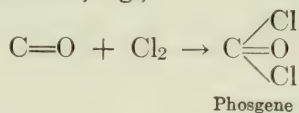
**Properties.**—The isocyanides are colorless, poisonous liquids, with an extremely disagreeable and characteristic odor. They are very reactive; e.g.,





(The C in  $\text{R} \cdot \text{N}=\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \\ \diagdown \end{array}$  seems to be very reactive and, therefore, unsaturated.)

(In this connection, it may be of interest to point out here that the reactivity of carbon monoxide is in reality due to the divalency of its carbon atom, e.g.,

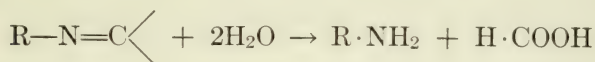
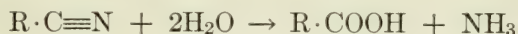


or



whereby the divalent carbon is transformed into the tetravalent form.)

To distinguish between the cyanide and the isocyanide, it is merely necessary to hydrolyze the compounds:



#### OTHER NITROGEN COMPOUNDS

$\text{R} \cdot \text{C} \equiv \text{N}$   
Alkyl cyanide

$\text{R}-\text{O}-\text{C} \equiv \text{N}$   
Alkyl cyanate

$\text{R}-\text{S}-\text{C} \equiv \text{N}$   
Alkyl thiocyanate

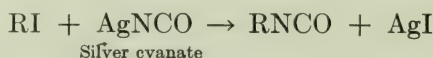
$\text{R}-\text{N}=\text{C} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \\ \diagdown \end{array}$   
Alkyl isocyanide

$\text{R}-\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{O}$   
Alkyl isocyanate

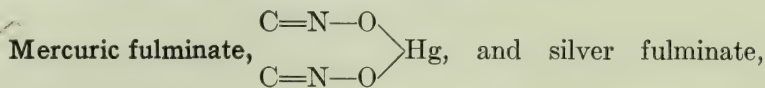
$\text{R}-\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{S}$   
Alkyl isothiocyanate

Isocyanic acid,  $\text{HNCO}$ , is an unstable liquid, but a polymer, cyanuric acid  $(\text{HNCO})_3$  is known.

RNCO compounds are prepared thus:

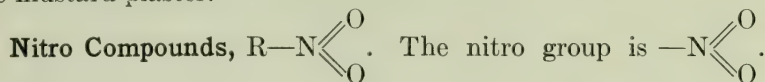


**Fulminic Acid**,  $\text{C}=\text{NOH}$ , is a poisonous, very unstable liquid. Here again we have a divalent carbon represented.



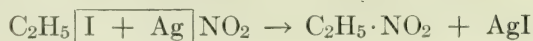
$\text{C}=\text{N}-\text{OAg}$ , are prepared when the respective metals are acted upon by nitric acid and alcohol. They are used as detonators in percussion caps to explode gunpowder, dynamite, T.N.T., and other explosives.

**Allyl isothiocyanate**,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{N}=\text{C}=\text{S}$ , is present in black mustard seeds and is used in medicine as a powerful rubefacient and counterirritant. It is employed as a substitute for the mustard plaster.

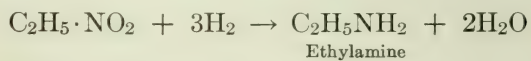


These may be looked upon as nitric acid,  $\text{HO}-\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ , in which the OH is replaced by R. The aliphatic nitro compounds are not important, but the aromatic ones are, as we shall see later (p. 218). The nitro compounds,  $\text{R}-\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ , are isomeric with the alkyl nitrites,  $\text{R}-\text{O}-\text{N}=\text{O}$ , which have already been discussed on p. 95. For example, nitroethane,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5-\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}$  is isomeric with ethyl nitrite,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5-\text{O}-\text{N}=\text{O}$ , though it differs from ethyl nitrate,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5-\text{O}-\text{N} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ .

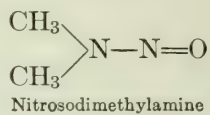
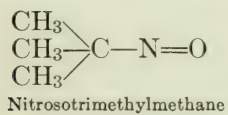
The nitro compounds may be prepared by the action of silver nitrite on halogen compounds; e.g.,



They are easily reduced to the corresponding amines; e.g.,



The nitroso group is represented by  $-\text{N}=\text{O}$ ; e.g.,





## CHAPTER XVII

### CARBOHYDRATES AND RELATED COMPOUNDS

THE name **carbohydrate** (carbon hydrate) is derived from the fact that compounds belonging to this class contain C, H and O, the H and O being in the proportion of 2 : 1, respectively (as in water). There are, however, substances other than carbohydrates, such as acetic acid,  $(\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{COOH})$ , and lactic acid  $(\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{COOH})$ , which contain H and O in the proportions such as are found in water. On the other hand, a number of compounds belong to the carbohydrates although the proportion of H to O is not 2 : 1; e.g., rhamnose  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_5)$ .

The more modern view is to regard carbohydrates as containing aldehyde-alcohol or ketone-alcohol groups; or compounds which upon hydrolysis are converted into substances containing such groups.

Carbohydrates are mainly derived from the vegetable kingdom. Physiologically, the carbohydrates represent one of the three great classes of foodstuffs. Many of them are also of extreme importance in the industries.

In general, carbohydrates fall into two main classes; the sweet and crystalline compounds, called sugars; and the tasteless and non-crystalline compounds, termed starches, celluloses and allied products.

Carbohydrates are classified into:

4. *Monosaccharides* (no further hydrolysis with dilute acids):

Diose, as glycolaldehyde,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CHO}$ .

Trioses, as glyceraldehyde,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CHOH} \cdot \text{CHO}$  or dihydroxyacetone,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH} \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_2\text{OH}$ .

Tetroses, as erythrose, etc.

Pentoses, as arabinose, xylose, ribose, etc.

Hexoses, as glucose, mannose, galactose, fructose, sorbose, etc.

*B. Disaccharides* (yield two monosaccharides upon hydrolysis).

Sucrose, maltose, lactose.

*C. Trisaccharides* (yield upon hydrolysis three monosaccharides):

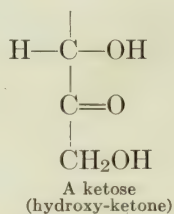
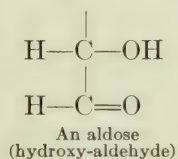
Raffinose.

*D. Polysaccharides* (yield upon hydrolysis more than three monosaccharides):

Starch, cellulose, dextrin, glycogen, inulin, gums, pectins, pentosans, etc.

(The ending "ose" generally refers to carbohydrates.)

The **monosaccharides**, or simple sugars, are aldehydes or ketones linked directly to carbon with OH group as



The trioses and tetroses are of theoretical rather than practical importance.

The **pentoses**,  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{10}\text{O}_5$ , are important plant products, and are sometimes found in human urine. **Ribose** is a constituent of nucleic acid (p. 149), obtained from yeast. **Arabinose** may be obtained by the hydrolysis of gum arabic, cherry gum, etc., and **xylose**, by the hydrolysis of straw and various forms of cellulose.

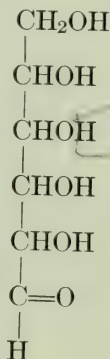
Extremely important, from our point of view, are the hexoses, the disaccharides and some of the polysaccharides.

Among the **hexoses**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$ , **d-glucose** (also called dextrose) is the most important. It is present in the juice of many sweet fruits, such as grapes (hence grape-sugar). It is a normal, and very necessary constituent of blood, and, in pathological conditions (as in diabetes), accumulates to an abnormal degree in the blood and in the urine. Commercially, glucose is prepared by the hydrolysis of starch in presence of dilute acids.



It may be obtained from many poly- and disaccharides. Since

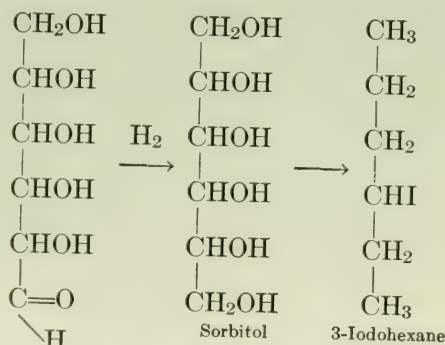
it rotates the plane of polarized light to the right, it is also called dextrose. Its formula may be written:



Some indication of how we arrive at such a structural formula may be given. In the first place, elementary analysis and molecular weight determinations give us the empirical formula  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{12}\text{O}_6$ . The substance behaves like an alcohol, because it reacts with acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride to form acetyl derivatives:

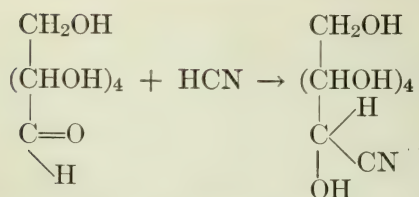


Since glucose forms a penta-acetyl derivative, it must contain five OH groups. On reduction, glucose first yields the corresponding alcohol, and ultimately (if HI is used) a normal six-chain iodohydrocarbon, proving glucose to contain a normal chain of carbon atoms:

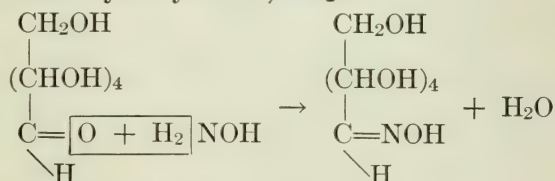


Glucose forms a cyanohydrin with HCN:

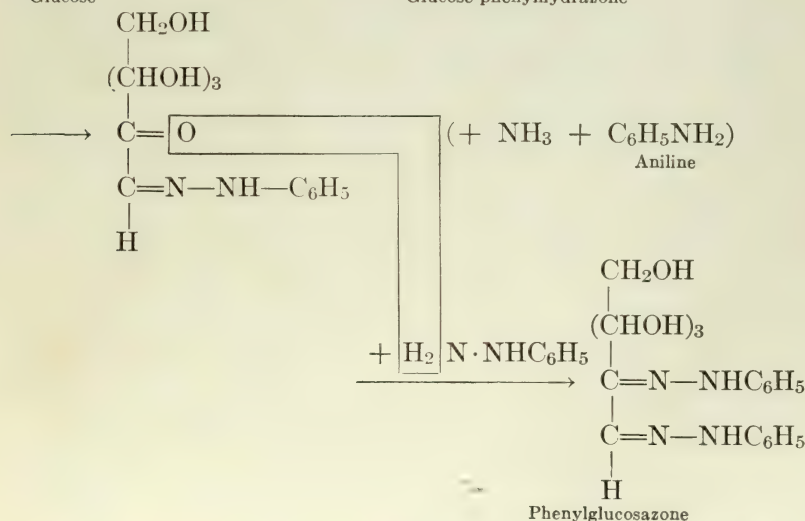
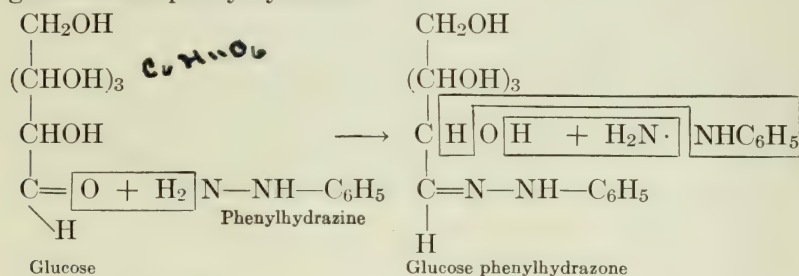




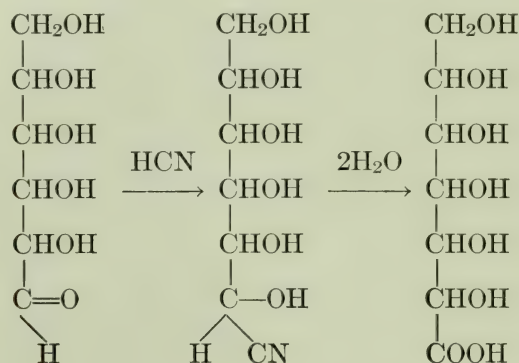
and an oxime with hydroxylamine,  $\text{NH}_2\text{OH}$ :



proving the presence of a carbonyl,  $\text{>CO}$ , group (see p. 72). The presence of this group may be further shown by the reaction of glucose with phenylhydrazine:



It now merely remains to determine the position of the CO group. This can be done in the following way: Glucose is combined with HCN and the resulting product hydrolyzed (see p. 82).



The hydroxy acid is a normal, seven-carbon compound. The COOH group must be attached to the sixth carbon atom, and this, in turn, must have contained a CO group to have reacted with HCN. But the sixth carbon atom in glucose is the end carbon atom; therefore, the position of the CO group in glucose must be at the end carbon atom.

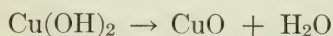
If we have gone into the constitution of glucose at some length, it is merely to illustrate the methods used in assigning formulas to the various carbohydrates.

**Properties of Glucose.**—Like all carbohydrates, glucose reacts with the *Molisch* reagent ( $\alpha$ -naphthol) and conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  to give a violet ring or color, a reaction said to be due to the formation of

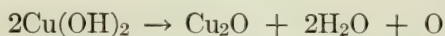
furfural,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}-\text{CH} \\ || \quad || \\ \text{CH} \quad \text{C}-\text{CHO} \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{O} \end{array}$  (see p. 310). Glucose forms an osazone

with phenylhydrazine, a reaction already discussed. These osazones are of the utmost importance in the identification of a number of sugars, since they show definite crystalline forms and have definite melting points. Owing to the presence of the CHO group, glucose reduces ammoniacal silver solutions and the alkaline solutions of a number of metals, such as copper, bismuth and mercury. The best known of these reactions is the **Fehling's**

test, which consists in heating glucose with a solution of copper sulfate, to which potassium hydroxide and Rochelle salt have been added; a yellowish red precipitate of cuprous oxide is obtained. (The theory of the reaction may be explained thus: in the absence of a reducing agent, such as glucose, the cupric hydroxide that is first formed would be converted to black cupric oxide:



but when glucose, or any other appropriate reducing agent is present, cuprous oxide,  $\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$ , which is yellow to red in color, is formed instead:



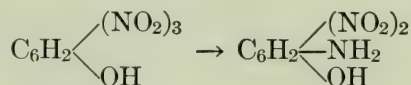
Benedict has modified the Fehling reagent by mixing the copper sulfate with sodium citrate and sodium carbonate, producing a reagent which does not deteriorate even after long standing. The Benedict modification also has the advantage over Fehling's solution in that, when it is applied to test for glucose in the urine, neither uric acid nor creatinine—nitrogenous substances present in the urine—interfere with the test; nor does chloroform, which is often used as a preservative for the urine.)

(The original Fehling's solution consists of two separate solutions: (a) 34.65 grams of copper sulfate per 500 cc. of water; and (b) 125 grams of potassium hydroxide and 173 grams of Rochelle salt dissolved per 500 cc. of water. These solutions are preserved separately and mixed in equal volumes when needed for use. Benedict's first modification consists of (a) 34.65 grams of copper sulfate per 500 cc. of water; and (b) 100 grams of anhydrous sodium carbonate and 173 grams of Rochelle salt per 500 cc. of water. These solutions are mixed when needed. Benedict's second modification consists of but *one* solution: 17.3 grams of copper sulfate, 173 grams of sodium citrate and 100 grams of anhydrous sodium carbonate per liter of water. For the *quantitative* determination of glucose, Benedict's solution consists of 18 grams of crystallized copper sulfate, 200 grams of crystallized sodium carbonate—or 100 grams of the anhydrous salt—200 grams of sodium or potassium citrate, 125 grams of potassium thiocyanate and 5 cc. of a 5 per cent solution of



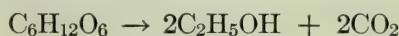
potassium ferrocyanide—all dissolved and made up to 1 liter of solution.)

Heated with picric acid, in the presence of KOH, glucose gives a red color—a reaction which forms the basis for a colorimetric determination of glucose in blood. (The reaction is said to be due to the reduction of picric (p. 263) to picramic acid;



though the question has not been definitely settled.)

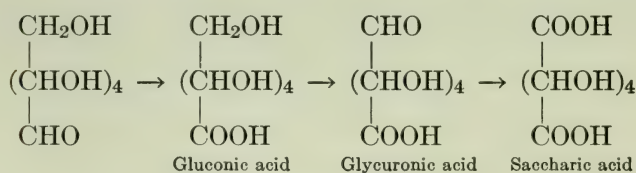
Yeast “ferments” glucose forming ethyl alcohol and  $\text{CO}_2$ :



Glucose is optically active, turning the plane of polarized light to the right. It has four asymmetric carbon atoms.

Glucose (both in the solid and in the form of syrup, as corn syrup) is used extensively in making confectionery, jellies, preserves, as table syrups, in the manufacture of alcoholic beverages, as a diluent (to increase bulk and weight) for dyes, in chewing gum, tobacco, etc.

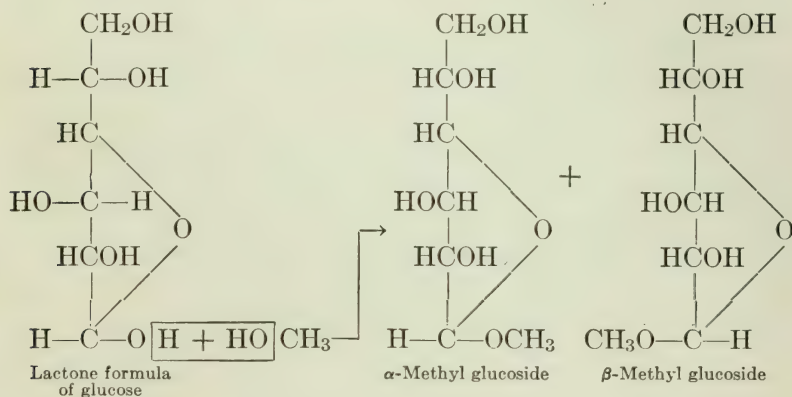
On oxidation, glucose may give rise to the following products:



(Glycuronic acid is of importance physiologically, since it may combine with poisonous substances, such as phenol, chloral, etc., to make them inert.)

The optical activity of freshly prepared glucose solution diminishes on standing. This “mutarotation,” as it is called, is due to the fact that there are, in reality, two forms of glucose,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -glucose present, having different rotatory powers, and the optical activity of the resulting mixture will depend upon the amounts of each present. The  $\alpha$ -glucose is readily changed to  $\beta$ -glucose, and vice versa, until equilibrium is reached.

**Glucosides.**—When glucose reacts with methanol in presence of HCl, two compounds,  $\alpha$ - and  $\beta$ -methyl glucosides are obtained, the formulas of which may be represented thus:



The two glucosides have different physical properties. They also behave differently towards enzymes. Maltase hydrolyzes the  $\alpha$ - variety, but not the  $\beta$ -, and emulsin hydrolyzes the  $\beta$ -, but not the  $\alpha$ -.

The naturally occurring glucosides belong to the  $\beta$ -form. On hydrolysis, glucose and other products are produced. The following glucosides occur in nature: phloridzin, found in the bark of fruit trees, which yields fructose and phloroglucinol when hydrolyzed. Phloridzin is often used to induce a form of diabetes

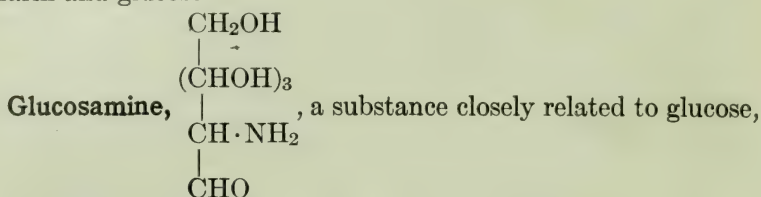
in animals. Salicin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{CH}_2\text{OH} \end{array}$ , on hydrolysis yields glucose and saligenin, or salicyl alcohol. Salicin occurs in willow

bark. Amygdalin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CH} \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{CN} \\ \diagdown \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_{12}\text{H}_{21}\text{O}_{10} \end{array}$ , hydrolyzes to two molecules of glucose, HCN and benzaldehyde. It is found in

bitter almonds. Arbutin,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \begin{array}{l} \diagup \text{O} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}\text{O}_5 \\ \diagdown \text{OH} \end{array}$ , hydrolyzes to glu-

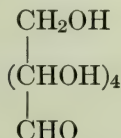
cose and hydroquinone. It is present in the leaves of the berry tree. Myronic acid is present in black mustard seed. On hydrolysis, it is converted to dextrose,  $\text{KHSO}_4$  and allyl isothiocyanate ( $\text{C}_3\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NCS}$ ). Ruberythric acid is present in madder

root. On hydrolysis or fermentation, it is converted to the dye alizarin and glucose.



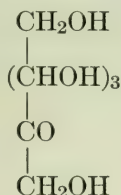
is an important constituent of glycoproteins, such as mucin and the various mucoids, and may be obtained from them by hydrolysis. It is also present in chitin, a constituent of the shells of the lobster. Glucosamine reduces Fehling's solution, and its general properties are much like those of glucose.

**Galactose** is an aldohexose, like glucose:



It is obtained by the hydrolysis of lactose or milk sugar. It is also an important constituent of the cerebrosides of the brain. Like glucose, it forms an osazone with phenylhydrazine (differing, however, in structure), and reduces Fehling's solution, but ferments slowly with yeast. On oxidation, it forms mucic acid (stereoisomer of saccharic acid), which also differentiates galactose from glucose.

**Fructose**, or levulose, or fruit-sugar, has the formula:



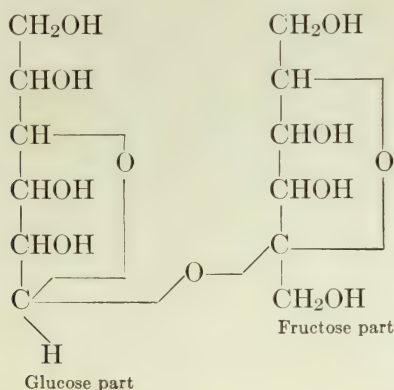
and is, therefore, a ketohexose, isomeric with glucose and galactose. Fructose, glucose and galactose are, physiologically, the three important hexoses. Fructose is a constituent of cane-sugar, or sucrose, from which it may be obtained on hydrolysis. Like the other two common hexoses, fructose reduces Fehling's solution and forms an osazone. The osazone with phenylhy-



drazine is the same as the one formed with glucose. It may be distinguished from glucose and galactose by the *Seliwanoff* test, which consists of heating fructose with resorcinol dissolved in dilute HCl, whereby a red color and a red precipitate are obtained.

*i*-Fructose,  $C_6H_{12}O_6$ , is obtained by polymerization of six moles of formaldehyde with calcium hydroxide. A mixture of sugars is obtained known as "formose" from which *i*-fructose has been isolated. *i*-fructose is the racemic (*dl*) form.

**Sucrose**, or cane sugar,  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , is one of three physiologically important disaccharides, the other two being, lactose and maltose. On acid hydrolysis, sucrose yields a mixture of glucose and fructose ("invert sugar"). The same result is brought about by the enzyme sucrase, found in the small intestine. On a large scale, sucrose is obtained from sugar-cane, sugar-beet, etc. Unlike dextrose, fructose, galactose, maltose and lactose, five other important sugars, it does not reduce Fehling's solution, nor does it form an osazone—that is, it does not behave like an aldehyde or ketone sugar. To explain this, the suggested formula for sucrose does not contain a "free" CO group:



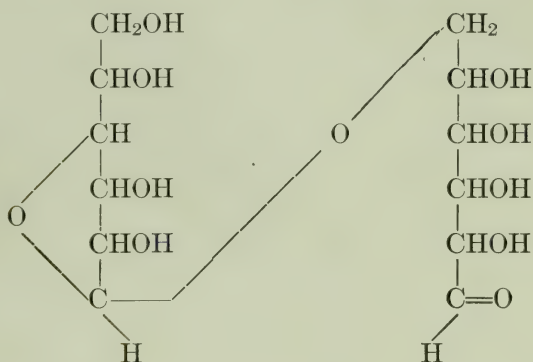
*Cane sugar  
does not reduce  
Fehling's sugar*

When sugar is heated above its melting-point, caramel is formed. This is a brown substance and is used extensively as a coloring material in food preparations.

(Whether the sugar is obtained from the sugar-cane or the sugar-beet, the principle involved in the extraction process consists in first separating the juice from the insoluble fiber, next in precipitating albuminous material and neutralizing the

acids present, and finally in evaporating the filtrate and separating the crystals from the mother-liquor. The latter contains some 50 per cent of sucrose and is known as "molasses," a product used in the making of alcohol. If the "molasses" is derived from the sugar-cane, it may be used as table syrup and in the preparation of rum.)

**Lactose**,  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , or milk sugar, occurs in milk to the extent of about 4 per cent. On hydrolysis, or by the action of the enzyme lactase in the small intestine, it yields glucose and galactose. Since it reduces Fehling's solution and forms an osazone, we assume that it contains a "free" CO group:



**Maltose**,  $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ , or malt sugar, is found in malt, which is the sprouted grain of barley. This sprouted grain contains an enzyme, diastase, which converts the starch in the grain into maltose. A similar action occurs in the body when the enzyme ptyalin, found in saliva, acts on the starch in foods. When maltose is hydrolyzed by acids, or by maltase (an enzyme found in yeast and also in the small intestine) two molecules of glucose are obtained. (The maltase in yeast, acting on maltose, forms glucose, and then the zymase in yeast, acting on glucose, produces ethyl alcohol and  $\text{CO}_2$ .) Maltose behaves similarly to lactose, but the latter forms galactose as one of its products of hydrolysis, whereas maltose forms only glucose.

**Raffinose**,  $C_{18}H_{32}O_{16}$ , is a trisaccharide occurring in cotton seed, etc. It does not reduce Fehling's solution. On hydrolysis, it yields fructose, glucose and galactose. This hydrolysis may either be brought about by acids or by certain bacteria and yeasts.



**Chitin**, a tetrasaccharide, is probably composed of four glucosamine (p. 168) units. It is prepared from the shells of lobsters or crabs.

**Chondroitin**, another tetrasaccharide, is contained in cartilage, often in combination with protein.

**Starch**, one of a number of polysaccharides having the general formula  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_x$ , is widely distributed in the vegetable kingdom. It is synthesized in the plant by the combined action of carbon dioxide and water in the presence of chlorophyll. It is hydrolyzed in the body first to soluble starch, then to a number of dextrans, then to maltose and finally to glucose, and in the latter form is absorbed into the blood stream. Boiled with water, the granules swell and burst, and "starch paste" is obtained. Starch gives a blue color with iodine.

**Dextrins** of the general formula  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_x$ , are considered somewhat less complex than starch itself, for the dextrans are obtained in the course of the hydrolysis of starch by enzymes. Erythrodextrin gives a reddish-brown color with iodine and achrodextrin fails to give any color.

**Glycogen**, or "animal starch"  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_x$ , is found almost exclusively in the animal kingdom, and particularly in the liver. It is the form in which carbohydrate is stored in the body. With iodine it gives a red color.

**Inulin** is a polysaccharide found in the tubers of the artichoke, dahlia, etc. Unlike starch, it is soluble in hot water and gives a negative reaction with iodine. On hydrolysis, it yields the monosaccharide levulose.

**Cellulose**,  $(C_6H_{10}O_5)_x$ , is the chief constituent of the cell wall of plants. Cotton fiber is almost pure cellulose, or "normal" cellulose. When hydrolyzed, cellulose yields glucose. Lignocellulose is probably a combination of cellulose with gums and resins, while pectocellulose is a combination of cellulose and a substance, pectin, the latter being responsible for the formation of jellies from fruit.

Cellulose is, chemically, highly inert. It may be dissolved (possibly with some changes) in *Schweitzer's* reagent (ammoniacal solution of copper oxide).

Acetyl derivatives may be obtained with glacial acetic acid, and acetic anhydride, showing cellulose to contain OH groups.

Industrially, cellulose is of immense importance. It is the



chief ingredient of cotton, linen, hemp, etc., and of paper (which in turn, may be made from cotton and linen rags or from wood). Parchment paper is cellulose treated with conc. sulfuric acid. Mercerized cotton is cotton treated with sodium hydroxide solution, whereby the cotton is converted into a stronger fiber with a glossy appearance somewhat resembling silk. It takes dyes more readily than cotton. Artificial silk is a better imitation of silk than is mercerized cotton, and may be obtained from nitrated cotton (a mixture of the lower nitrocelluloses), or from "viscose" (cellulose dissolved in a mixture of  $\text{CS}_2$  and  $\text{NaOH}$  solution) or from cellulose acetate.

With nitric acid cellulose forms various nitrate compounds. The higher nitrates (hexanitate), such as gun-cotton (insoluble in alcohol-ether mixture), are explosives; and the lower nitrates are used in the manufacture of celluloid. Pyroxylin, a mixture of lower cellulose nitrates, is used in preparing lacquers and making artificial silk and celluloid. It is soluble in amyl acetate and methanol. Collodion, similar to pyroxylin in composition, is used for photographic films, as a protective covering for wounds, etc., and in the making of dialyzing bags. It is soluble in an alcohol-ether mixture. Celluloid is made by subjecting pyroxylin and camphor to heat and pressure. Cordite, a smokeless powder, is made by treating gun-cotton and nitroglycerine with acetone and some vaseline.

*Mannans, Galactans, Hemicellulose, etc.*—These substances, present in the seeds of numerous plants, resemble cellulose, but dissolve in dilute alkali and on hydrolysis yield not only glucose (as cellulose does) but other hexoses as well.

*Gums, Pectins, Mucilages.*—These are also polysaccharides containing pentose and hexose groups. The gums are probably carbohydrates combined with acids. Some are soluble, and others insoluble in water. Gum arabic, gum tragacanth, etc., are used as vehicles to suspend insoluble substances in aqueous mixtures. Mucilages form "viscous" liquids with water. The gelatinization of fruit extracts is due to the pectin present.

#### READING REFERENCES

- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), chap. 24 (Vegetable Fiber and Products from Cellulose); chap. 28 (Sugar).

- SADTLER—Chemistry of Familiar Things. (1915), chap. 19 (Paper and Textiles).
- FINDLAY—Chemistry in the Service of Man. (1916), chap. 5 (Cellulose and Cellulose Products).
- DUNCAN—The Chemistry of Commerce. (1907), chap. 11 (Cellulose).
- SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry. (1920), chap. 6 (Cellulose); chap. 7 (Synthetic Plastics); chap. 9 (The Rival Sugars); chap. 10 (What Comes from Corn).
- PHILLIP—Romance of Modern Chemistry. (1910), chap. 20 (Sugar and Starch).
- IRVINE—The Constitution of Polysaccharides. *Chemical Reviews*, **1**, 40 (1924).
- ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 866–897 (Sugar); pp. 898–917 (Starch, Glucose, Dextrin and Gluten); pp. 1033–1047 (The Art of Paper Making); pp. 1048–1069 (The Cellulose Industries).
- ARMSTRONG—The Simpler Carbohydrates and Glucosides.
- MACKENZIE — The Sugars and Their Simple Derivatives.
- SURFACE—The Story of Sugars.
- BROWN—Forest Products. (1919), chap. 18 (Maple Syrup and Sugar).

## CHAPTER XVIII

### FOODSTUFFS AND THEIR CHANGES IN THE BODY

THE foodstuffs may be divided into carbohydrates, fats, proteins, mineral salts, water and vitamins. Some include oxygen in the list because of the very necessary part it plays in the oxidation of the foodstuffs in the body. We may dismiss the mineral salts, water and vitamins, because, so far as we know, they undergo no chemical changes preparatory to their absorption by the blood and tissues. We will confine ourselves to the carbohydrates, fats and proteins, because they do undergo profound chemical changes in the digestive tube and after they have left the digestive tube and enter the liver and various tissues of the body.

The fats and carbohydrates are ultimately oxidized to carbon dioxide and water, and eliminated as such. The proteins, aside from being oxidized to carbon dioxide and water, also form a number of nitrogenous products which appear chiefly in the urine, such as urea, uric acid, creatinine, etc. These nitrogenous products really represent incomplete stages in the oxidation of the protein, for the complete oxidation of protein would yield carbon dioxide, water and nitrogen.

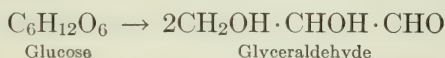
Complex substances of the types of fats, proteins and carbohydrates are not immediately oxidized in the body to carbon dioxide, water, and relatively simple nitrogenous substances; there must be a number of intermediate steps in the process. During the past few years, organic and physiological chemists have been very busy tracing these steps. While there is still much to be elucidated, much has already been done, and a brief résumé of the work accomplished will be given here. For those desiring a more detailed account we must refer them to the references at the end of the chapter, particularly to Dakin's masterly monograph.

**Carbohydrates.**—The digestible carbohydrates are all broken down to monosaccharides before absorption. The enzyme

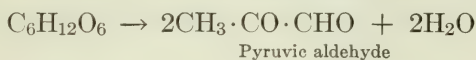


ptyalin (in saliva), amylopsin (in pancreatic juice), sucrase, maltase and lactase (in intestinal juice) hydrolyze the more complex carbohydrates to the hexoses,—glucose, levulose and galactose (p. 161). These are then absorbed through the walls of the small intestine, pass into the blood, thence to the liver, and there are synthesized to glycogen (p. 171) and stored as such. Whenever fuel is needed by the body, the glycogen reserve is called upon, and the glycogen is hydrolyzed to glucose, but this time to glucose only. Then this glucose is oxidized in the tissues to—ultimately—carbon dioxide and water.

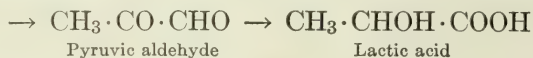
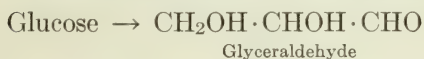
It is believed that the first step in the oxidation of glucose is the splitting of the glucose molecule into two three-carbon molecules. It was believed at one time that the most probable three-carbon compound to be formed was lactic acid, since this substance is always produced by working muscle; but the view more generally held now is to regard either glyceraldehyde,  $\text{CH}_2\text{OH}\cdot\text{CHOH}\cdot\text{CHO}$ , or pyruvic aldehyde (methyl glyoxal)  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CHO}$ , as the first step in the decomposition of glucose, and lactic acid as a by-product obtained either from glyceraldehyde or pyruvic aldehyde. So that we may represent the first steps thus:



or



and lactic acid could then be formed in one of two ways:

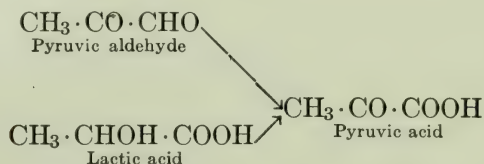


or, still better,

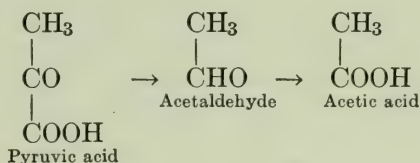


(The action of alkali on glucose has been shown to yield the products mentioned in these reactions. Further, using surviving liver tissue, it has been possible to convert both pyruvic aldehyde and glyceraldehyde into lactic acid; and in diabetes, where the mechanism of the cell is disturbed, glyceraldehyde, pyruvic aldehyde and lactic acid have all been shown to produce glucose.)

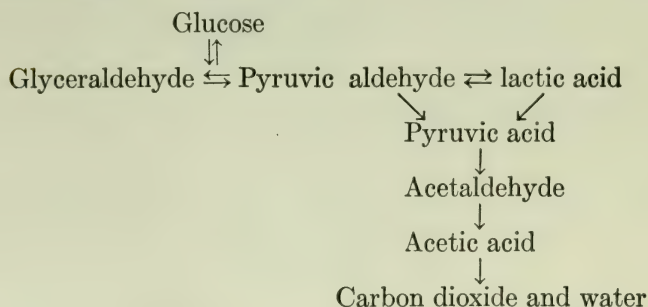
True oxidation probably comes into play at this point; that is to say, with the conversion of either pyruvic aldehyde, or lactic acid, into pyruvic acid;



Now it has been shown that in the organism,  $\alpha$ -ketonic acids (of which pyruvic acid is an example) are changed into the fatty acid with one less carbon atom; in this case into acetic acid. It seems probable that the intermediate step here is acetaldehyde. (In this connection, it may be mentioned that yeast juice ferments pyruvic acid into acetaldehyde and carbon dioxide.) So that the steps are probably



The acetic acid is finally oxidized to carbon dioxide and water. Summarizing the various steps:



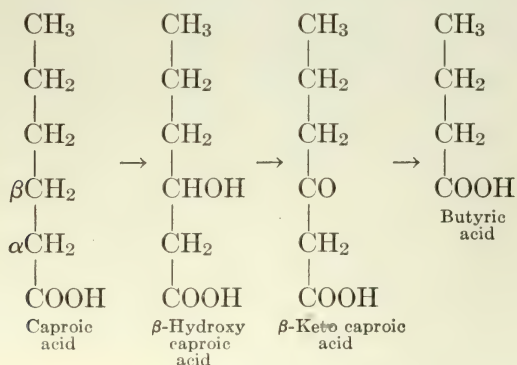
**Fats.**<sup>1</sup>—The straight fats, that is to say the glyceryl esters of stearic, palmitic and oleic acids (p. 99), are hydrolyzed in the digestive tract into glycerol and fatty acids. (Some fatty acid

<sup>1</sup> The lipoids, such as lecithin and cholesterol (p. 104) often associated with fat in food, undergo changes in the body which are either too complex, or too little understood to be discussed here.

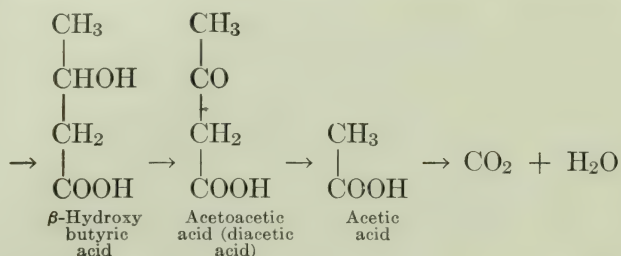
is also converted into soap, due to the alkalinity of the medium.) This is mainly brought about by the enzyme lipase (in the pancreatic juice), which, in turn, is very actively assisted by the "bile salts," the sodium glycocholate and sodium taurocholate (found in bile). The fatty acids and glycerol, immediately after absorption through the walls of the small intestine, are synthesized back again into fats, and as such pass from the lacteals into the lymph, into the thoracic duct, and thence into the general circulation. The fat not needed for immediate use is largely stored in the adipose tissues.

The preliminary step in the oxidation of fats is probably one of hydrolysis into glycerol and fatty acid. It may be assumed that the glycerol is first oxidized to glyceraldehyde, which would then, of course, follow the usual scheme of carbohydrate oxidation (p. 175). The oxidation of the fatty acid part of the molecule probably takes place in accordance with a theory first advanced by Knoop and known as Knoop's " $\beta$ -oxidation theory." According to this view, the fatty acid is first attacked in the  $\beta$ -position, being changed to a hydroxy and then to an oxy (keto) acid. The  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  carbon atoms (with their hydrogen atoms) are probably next oxidized to carbon dioxide and water, leaving a fatty acid containing two less carbon atoms. Then the process is repeated until finally carbon dioxide and water are produced. At each stage of the process, two carbon atoms are removed, so that, if we start with stearic acid, containing  $C_{18}$  atoms, we pass to palmitic,  $C_{16}$ , then to  $C_{14}$ , etc.

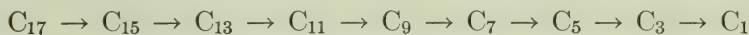
To illustrate the process, let us assume, that we have reached the  $C_6$  stage with caproic acid. The changes can be illustrated as







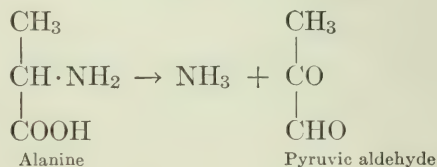
In diabetes, the poisonous "acetone bodies" or "acid bodies" which are so often produced, are derived from fats. These "acetone bodies" include butyric acid,  $\beta$ -hydroxy butyric acid, acetoacetic acid and acetone. The acetone is a by-product obtained probably from acetoacetic acid by the loss of  $\text{CO}_2$ .—It would seem as if the diabetic has not only difficulty in oxidizing glucose, but also in completely oxidizing fats; the fats in his case are oxidized to the four-carbon stage and no further. Kahn, working with the knowledge that the naturally-occurring fats all contain an even number of carbon atoms, and stimulated by Knoop's theory that fatty acids are oxidized in such a way as to lose two carbon atoms at each stage, has synthesized an odd-carbon fat—from margaric acid,  $\text{C}_{16}\text{H}_{33}\cdot\text{COOH}$ , a  $\text{C}_{17}$  acid—, which, when given to the diabetic, is said not to produce "acetone bodies," because in the oxidation of this odd-carbon fat, the four-carbon acids are avoided; thus



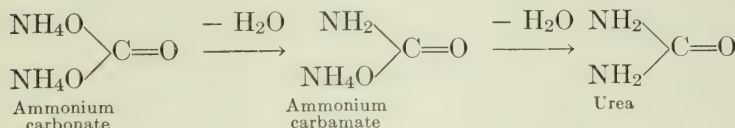
**Proteins.**—The proteins<sup>1</sup> are hydrolyzed in the digestive tract by the enzymes pepsin (in gastric juice), trypsin (in pancreatic juice) and erepsin (intestinal juice). The final hydrolytic products are amino acids (p. 146). The amino acids are absorbed as such, and either finally pass into the tissue to form tissue protein, probably in some such way as outlined in Fischer's synthesis of polypeptides from amino acids (p. 145), or are eliminated principally in the form of urea, by a process of "de-amination," which occurs very largely in the liver, but may also occur in other tissues. This process of "de-amination" is essentially the splitting off of the  $\text{NH}_2$  group from the amino

<sup>1</sup> We refer here to the "simple" proteins (p. 143). The "conjugated" proteins (p. 144) present many difficulties.

acid. Dakin has shown that an  $\alpha$ -amino acid, in water, undergoes spontaneous dissociation into the corresponding  $\alpha$ -ketonic aldehyde and ammonia; so that if we take alanine as an example of an  $\alpha$ -amino acid, we would get

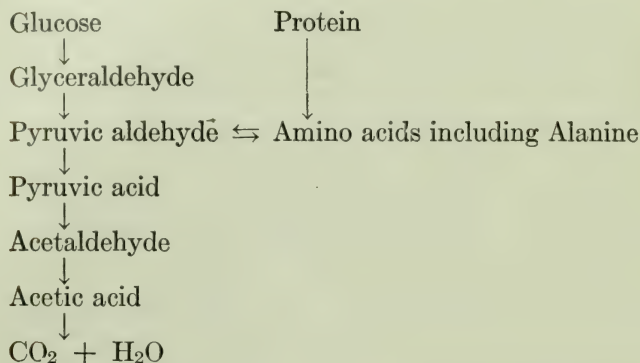


The pyruvic aldehyde would then most probably be further oxidized according to the scheme outlined under carbohydrates. (This, by the way, explains how proteins may also serve as a source of energy; and it also suggests how, in cases of diabetes, the carbohydrate is formed from protein.) The ammonia combines with carbonic acid, a constant product of metabolism, to give ammonium carbonate, which, by a process of dehydration, is finally converted into urea:

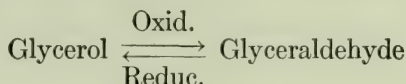


It has already been mentioned that in the urine we find nitrogenous products other than urea. Since protein is the only one of the three classes of foodstuffs which contains the element nitrogen, it is reasonable to assume that these nitrogenous products are of protein origin. Even under normal conditions a small quantity of ammonia (in the form of ammonium salts) is eliminated. We also find uric acid and purine bases, which are obviously derived from the nucleoproteins of the food (or body tissues) and the purine substances, such as are found in meat, for example (see p. 150). An appreciable amount of creatinine, and, to a less extent, creatine (see p. 114), is also found in the urine.

**The probable interrelationships of protein, fat and carbohydrate in the body.**—The connecting links between protein and carbohydrate have already been indicated. They will be shown schematically here:

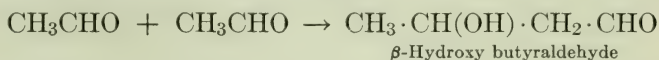


What are the connecting links between fats and carbohydrates? How are we to explain that an excess of carbohydrate is so easily deposited in the form of fat? The glycerol part of the fat is obviously connected with the glyceraldehyde from glucose:



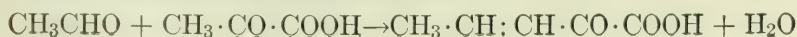
But how are we to suggest the possible formation of a complex fatty acid from the glucose molecule?

It has been suggested that the synthesis may be along the lines of an aldol condensation (p. 76). Starting with acetaldehyde, a product formed in the oxidation of glucose, two molecules of the aldehyde may condense to give:



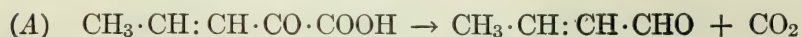
which may then combine with another molecule of acetaldehyde to give a 6-carbon compound, and so on, until the C<sub>16</sub> or C<sub>18</sub> is reached. By simultaneous reduction and oxidation, or the transfer of the oxygen attached to the β-carbon to the end carbon, the hydroxy aldehyde may be converted to the normal, saturated acid.

Another theory, largely due to Miss Smedley, and based on sound experimental evidence, may be summarized as follows: Pyruvic acid and acetaldehyde—both products formed in the oxidation of glucose—condense thus:



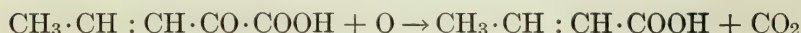


The ketonic acid is next converted into its aldehyde and carbon dioxide in a manner similar to the conversion of pyruvic acid to acetaldehyde (p. 176).



This aldehyde has two more carbon atoms than the acetaldehyde with which we started; it now condenses with another molecule of pyruvic acid, forming a ketonic acid with more carbon atoms; and so on.

The oxidation of the unsaturated ketonic acid (A) yields an unsaturated acid with one less carbon atom:



By reduction we obtain a fatty acid containing two more carbon atoms than the aldehyde from which we started.

#### READING REFERENCES

- DAKIN—Oxidations and Reductions in the Animal Body.  
LUSK—The Science of Nutrition. (1917), chaps. 6 (Protein) and 9 (Carbohydrate).  
SHERMAN—Chemistry of Food and Nutrition. (1918), chap. 5 (Fate of Foodstuffs in Metabolism).  
BAYLISS—Principles of General Physiology. (1915), chap. 9 (Nutrition).  
MATHEWS—Physiological Chemistry. (1916), chaps. 18 (Carbohydrate) and 19 (Protein).  
HARROW—What to Eat In Health and Disease.  
SADTLER—Chemistry of Familiar Things. (1915), chaps. 13 (Food Elements), 14 (Individual Foods), 15 (Animal Feeding), 17 (Chemistry of the Body).  
DUNCAN—Some Chemical Problems of Today. (1911), chap. 4 (Chemical Interpretation of Life).  
CALDWELL and SLOSSON—Science Remaking the World. (1923), pp. 247-264 (Chemistry and Economy of Food).

0-75  
this

## CHAPTER XIX

### SULFUR, PHOSPHORUS, ARSENIC AND ORGANO-METALLIC COMPOUNDS

#### SULFUR COMPOUNDS

SULFUR is just below oxygen in the periodic table, and the two elements should, therefore, show close relationships. We find abundant evidence of such structural relationships in organic chemistry. An entire series of analogous compounds may be formed by substituting sulfur for oxygen in organic compounds.



Alcohol



Mercaptan or  
thioalcohol



Methyl mercaptan or  
methyl thioalcohol

They are called mercaptans for they combine with mercury compounds (*corpus mercurium captans.*).



Alcoholate



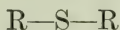
Thioalcoholate  
or  
mercaptide



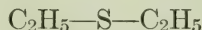
Sodium ethyl mercaptide



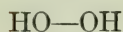
An ether or  
alkyl oxide



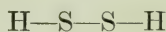
Alkyl sulfide  
or  
a thioether



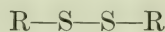
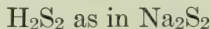
Ethyl sulfide  
or  
ethyl thioether



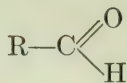
or



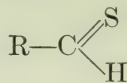
or



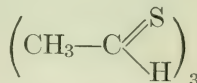
Organic disulfide



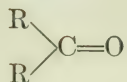
Aldehyde



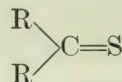
Thioaldehyde



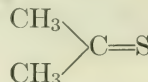
Trithioacetaldehyde



Ketone

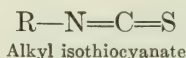
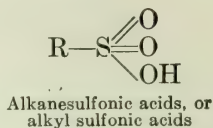
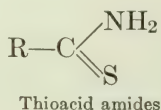
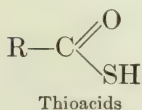


Thioketone



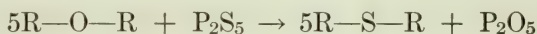
Thioacetone

In addition to these types of compounds we have:



and others, showing in every case the close analogy of these sulfur compounds to the corresponding oxygen ones.

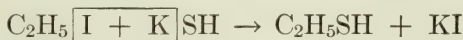
Many of these sulfur compounds may be prepared from their oxygen analogues by the use of phosphorus pentasulfide; e.g.,



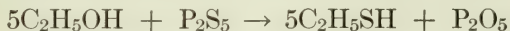
Most of the compounds having the structure  $\text{R}-\text{S}-\text{H}$  and  $\text{R}-\text{S}-\text{R}$  have exceedingly putrid disagreeable odors and are poisonous.

**Mercaptans** may be prepared:

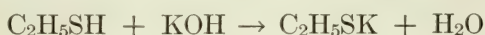
1. By the action of potassium hydrogen sulfide on the halogen compound: e.g.,



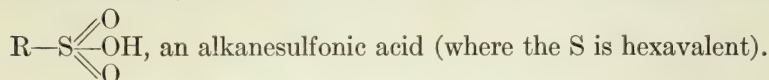
2. By the action of phosphorus pentasulfide on an alcohol; e.g.,



Mercaptans are converted to mercaptides thus:

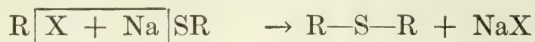


On oxidation,  $\text{R}-\text{S}-\text{H}$  (where the S is divalent) becomes



**Sulfides.**—These may be prepared:

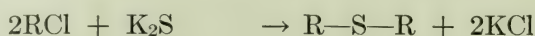
1. By the action of a thioalcoholate on the halogen compound:



(Analogous to  $\text{R}[\text{X} + \text{Na}] \text{OR} \rightarrow \text{ROR}$ — an ether— +  $\text{NaX}$ )

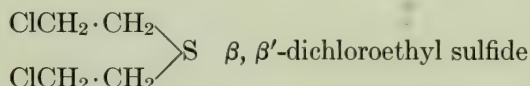


2. By the action of potassium sulfide on the halogen compound:

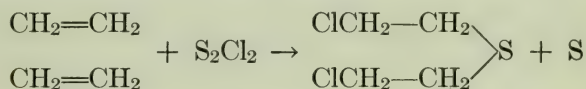


The thioethers on oxidation give, first,  $\text{R}-\text{S}=\text{O}$ , a sulfoxide, and then  $\begin{array}{c} \text{R} \\ \diagup \\ \text{S} \\ \diagdown \\ \text{R} \end{array} \begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ // \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ , a sulfone.

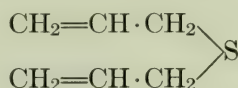
**Mustard gas** (one of the most toxic gases used in the late war) is



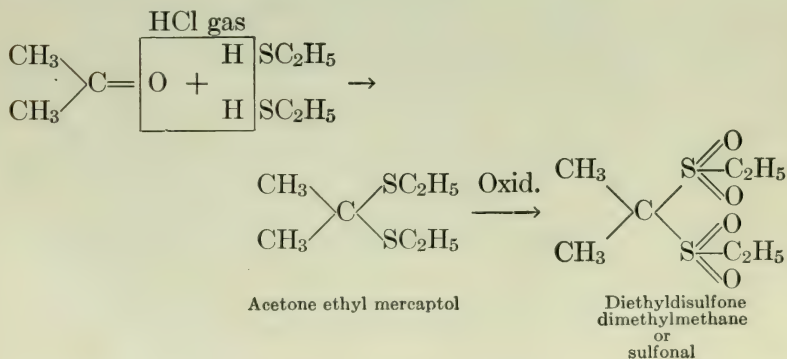
It was manufactured by passing ethylene into sulfur monochloride,



Oil of garlic contains allyl sulfide:

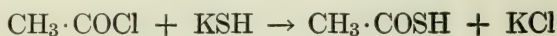


**Sulfonal** may be prepared from acetone by combining it with ethyl mercaptan in presence of a dehydrating agent and oxidizing the product with  $\text{KMnO}_4$ :



Sulfonal has hypnotic properties and is used as a soporific. Trional is the ethyl derivative in place of one methyl group. The starting substance for its synthesis is  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \cdot \text{CH}_3$ .

Thioacetic acid,  $\text{CH}_3\text{COSH}$  is prepared by the following reaction:



Trithioacetaldehyde,  $(\text{CH}_3-\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{S} \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{H} \end{smallmatrix})_3$  and thioacetone,  $\text{CH}_3 \begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_3 \\ \diagup \diagdown \end{smallmatrix} \text{C}=\text{S}$ , are prepared by the action of  $\text{H}_2\text{S}$  on acetaldehyde and acetone, respectively.

The alkane sulfonic acids (or alkyl sulfonic acids) of the type  $\text{R}-\text{S} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{O} \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix}$  are not of particular importance in the aliphatic series, but they are in the aromatic series.

**Taurine**, or  $\beta$ -amino ethanesulfonic acid,  $\begin{smallmatrix} \text{CH}_2-\text{NH}_2 \\ | \\ \text{CH}_2-\text{S} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{O} \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix} \end{smallmatrix}$ , is a

constituent of taurocholic acid, which in the form of its sodium salt is an important constituent of the bile.

**Xanthic acid**,  $\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{SH} \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{OC}_2\text{H}_5 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is the ethyl ester of dithiocarbonic

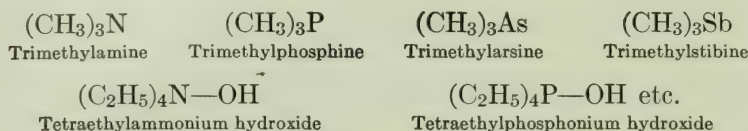
acid. Cellulose xanthate  $(\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{SNa} \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{O cellulose} \end{smallmatrix})$  is produced when cellulose is heated with  $\text{CS}_2$  and  $\text{NaOH}$  solution. This is the basis for the "viscose" artificial silk. Thiourea,  $\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{NH}_2 \end{smallmatrix}$ , is the sulfur analogue of urea,  $\text{C} \begin{smallmatrix} \text{NH}_2 \\ \diagup \diagdown \\ \text{O} \end{smallmatrix}$ , which in turn is the principal nitrogen end product in the metabolism of proteins in the body. Allyl isothiocyanate,  $\text{CH}_2=\text{CH}-\text{CH}_2-\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{S}$ , is present in mustard oil.

#### PHOSPHORUS AND ARSENIC COMPOUNDS

According to the periodic table, nitrogen, phosphorus, arsenic and antimony belong to the same family of elements. This implies that compounds of P, As and Sb, analogous to N compounds, should exist. These do exist. We have, for example, in inorganic chemistry:

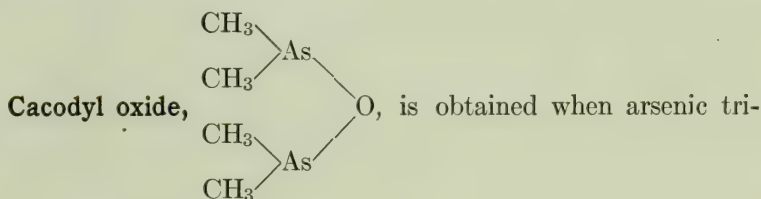


and in organic chemistry:



(The phosphorus compounds are, as a rule, more reactive than the corresponding nitrogen compounds).

(A number of proteins, such as the nucleoprotein found in the nucleus of cells, the casein in milk, and the phosphatides—of which the lecithin of egg yolk and brain tissue is an example—contain the element phosphorus as an integral part of a complex molecule.) (See p. 104.)



oxide and potassium acetate are distilled:



The name **cacodyl**—"stinking"—was given to the group  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{As}$ —by Bunsen, its discoverer. The cacodyl compounds are highly poisonous. The salts of cacodylic acid,  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{As} \begin{smallmatrix} \diagup \text{O} \\ \diagdown \text{OH} \end{smallmatrix}$ , as the sodium, calcium, iron and mercury cacodylates, are used in the treatment of syphilis, tuberculosis, malaria and pellagra.

Ethyl dichloroarsine,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{AsCl}_2$ , and  $\text{CH}=\text{CH} \cdot \text{AsCl}_2$ , known

$$\begin{array}{c}
 | \\
 \text{Cl}
 \end{array}$$
 as "Lewisite"—were used as war gases.

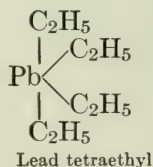
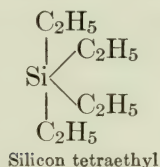
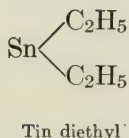
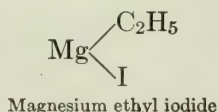
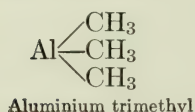
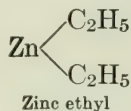
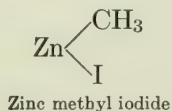
The antimony compounds are similar in structure to those of arsenic.

A number of very important arsenic compounds will be discussed under the aromatic series (p. 322).

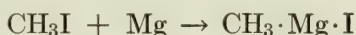


## ORGANO-METALLIC COMPOUNDS

Various combinations of organic radicals with metallic elements are known. The following are examples;



Compounds of the type  $\text{R}-\text{Mg}-\text{X}$ , are highly important, since they are extensively used in organic chemistry. Only a few examples are given.



For the preparation of secondary and tertiary alcohols see p. 54. Using the Grignard compounds, we can synthesize alcohols, ethers, aldehydes, ketones, acids, esters, nitriles, organo-metallic compounds, etc.

(Lead tetraethyl is used as the "anti-knock" compound in automobile engines. The product sold as "ethyl gas" is gasoline containing a small quantity of lead tetraethyl and carbon tetrachloride.)

## READING REFERENCES

- SLOSSON—Chats on Science. (1924), No. 16 (The Silkworm's Rival).  
 WREN—Organometallic Compounds of Zinc and Magnesium.  
 WEST and GILMAN—Organomagnesium Compounds in Synthetic Chemistry. *National Research Council*, Washington, 1922.

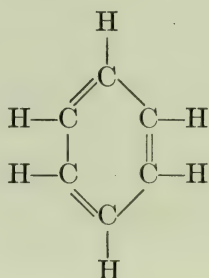
## CHAPTER XX

### INTRODUCTION TO CYCLIC COMPOUNDS

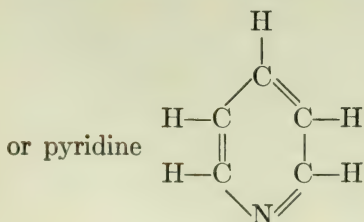
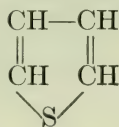
So far we have been studying the "open-chain," or "aliphatic" series of compounds. Now we are about to take up the "closed-chain" or "cyclic" compounds, which, in many respects possess properties differing from those of the aliphatic series.

The cyclic compounds may be subdivided into two main divisions:

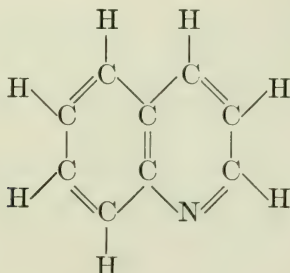
I. **Carbocyclic compounds**, containing a closed ring of carbon atoms such as benzene, for example,



II. **Heterocyclic compounds**, containing a closed ring which, in addition to carbon atoms, may contain one or more atoms of other elements, such as thiophene,

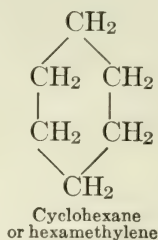
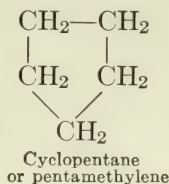
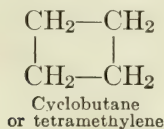


Combinations of carbocyclic and heterocyclic rings are also possible; for example, quinoline,



We have seen how the aliphatic series of compounds can be divided into typical groups, such as hydrocarbons, alkyl halides, alcohols, ethers, etc., and how the members of any one group show certain common characteristics which distinguish them from members of another group. Such typical divisions can also be made in the aromatic series, and here, to a certain extent, we find a series of compounds strictly analogous to those in the aliphatic series. Many of the type reactions which we shall consider in the following pages are those with which the student is already familiar.

We have seen how the hydrocarbons of the aliphatic series can be classified into paraffins,  $C_nH_{2n+2}$ , olefins,  $C_nH_{2n}$ , and acetylenes,  $C_nH_{2n-2}$ . A series of compounds isomeric with the olefins are the following:



Unlike the olefins, these compounds are not readily oxidized with potassium permanganate, and they form substitution rather than addition products. They cannot, therefore, be represented as compounds having double bonds.—In fact, to a certain extent,



they rather resemble the paraffins, despite the fact that they are isomeric with the olefins; hence they are spoken of as the **cycloparaffins**.

The cycloparaffins,  $-(CH_2)_x$ , are really the connecting link joining the aliphatic compounds on the one hand, and the aromatic, on the other.

## CHAPTER XXI

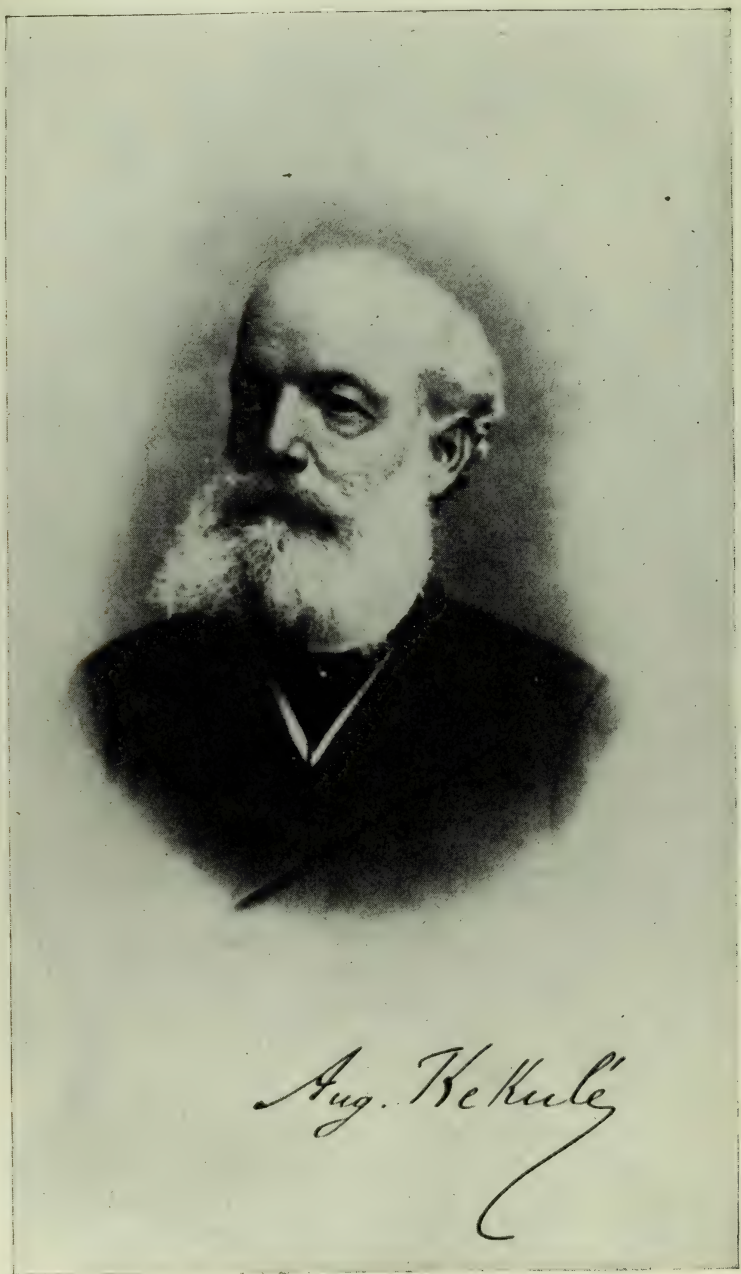
### CONSTITUTION OF BENZENE AND THE AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS

THE division of our carbon compounds into "aliphatic" and "aromatic" is no less arbitrary than the division of chemistry into "organic" and "inorganic." The word "aromatic" came into use because many of the naturally occurring substances had an agreeable aroma (such as oil of bitter almonds, oil of wintergreen, vanillin, gum benzoin, turpentine oil, etc.), and these were put into a class by themselves. But a classification based on odor is of little value. Many of the aliphatic compounds (such as the esters) have an agreeable odor, and many belonging to the aromatic series possess little, or no odor.

Aliphatic compounds (the compounds so far considered) have been represented as straight chain compounds while the aromatic compounds will be represented by closed chain or ring formulas.

The aromatic compounds, as a whole, play a less important part in the chemical composition of living matter than do the aliphatic series. The proteins, fats, carbohydrates and phosphatides are largely of the aliphatic variety. On the other hand, many of the medicinals (drugs, antiseptics, etc.) come under the aromatic series. From the industrial standpoint, the vast group of synthetic dyes are largely recruited from the aromatic series.

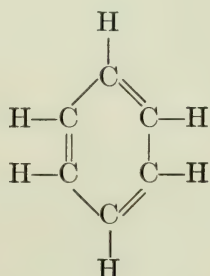
As we have seen, the mother substance of the aliphatic series is methane,  $\text{CH}_4$ . The mother substance of the aromatic series, on the other hand, is **benzene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ . It will at once be seen that compared with methane, benzene is low in hydrogen; its structure ought, therefore, to show double or triple bonds. But its properties, however, are more those of a saturated hydrocarbon, and any constitution assigned to it similar in type to



FRIEDRICH AUGUST KEKULÉ (1829-1896)  
FIRST PROPOSED THE RING STRUCTURE FOR BENZENE AND ITS COMPOUNDS  
(p. 193).  
192



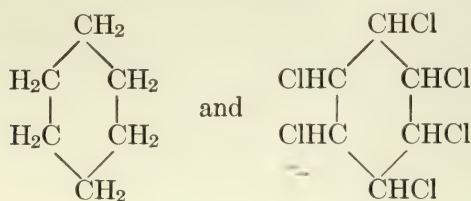
the one selected for ethylene or acetylene would grossly misrepresent the facts. This led Kekulé as far back as 1865 to propose a ring structure for benzene of the type:



and this formula is the one generally accepted to-day. It is no exaggeration to say that this benzene conception of Kekulé has proved of the utmost importance to the organic chemist, in giving him a tool with which to devise various possible chemical reactions.

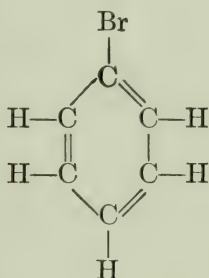
The structure of benzene, as suggested by Kekulé, is essentially that of a hexagon, containing six carbon and six hydrogen atoms. Any one hydrogen attached to a carbon atom is of equal importance to any other hydrogen attached to another carbon atom, and the carbon and hydrogen atoms all bear the same relationship to the molecule as a whole. There are, then, no preferences: any one atom in the molecule has exactly the same value as any other atom of the same element. The alternate double and single bonds satisfy the tetravalency of the carbon atom.

Kekulé's conception of the structure of the benzene molecule helps to explain many of the properties of benzene. According to this structure, the maximum number of hydrogen or chlorine atoms which can be added to benzene are 6, giving



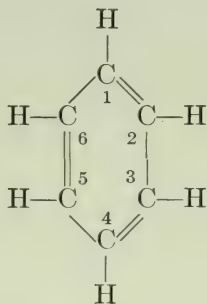
The addition of 6 hydrogen or 6 chlorine atoms implies the presence of three double bonds in the molecule.

If the benzene molecule is symmetrical and its carbon and hydrogen atoms are of equal value, then there can be but one, and no more than one, monosubstitution product, and the most extensive experimental work supports this view. For example, but one monobromobenzene,

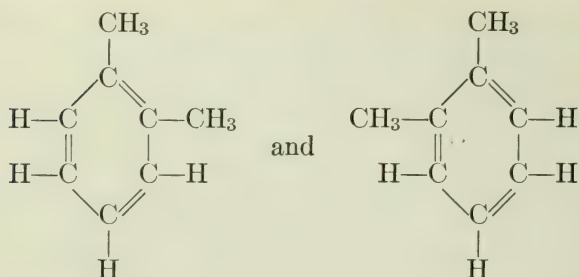


is known; it does not in the least matter to which carbon the bromine atom is attached.

On the other hand, Kekulé's benzene structure should allow for the possibility of three isomeric disubstitution products. If we number the carbon atoms as follows:

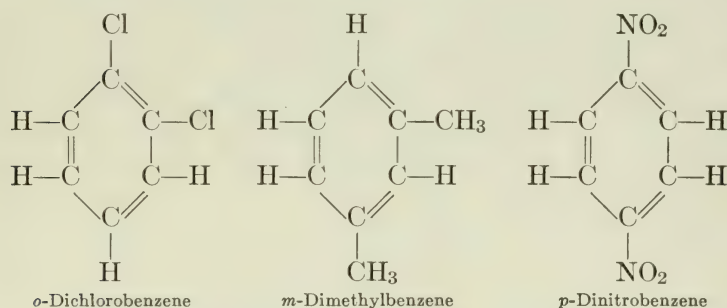


then we may have 1, 2, or 1, 6, or 2, 3 (or any adjacent pair) of hydrogen atoms replaced, giving an *ortho* (*o*-) compound; substitution in the 1, 3, or 2, 6, or 3, 5, or 1, 5 position will give a *meta* (*m*-) compound; and substitution in the 1, 4, or 2, 5, or 3, 6 position will yield a *para* (*p*-) compound.

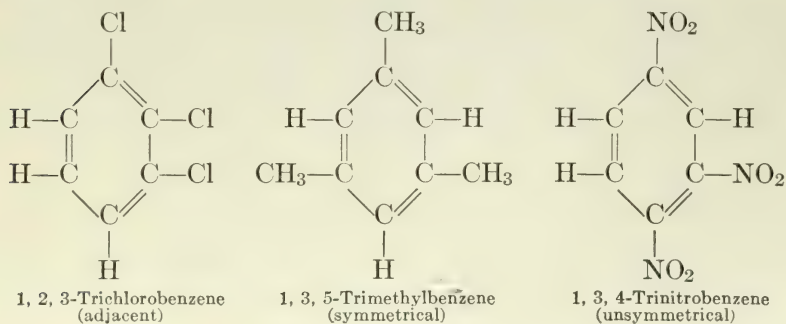


may be supposed at first sight to be different compounds, since in the one case the methyl groups are attached to two carbon atoms having a double bond in between, whereas in the other there is no double bond. But we must make the assumption that the double and single bonds are in continuous oscillation and not static.

Examples of disubstitution products are

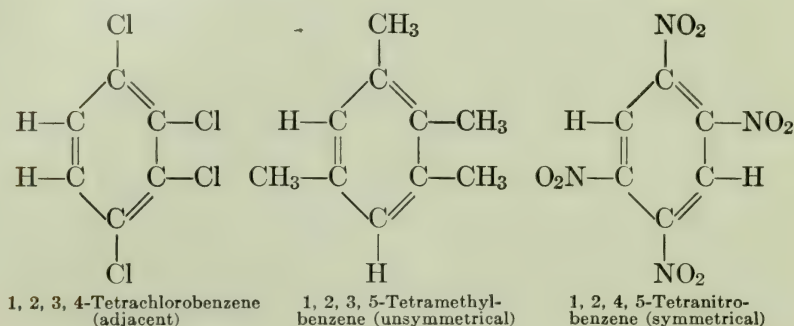


But three trisubstitution products are theoretically possible where the substituents are the same, and only three are actually known; e.g.,

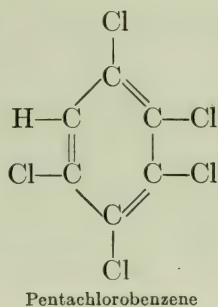




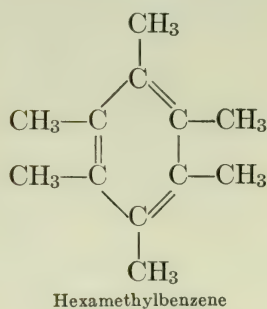
Where the tetrasubstitution products have like constituents, three isomers are possible: e.g.,



With five substituents, but one compound is possible: e.g.,

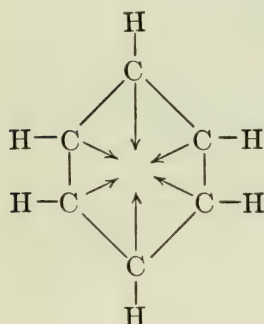
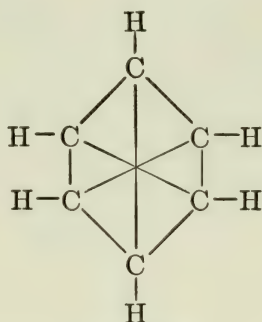


With six constituents but one compound is possible; e.g.,

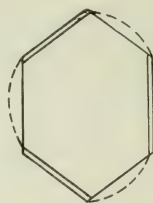


There were many objections in the past in representing the benzene molecule as having double bonds. The objections

are still raised by every beginner in the subject. His studies of the unsaturated hydrocarbons (p. 33) lead him to believe that a compound whose formula has one or more double bonds is "unsaturated," and by virtue of that fact, shows some very specific properties; but, as has already been pointed out, the properties of benzene are not really those of an unsaturated compound at all. For example, benzene, unlike the olefins, or other unsaturated aliphatic compounds, does not react with dilute potassium permanganate; it does not react with hydrogen bromide; and with bromine it forms substitution rather than addition compounds. This has led a number of investigators to suggest formulas for benzene which do not contain the usual type of double bonds, such as:

Armstrong-Baeyer  
formula

Claus formula



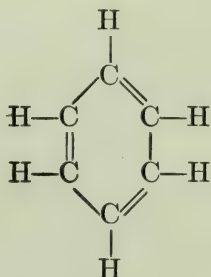
Thiele formula

and others. (For those interested, we may refer them to Richter's Organic Chemistry, Vol. II, p. 41 (1922)). However, Kekulé's formula is still preferred by the majority of organic chemists, because it explains many of the chemical characteristics of benzene and its derivatives.

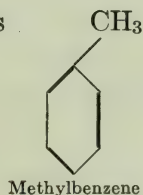
To simplify the writing of benzene and its derivatives we shall henceforth represent its structure as



(Heavy lines indicate double bonds and light lines single bonds) bearing in mind that what is really meant is



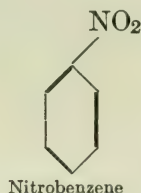
In the compounds



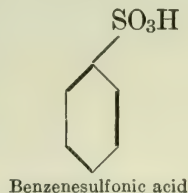
the  $\text{CH}_3$  and  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5$  groups are spoken of as "side chains," the benzene residue being the "nucleus." Substitution may take place in the side chain, or in the residue, or in both, yielding various products; for example



Benzene differs from the paraffin hydrocarbons by the fact that whereas the latter are not acted upon by nitric or sulfuric acids, the former forms



and



<sup>1</sup> The  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2$  (monovalent) group is known as the "benzyl" group.

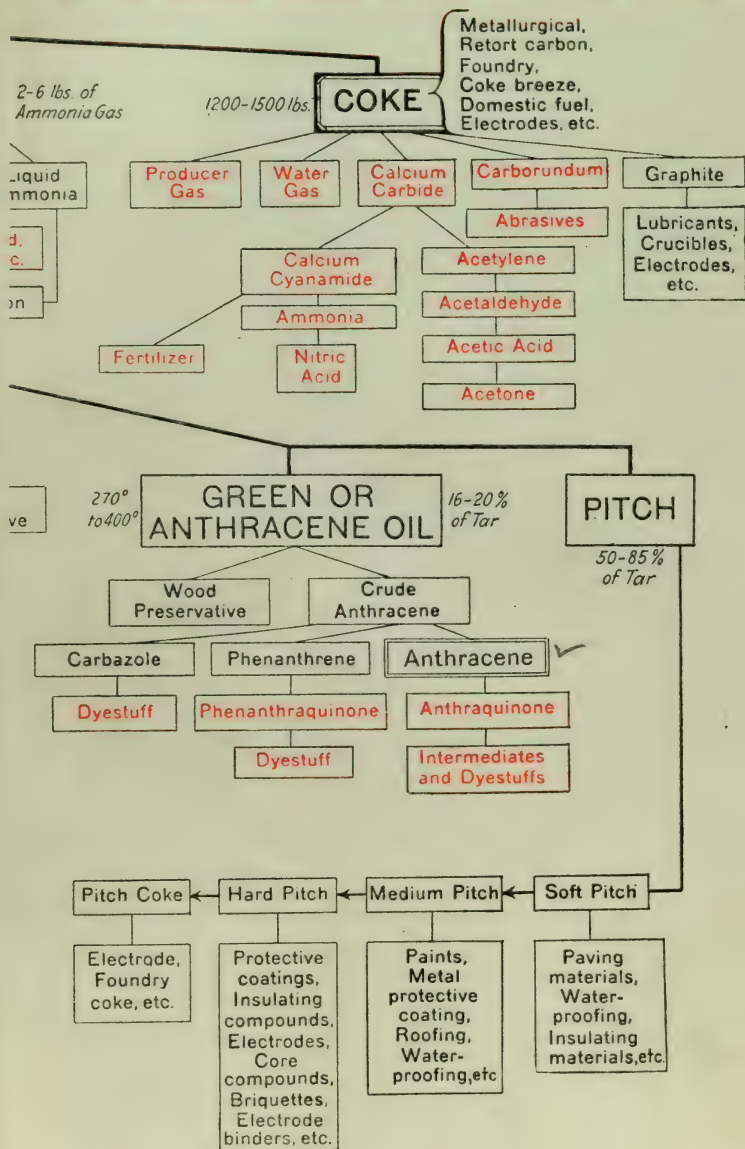


COAL FIELDS



compiled by  
 LOWY, University of Pittsburgh

*B Red Type indicates Products prepared by Chemical Methods.*



Isotone Oil used for wood preservative is generally made up from the middle "Heavy" and "Anthracene" fractions.

#### "REFINED COAL TAR"

This is coal tar from which water and the light oil have been removed, or a mixture of any grade of pitch with any of the heavy tar distillates. Uses:- Coating iron and steel pipes, roofing paper, paints, paving materials, insulation, water proofing, etc.

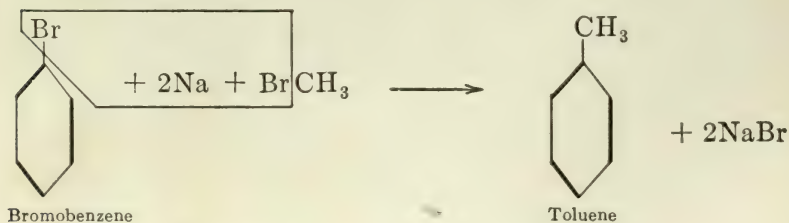
**Sources of Aromatic Hydrocarbons.**—The accompanying chart gives a list of the products obtained from the destructive distillation of coal and those of coal tar (among which we find the mother substances of the aromatic series of compounds, such as benzene, toluene, xylenes, naphthalene and anthracene).

("Benzene" is to be sharply distinguished from "benzine." The latter represents a mixture of hydrocarbons obtained from petroleum, whereas the former, as we have seen, is a definite chemical compound,  $C_6H_6$ . Benzene is also sometimes called "benzol," a word we owe to German chemists. This name has little to recommend it, and is confusing, since the ending "ol" is usually reserved for substances containing the OH group. In the industries, the expression "90 per cent benzol," signifies the fraction which distills below  $100^\circ C.$ ; it contains about 70 per cent of benzene.)

**Benzene and Some of its Homologues.**—Like the hydrocarbons of the aliphatic series, and like the various classes of organic substances, benzene is the starting point of a homologous series:

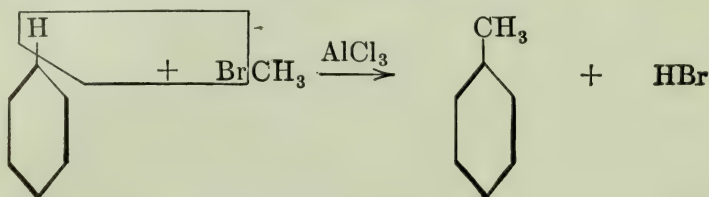
Benzene, $C_6H_6$	$C_6H_5$ group = phenyl (monovalent)
Toluene, $C_7H_8$	$C_7H_7$ group = tolyl (monovalent)
Xylenes, $C_8H_{10}$	$C_8H_9$ group = xylol (monovalent)
Mesitylene, $C_9H_{12}$ etc.	The monovalent radicals of the aromatic hydrocarbons are known as the aryl radicals. (Cf. alkyl groups.)

**General Methods of Preparing Aromatic Hydrocarbons.**—The hydrocarbons may be prepared by the *Fittig* synthesis, analogous to the *Wurtz* reaction already studied (p. 21), which consists of treating a mixture of the appropriate halides with sodium; e.g.,



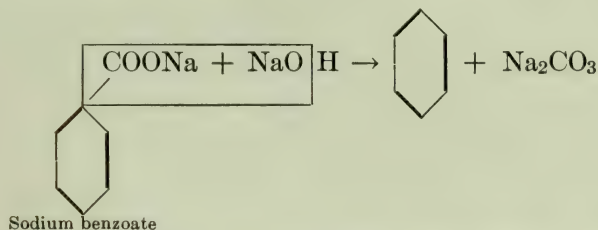


or by the *Friedel-Craft* synthesis, in which the aromatic hydrocarbon and the appropriate halogen compound are made to react in the presence of aluminium chloride; e.g.,

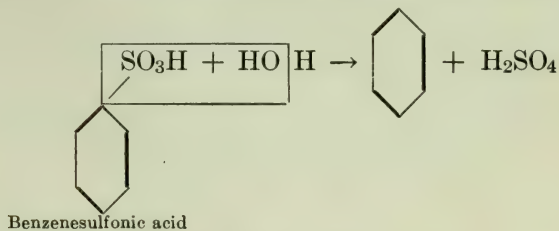


In this reaction HX is eliminated; the H atom must be linked to a carbon in a ring, while the X atom must be linked to a carbon not in a ring.

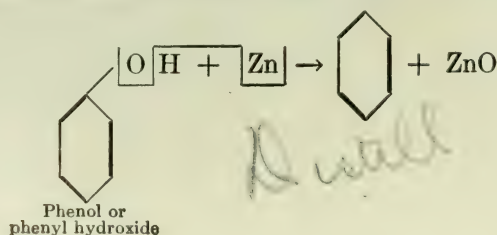
They may also be prepared by heating the salts of aromatic acids with soda lime—a reaction similar to one used in the preparation of the paraffins (p. 18); e.g.,



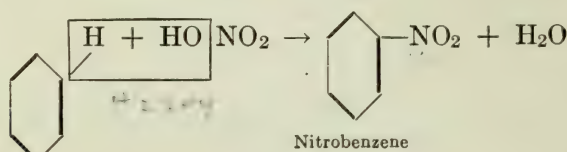
or, by the elimination of the  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  group from benzene compounds (by the use of steam, in the presence of acids); e.g.,



or, by distilling phenol with zinc dust; e.g.,

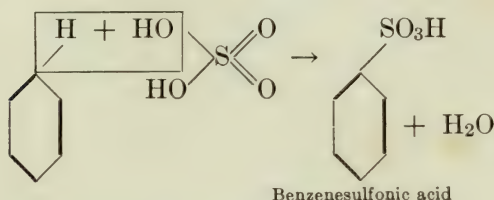


**General Reactions of Aromatic Hydrocarbons.**—Aromatic compounds react with nitric acid, forming nitro derivatives; e.g.,



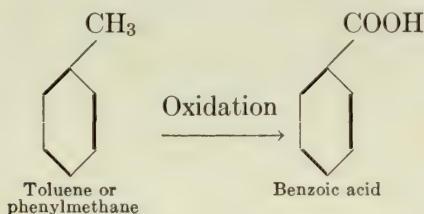
(This is known as **nitration**.)

They also react with sulfuric acid forming sulfonic acids; e.g.,



(This is known as **sulfonation**.)

The "side chain," whether  $\text{CH}_3$  or any other group, may be oxidized to the carboxyl group,  $\text{COOH}$ ; e.g.,

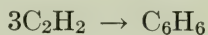


(These reactions—nitration, sulfonation and oxidation—bring out the essential differences of aromatic and aliphatic hydrocarbons.)

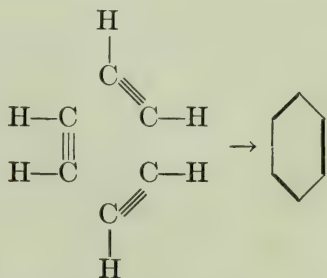
**Benzene**,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_6$ , is the mother substance of the aromatic hydrocarbons. Commercially, it is obtained from coal tar. It is also present in California petroleum. It is a colorless liquid (b.p.  $80.4^\circ$ ), burning with a smoky flame (due to the high percentage of carbon), and when its vapor is mixed with air it is explosive. It is used as a solvent for fats, resins, etc., and in the manufacture of a large number of aromatic compounds; e.g., nitrobenzene, chlorobenzene, etc. Crude benzene (benzol) is used extensively in motor fuel. Benzene is a narcotic which

when swallowed or inhaled produces vertigo, delirium and convulsions.

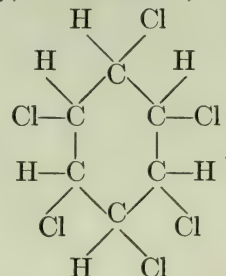
**Preparation.**—One method is to pass acetylene through a red hot tube:




Here we have an example of how we can pass from an aliphatic to an aromatic compound—in this particular method, by “polymerization:”




With nitric and sulfuric acids, and with chlorine (long exposure to sunlight) we get, respectively, nitrobenzene, benzenesulfonic

acid and benzene hexachloride, ; chlorinated

in the presence of iron, aluminium, iodine, etc. (catalysts or “carriers”), we get 



Chlorobenzene

Toluene, , or phenylmethane, or methylbenzene, is



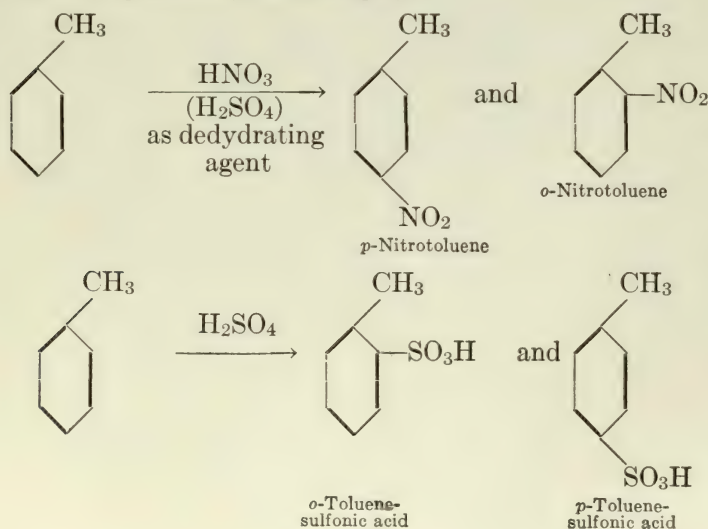
obtained from coal tar and also by the distillation of balsam of Peru and Tolu, b.p.  $111^{\circ}$ . ( $C_6H_5$ —monovalent—is known as the “phenyl” group.) It may be prepared by the *Friedel-Craft* synthesis which has already been given (p. 200). Its properties are similar to those of benzene. When oxidized, it yields benzoic acid (p. 201).

**Rules for Substitution in the Benzene Ring.**—1. *If any one of the elements or groups, F, Cl, Br, I, R, OH, OR, CH<sub>2</sub>X, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR or NR<sub>2</sub> (these contain single bonds) is present in the ring, an element or group that may next be introduced will take the p- and o- positions with respect to the first group.*

2. *If any one of the groups, NO<sub>2</sub>, SO<sub>3</sub>H, CHO, COOH, CO·R or CN (these contain double or triple bonds), is in the ring, an element or group that may next be introduced will take (largely) the m- position with respect to the first group. (The amounts of m-, p-, and o- products formed depend very largely upon such factors as temperature, concentration of reacting substances, the type of dehydrating agent, and other experimental factors.)*

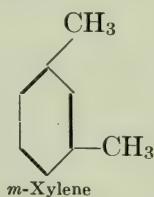
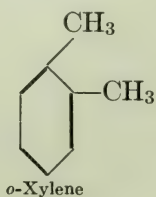
(It is essential before the student proceeds any further with the text that he thoroughly master these rules.)

An example of the application of these rules is immediately seen in the case of toluene. Toluene contains a methyl (R) group; hence, a second group will proceed simultaneously to the p- and o- positions; for example,

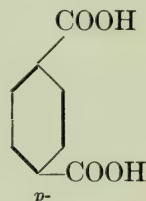
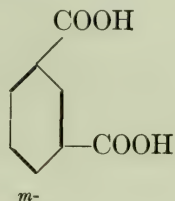
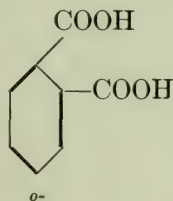



At low temperatures, the *o*- predominates, while at high temperatures the *p*-.

**Xylenes**, or dimethylbenzenes.—Since these are di-substitution products, three isomers are known:




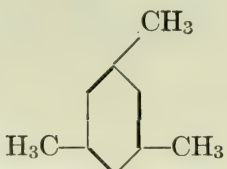
They are obtained from coal tar. On oxidation, the xylenes give the corresponding dibasic acids, indicating at the same time the position of the  $\text{CH}_3$  groups:

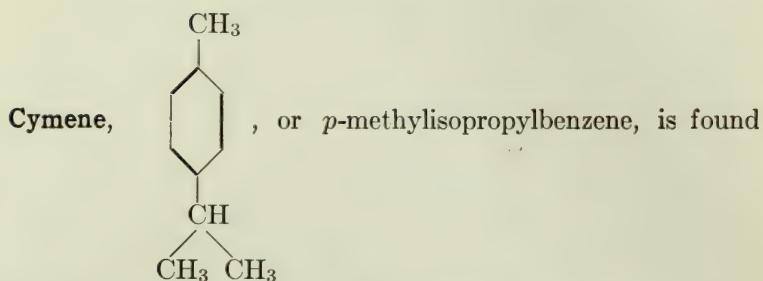


Ethyl benzene, , is an isomer of the xylenes, but is

easily distinguished from them by the fact that on oxidation it

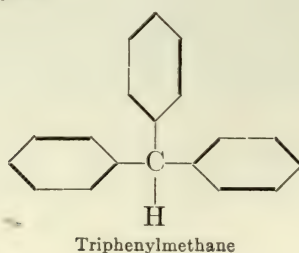
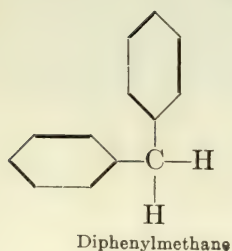
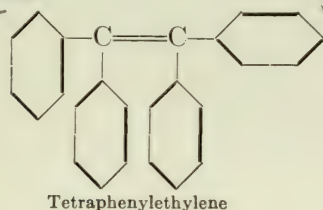
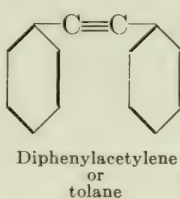
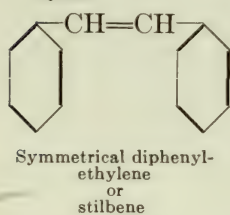
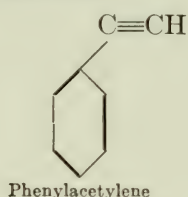
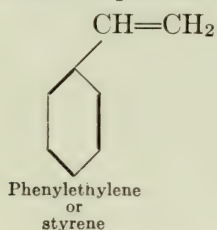
yields benzoic acid, .

**Mesitylene**,  1, 3, 5 or symmetrical trimethylbenzene, is found in coal tar.

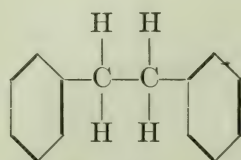
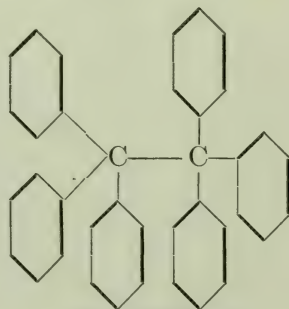


in oil of thyme, oil of caraway, oil of eucalyptus, etc.

The number of hydrocarbons containing the benzene nucleus is large. Some are derived from coal tar, others are synthesized. A few of these compounds will be mentioned:





Symmetrical  
diphenylethane

Hexaphenylethane

(Gomberg, of the University of Michigan, in studying the action of zinc upon triphenylchloromethane, has obtained a substance, **triphenylmethyl**  $(C_6H_5)_3C\equiv C$ , in which one of the carbon atoms is apparently trivalent.  $(C_6H_5)_3C-C(C_6H_5)_3 \rightleftharpoons 2(C_6H_5)_3C$ . Since the structure of organic compounds is so intimately bound up with the view that the carbon atom is tetravalent, Gomberg's triphenylmethyl, with its trivalent carbon atom, opens up many new lines of research.)



Diphenyl



Naphthalene



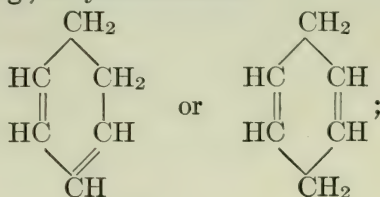
Anthracene



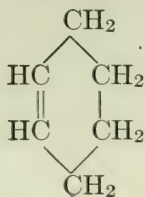
Phenanthrene

The last three compounds mentioned belong to the "conjugated" or condensed cyclic series, and will be taken up in detail in Chapter XXVIII.

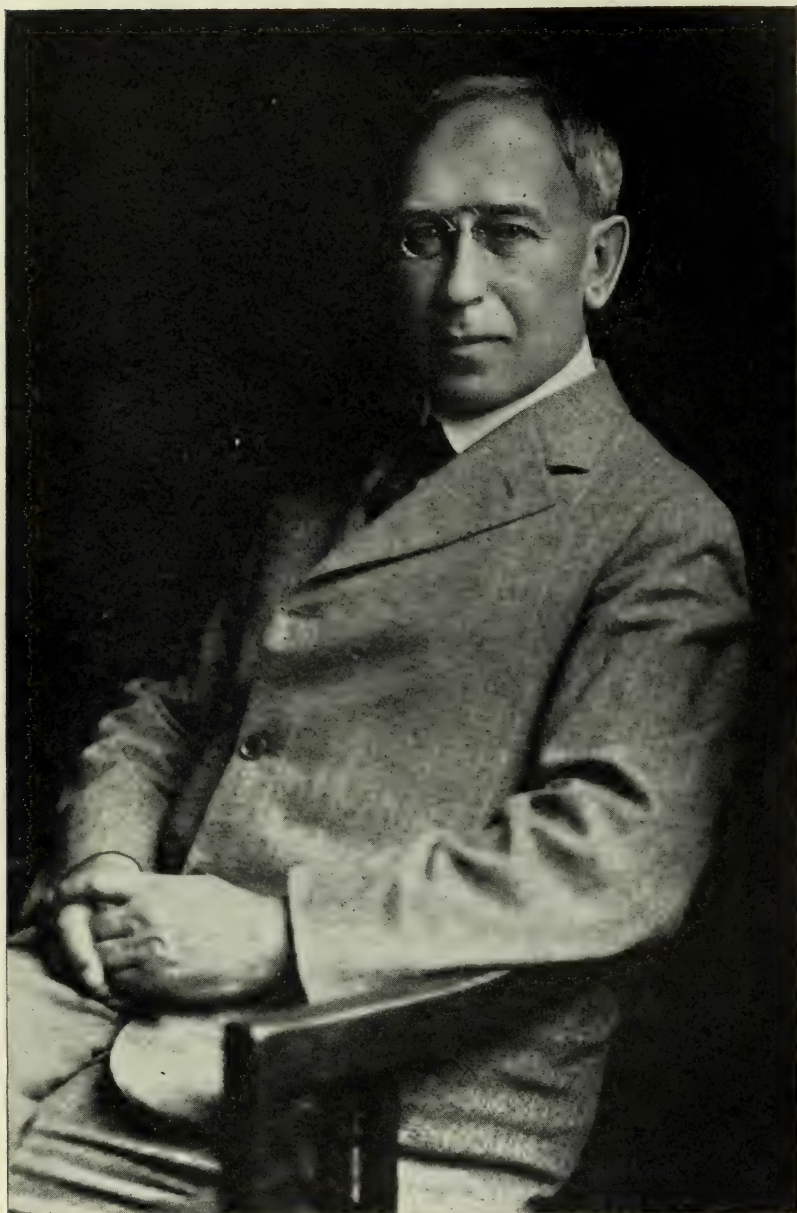
**Hydroaromatic hydrocarbons** are hydrogenated aromatic hydrocarbons; e.g., dihydrobenzenes:



tetrahydrobenzene

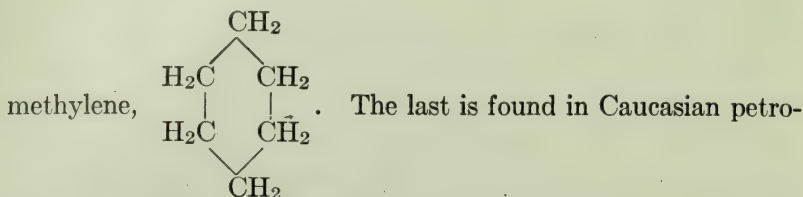


and hexahydrobenzene or hexa-

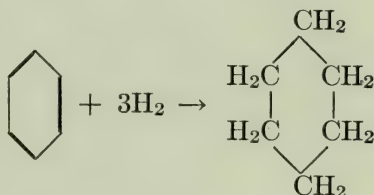


MOSES GOMBERG (1866- )

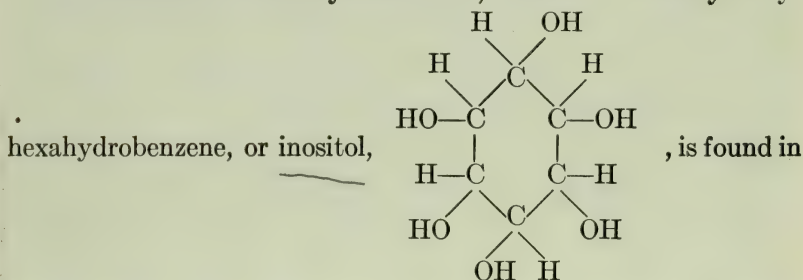
PROFESSOR OF CHEMISTRY AT THE UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN, IS ONE OF THE  
PIONEER WORKERS ON TRIVALENT CARBON AND FREE RADICALS (P. 206).



leum. It and its homologues are known as the naphthenes. The hexamethylene may be prepared by the *Sabatier and Sendereu's* reaction (passing benzene vapor and hydrogen over finely divided nickel):



A derivative of hexahydrobenzene, known as hexahydroxy-



heart muscle and other animal organs, but is present in larger amounts in unripe beans and peas. The empirical formula for this compound is  $C_6H_{12}O_6$ , and it has often been called a cyclic sugar, though in reality it possesses none of the common properties of the sugars.

#### READING REFERENCES

FINDLAY—The Treasures of Coal Tar.

WARNES—Coal Tar Distillation.

TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), chap. 20 (Coal Tar).

FINDLAY—Chemistry in the Service of Man. (1916), chap. 12 (Synthetic Chemistry).

SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry. (1920), chap. 4 (Coal Tar Colors).



- CALDWELL AND SLOSSON—Science Remaking the World. (1923), pp. 48-79 (The Influence of Coal Tar on Civilization).
- SLOSSON—Chats on Science. (1924), No. 17 (How Scientific Inspiration Comes—Kekulé).
- GOMBERG—Organic Radicals. *Chemical Reviews*, **1**, 91 (1924).
- ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 554-587 (Coal Tar and Its Distillation).
- HARROW—Eminent Chemists of Our Time. (1920) pp. 1-18 (Perkin and Coal Tar Dyes).

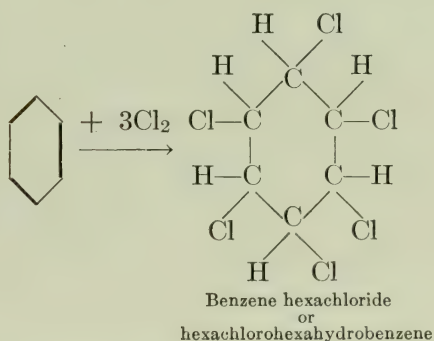
A two-reel motion picture on "By-Product Coking" can be secured, free of charge, from The Koppers Company, Pittsburgh, Pa.

## CHAPTER XXII

### HALOGEN DERIVATIVES, SULFONIC ACIDS AND NITRO COMPOUNDS OF THE AROMATIC HYDROCARBONS

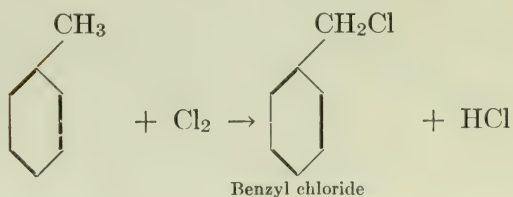
#### HALOGEN COMPOUNDS <sup>1</sup>

THE halogens may react in one of three ways with aromatic hydrocarbons: (1) they may form addition products; e.g.,



(This needs exposure to sunlight, but no carrier or catalyst.)

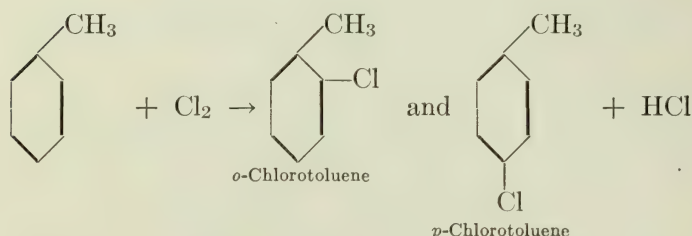
(2) Substitute in the side chain; e.g.,



<sup>1</sup>At this point the student is advised to review the chapter on aliphatic halogen compounds, p. 40.

(This is accomplished at the boiling temperature of toluene, in the presence of sunlight, but in the absence of a catalyst or halogen carrier.)

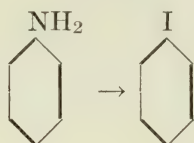
(3) The halogen may enter the ring; e.g.,



(This needs ordinary temperature, no sunlight and a carrier.)

The usual halogen "carriers" or catalysts, are  $\text{FeCl}_3$ ,  $\text{FeBr}_3$ ,  $\text{AlBr}_3$ , Fe, P, S, I, etc.

**Preparation.**—The halogen derivatives of the aromatic series may be prepared by direct halogenation with  $\text{Cl}_2$  or  $\text{Br}_2$ , as just described (iodine does not react), or by the conversion of the corresponding amino compound into the halogen derivative, where the halogen takes the place of  $\text{NH}_2$ : e.g.,



(See p. 231 for further details of the reaction.)


(Ethyl alcohol can be treated with hydrogen bromide, in the presence of sulfuric acid, to give  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Br}$ , but when phenol,



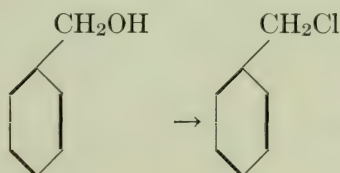
, is treated with hydrogen bromide, no analogous reaction



takes place. Again, when ethyl alcohol is acted upon by phosphorus pentachloride,  $\text{PCl}_5$ , we get  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{Cl}$ , but when phenol is

similarly treated, only a small yield of chlorobenzene,  is

obtained. On the other hand benzyl alcohol is readily transformed into benzyl chloride by  $\text{PCl}_5$ :




Notice that here the side-chain reacts. The side-chain, in fact, behaves like an aliphatic, rather than like an aromatic compound.)

**Properties.**—Where the X is attached to the ring, as in








we get substances which may be colorless liquids or

solids, with an agreeable odor, and which are stable; where the X

is attached to the side-chain, as in , the compounds have

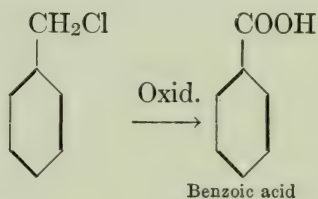
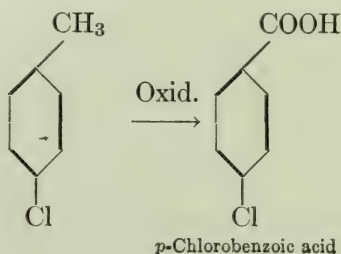
strong, disagreeable, pungent odors, are very reactive, and act as lachrymators. In general, they show the properties of the aliphatic halogen compounds of the type  $\text{RX}$ .

Some of the properties of the two types of halogen compounds may be summarized thus:

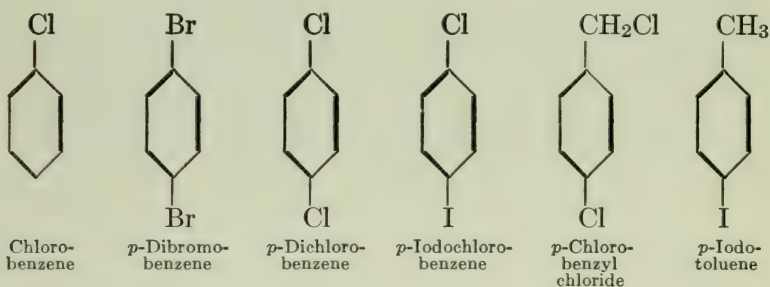
Reagents	$\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}$  Benzyl chloride <i>decolorizes colorless</i>	$\text{CH}_3$  p-chlorotoluene <i>plains color</i>
KOH	$\text{CH}_2\text{OH}$  Benzyl alcohol	No reaction
$\text{NH}_3$	$\text{CH}_2\text{NH}_2$  Benzylamine	No reaction
KCN	$\text{CH}_2\text{CN}$  Benzyl cyanide	No reaction

from which it may be seen that where the halogen is attached to the nucleus, we get a relatively inactive compound; but where it is attached to the side-chain a very active compound, similar in its properties to the aliphatic halogen derivatives, is obtained. (The *Fittig* reaction exemplifies a typical reaction for the type where the halogen is attached to the nucleus.)

Whether the X is attached to the ring or to the side-chain, may be determined in some such way as the following:



Thousands of halogen compounds are known; only a few will be mentioned:

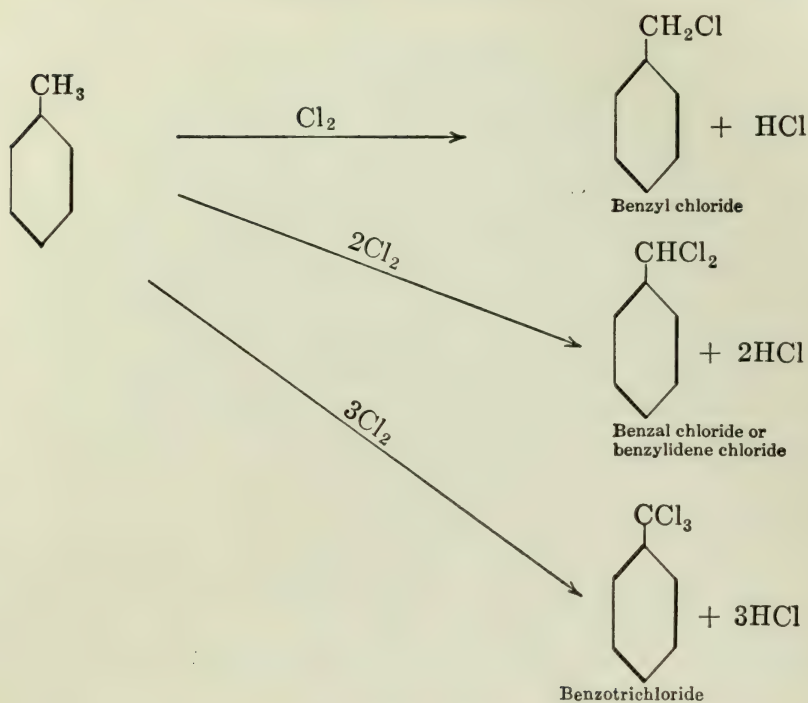


Chlorobenzene is manufactured by chlorinating benzene in presence of iron. It is used for the manufacture of dye intermediates.<sup>1</sup> *p*-Dichlorobenzene is used extensively to protect woolen goods from moths.

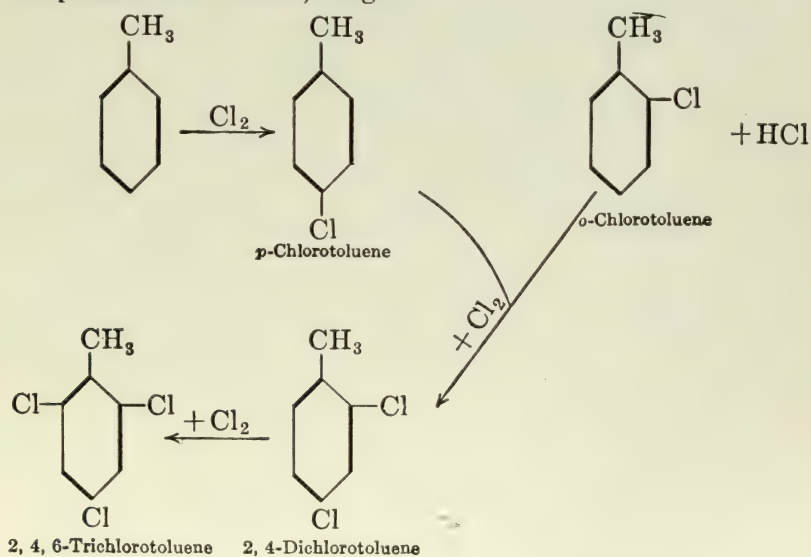
We may again refer to the preparation of these halogen compounds. Toluene, when acted upon by chlorine—in the presence of sunlight, in the absence of a “carrier” and moisture, and at boiling temperature—gives the following products:

<sup>1</sup> A dye intermediate is an organic substance used in the manufacture of dyes.





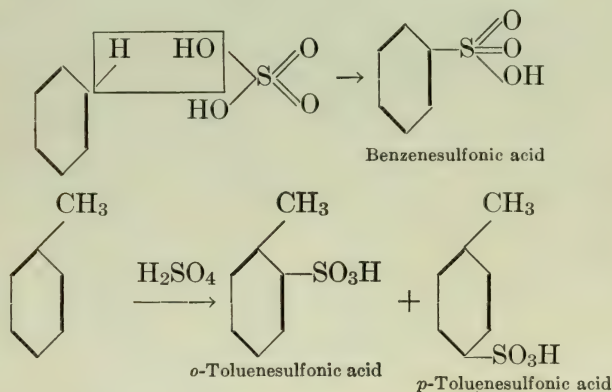
When, however, the chlorine and the toluene are made to react in the absence of sunlight and at room temperature, but in the presence of a carrier, we get:



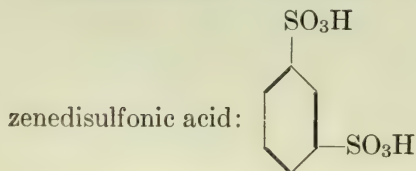
(A number of halogen derivatives of the aromatic series were used during the late war as **poison gases**. Some of these were benzyl bromide,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ , diphenylchloroarsine  $(\text{C}_6\text{H}_5)_2\text{As}\cdot\text{Cl}$ , phenylcarbylamine chloride,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{N}=\text{C}=\text{Cl}_2$  and xylyl bromide,  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{Br}$ . Since we are on the subject of war gases, we may include a few other compounds also used during the late war, although they really belong to the aliphatic series: bromoacetone,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Br}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ ; bromoethyl methyl ketone,  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CHBr}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ ; chloroacetone,  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CH}_3$ ; nitrotrichloromethane—or chloropicrin— $\text{CCl}_3\cdot\text{NO}_2$ ; dichlorodiethyl sulfide—mustard gas— $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_4\text{Cl})_2\text{S}$ ; dimethyl sulfate  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{SO}_4$ ; dichloromethyl ether,  $(\text{CH}_2\text{Cl})_2\text{O}$ ; phosgene,  $\text{COCl}_2$ ; trichloromethyl chloroformate,  $\text{Cl}\cdot\text{COOCCl}_3$  and hydrocyanic acid,  $\text{HCN}$ .)

### SULFONIC ACIDS

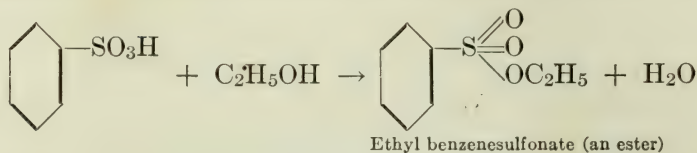
**Sulfonic acids** are a very important class of organic compounds, since from them phenolic compounds (p. 237), naphthols (p. 281), etc., are prepared. They are generally prepared by the direct sulfonation of the hydrocarbon; e.g.,



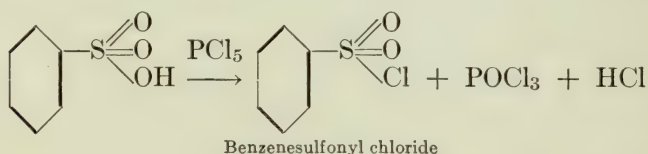
Benzenesulfonic acid when further sulfonated gives *m*-ben-



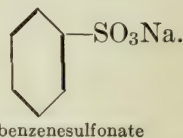
**Properties.** With alcohol, the sulfonic acids form esters; e.g.,



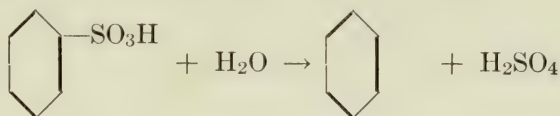
The corresponding chloride is obtained with  $\text{PCl}_5$ ; e.g.,



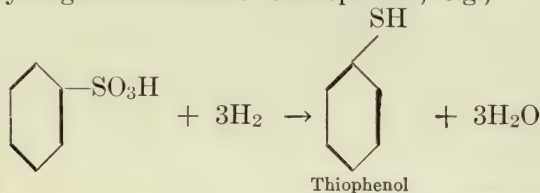
and with  $\text{NaOH}$  we form the sodium salt; e.g.,



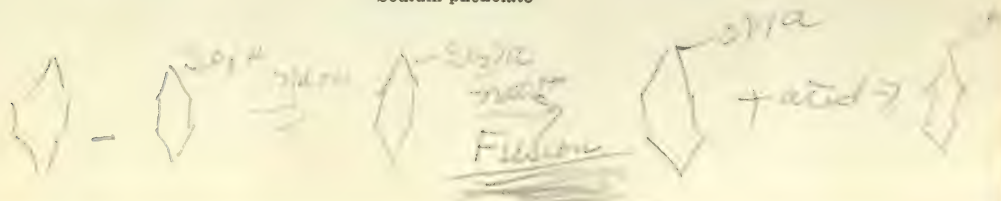
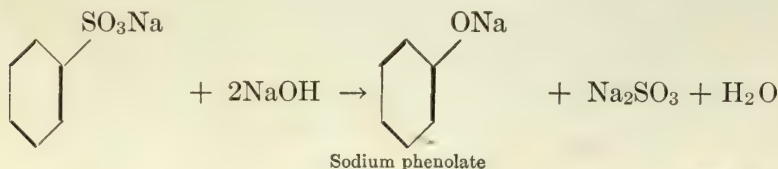
With steam under pressure, they are decomposed, yielding the hydrocarbon, e.g.,



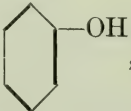
and with hydrogen are reduced to thiophenol; e.g.,



When fused with  $\text{NaOH}$ , the sulfonic acids yield the sodium salts of the phenols; e.g.,

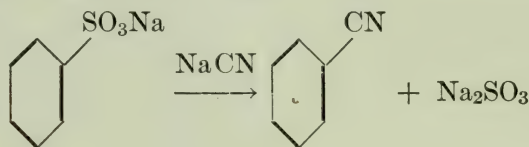




from which the phenol, , can be obtained by treating the solution with  $\text{CO}_2$ .

(This is an extremely important commercial method used in the preparation of phenol and phenolic compounds. The sulfonic acid is first made from the hydrocarbon, then the former is fused with  $\text{NaOH}$ , and the resulting compound acidified.)

The sulfonic acids (salts) can be distilled with  $\text{NaCN}$  yielding the corresponding cyanides; e.g.,



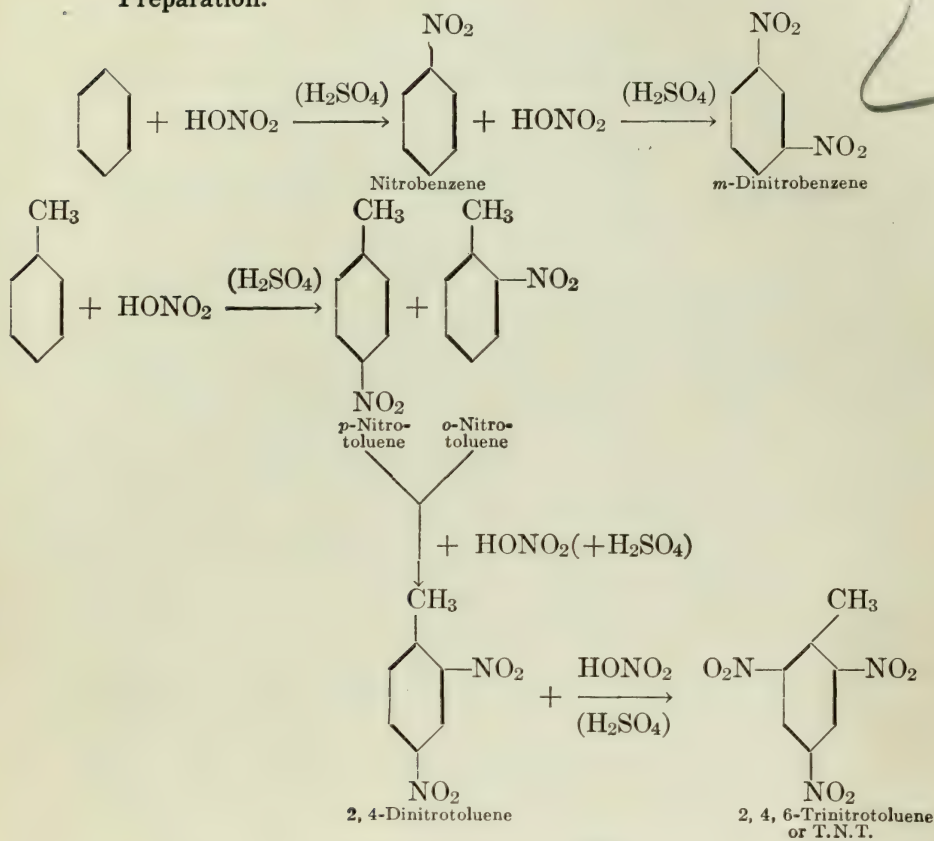
The free sulfonic acids are usually very soluble in water. In order to separate them from the excess of  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , the  $\text{Pb}$ ,  $\text{Ca}$  or  $\text{Ba}$  salts are usually prepared. The  $\text{Pb}$ ,  $\text{Ba}$  and  $\text{Ca}$  sulfonates are soluble in water while the sulfates are insoluble. (For sulfonation, concentrated  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  at elevated temperature must be used. Very often it is necessary to resort to fuming  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ .)

(Quite often organic compounds insoluble in water are sulfonated, converting them to water-soluble sulfonic acids. This is a procedure extensively used in the dye industry.)

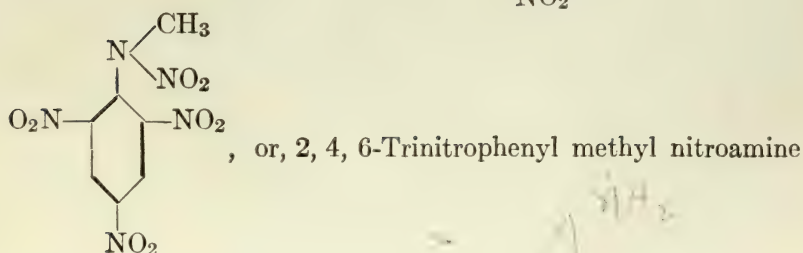
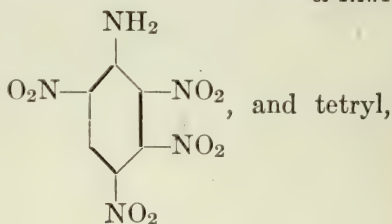
#### NITRO COMPOUNDS

These are a very important class of organic compounds. They are generally prepared by direct nitration with  $\text{HNO}_3$ . In some instances the nitration proceeds readily, in others it does not. In some cases dilute nitric acid can be used (provided no oxidation takes place); in others the nitration will proceed only with concentrated or fuming nitric acid. In most cases the presence of sulfuric acid is necessary to absorb the water just as fast as it is formed in the reaction. Sometimes only fuming sulfuric acid will serve the purpose. In reality, a number of factors play their part in nitration—such as strength of nitrating acid (“mixed acid”— $\text{HNO}_3 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), amount of acid used, temperature of the reaction, length of time of nitration, agitation of the liquids, etc.

## Preparation.

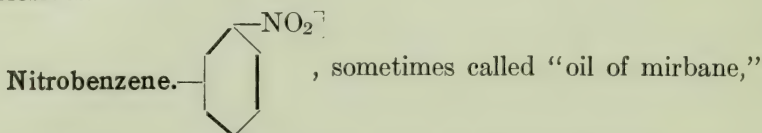


(T.N.A., tetranitroaniline,

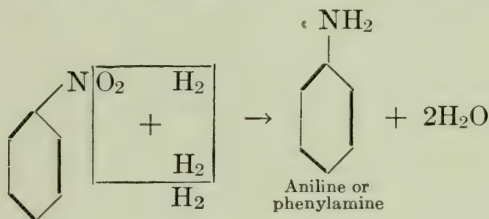


are the most important high explosives.)

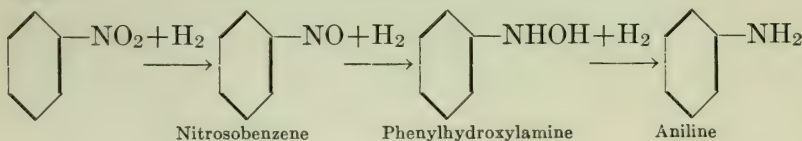
**Properties.**—The nitro compounds are usually pale yellowish liquids or solids, many of them being volatile with steam. Some of them—the higher nitro compounds, such as T.N.T.—are high explosives.



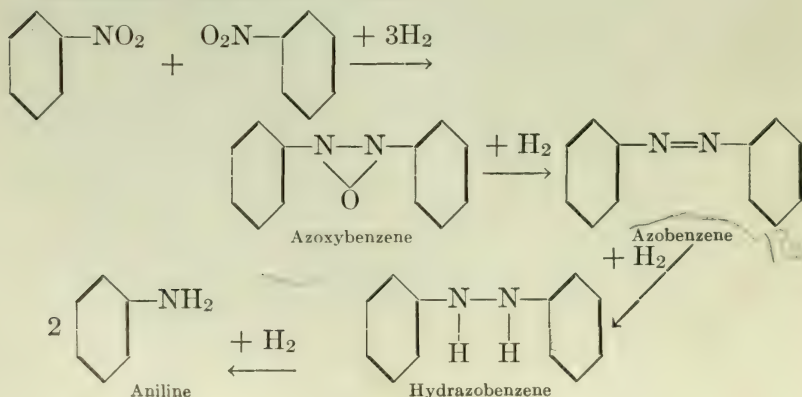
is a yellowish oil possessing the odor of bitter almonds, and is sometimes used in place of the latter in perfumes. It is also used in soaps, polishes and grease (due to its odor). It is manufactured from benzene on a very large scale for the purpose of preparing aniline, which is an important "dye intermediate,"



**Reduction products of nitro compounds under varying conditions:**



*Dimolecular Reduction Products:*





READING REFERENCES

- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), chap. 26 (Explosives).
- SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry. (1920), chap. 2 (Preserver and Destroyer of Life); chap. 12 (Fighting with Fumes).
- PHILLIP—Romance of Modern Chemistry. (1910), chap. 15 (Explosives).
- FRIES AND WEST—Chemical Warfare.
- AULD—Gas and Flame.
- HARROW—Contemporary Science. (1921), pp. 61-75 (Methods of Gas Warfare—by Auld).
- YERKES—The New World of Science. (1920), chap. 9 (The Production of Explosives).
- MARSHALL—Explosives.
- SMITH—T.N.T. and other Nitrotoluenes.
- ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 1070-1091 (Explosives).
- GROGGINS—Aniline and Its Derivatives. (1924), chap. 7 (Nitrobenzene).

*End for Exam*

*6-10-11*

Study for 3rd exam

## CHAPTER XXIII

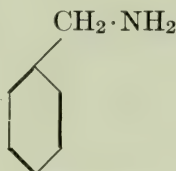
### AROMATIC AMINES,<sup>1</sup> DIAZO AND AZO COMPOUNDS

#### AROMATIC AMINES

THE  $\text{NH}_2$  group may be attached to the nucleus or to the side-chain; e.g.,



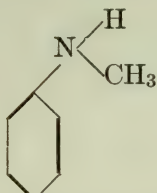
Aminobenzene or phenylamine or **aniline**



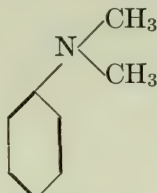
Benzylamine

As might be anticipated, the benzylamine shows the general properties of an aliphatic amine, since the  $\text{NH}_2$  group is in the side-chain.

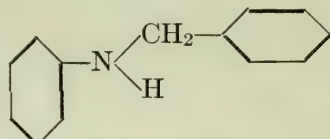
The aromatic amines, like those of the aliphatic series (p. 132), may be either primary, secondary or tertiary; e.g.,



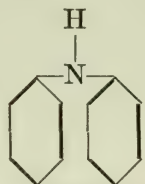
Monomethylaniline  
or methylphenylamine



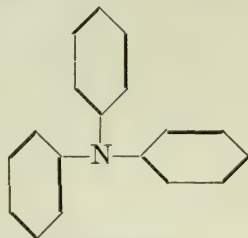
Dimethylaniline  
or dimethylphenylamine



Benzylphenylamine



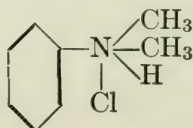
Diphenylamine



Triphenylamine

<sup>1</sup> The student should review Chapter XIII on aliphatic amines.

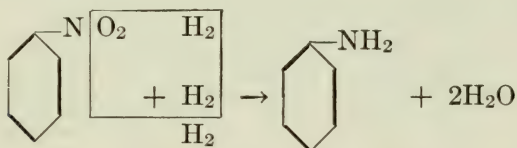
The aliphatic amines are stronger bases than the corresponding aromatic amines. The primary, secondary and tertiary amines form salts such as



Dimethyl phenyl ammonium chloride  
or Dimethylaniline hydrochloride


but if all the groups attached to the nitrogen atom are aryl,<sup>1</sup> then no salts are formed. Triphenylamine, for example, does not form a salt with hydrochloric acid.

**Preparation.**—The amines are generally prepared by reducing the nitro compounds; e.g.,



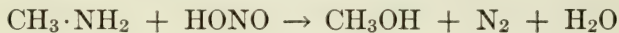
(It may be remembered that the aliphatic amines can be prepared by the action of ammonia on the halogen compound:



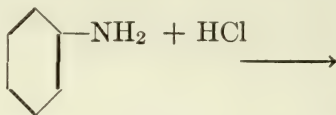
but chlorobenzene, -Cl, does not react with ammonia under

analogous conditions.)

**Reactions with Nitrous Acid.**—The aliphatic primary amines yield alcohol when treated with nitrous acid; e.g.,

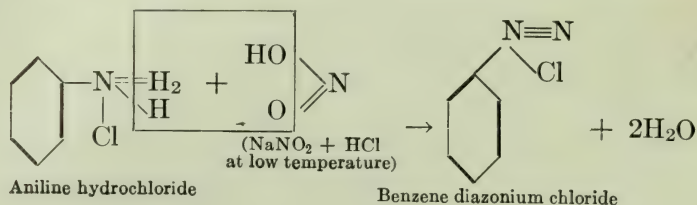


but with the aromatic primary amines, the reaction is quite different; e.g.,



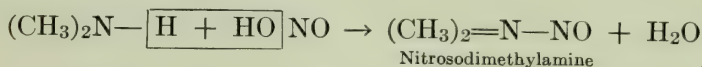
<sup>1</sup> The "aryl" (Ar) groups refer to  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$  and its homologues, just as the "alkyl" (R) groups refer to the aliphatic groups.



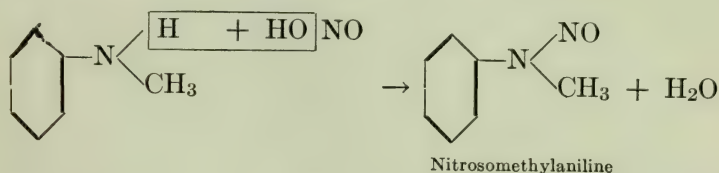


(This reaction—the “diazotization”—will be taken up later on p. 229.)

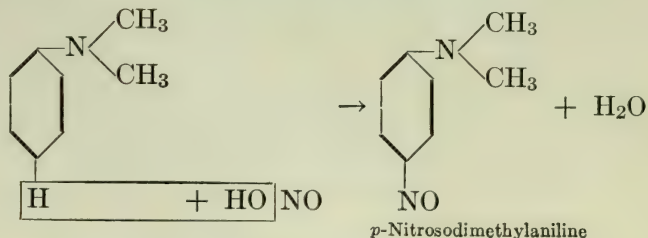
The secondary amines of the aliphatic series, it will be recalled, yield nitroso compounds; e.g.,



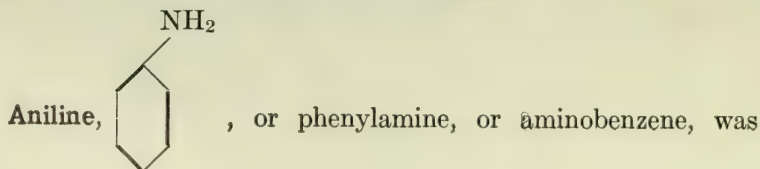
and so do the aromatic amines; e.g.,



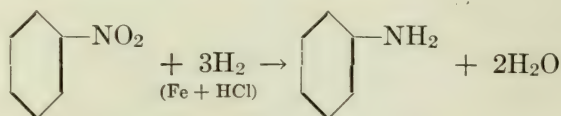
The tertiary amines of the aliphatic series—e.g.,  $(\text{CH}_3)_3\text{N}$ , do not react with  $\text{HONO}$ , but those of the aromatic series do. (There are a few exceptions which need not be discussed here); e.g.,



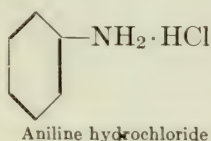
Very many amines are known, and many are used in the industries. A few of them will be mentioned.



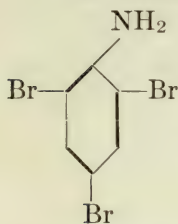
first produced by the distillation of indigo. (The Portuguese word for indigo is "anil," hence the name "aniline.") It occurs in small quantities in coal tar and bone oil. On an industrial scale, it is manufactured from nitrobenzene:



Aniline, when freshly distilled, is a colorless oil, which darkens on standing; b. p. 184.4°. It is the basic substance from which hundreds of dye intermediates are manufactured. (The first synthetic coal tar dye, "mauve," was made on a commercial scale by Perkin, who used aniline as his starting material.) Aniline is poisonous, producing vertigo, weakness and cyanosis. An aqueous solution of it, when mixed with bleaching powder, gives a violet color; with potassium dichromate, a blue color is obtained. Being a base, aniline forms salts with acids, such as

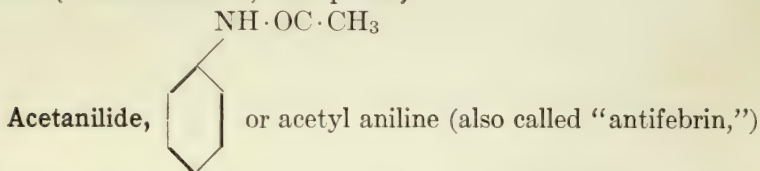


With bromine, aniline forms 2, 4, 6 (sym)-tribromoaniline



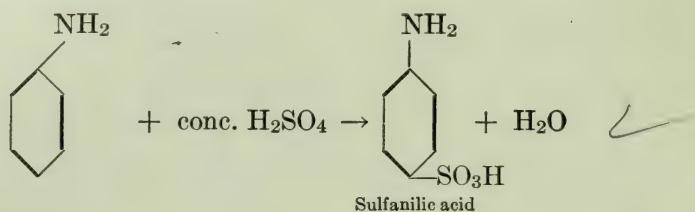
and with nitrous acid, we get a diazonium com-

pound ("diazo reaction," see p. 229).

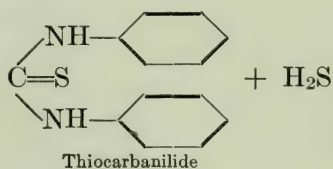


is formed when aniline is acted upon by glacial acetic acid or acetic anhydride. It is used in medicine as an analgesic and antipyretic, and is used in neuralgia, rheumatism and in headache

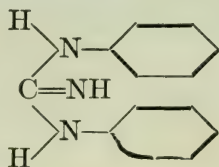
powders. When aniline is heated with  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , sulfanilic acid is produced:



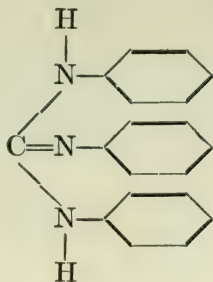
Aniline reacts with carbon disulfide,  $\text{CS}_2$ , to form



which is used as an "accelerator" in the vulcanization of rubber. (By an "accelerator" we mean a substance which "hastens" the reaction between the sulfur and the rubber.) It also has an effect on the physical properties of the vulcanized rubber, in that it increases the tensile strength. Besides thiocarbanilide, the following are the more important accelerators: hexamethylene-tetramine (p. 74); diphenylguanidine,

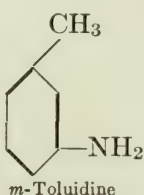
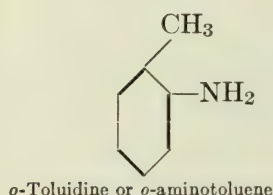


and triphenylguanidine,

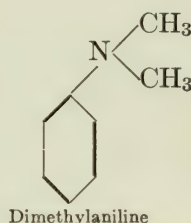
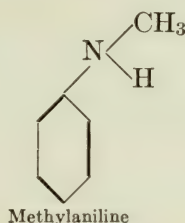
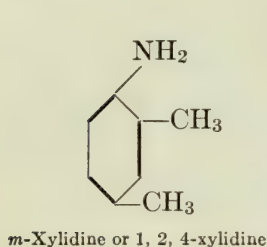




The toluidines or aminotoluenes,

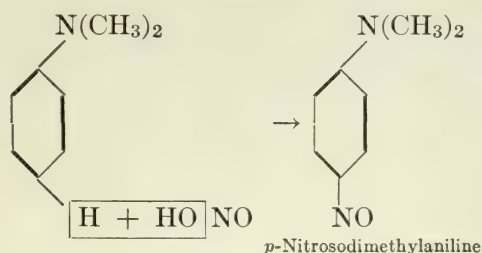


Of the three toluidines, the *o*- and *p*- may be obtained by the reduction of the corresponding nitro compounds. A few other amines are

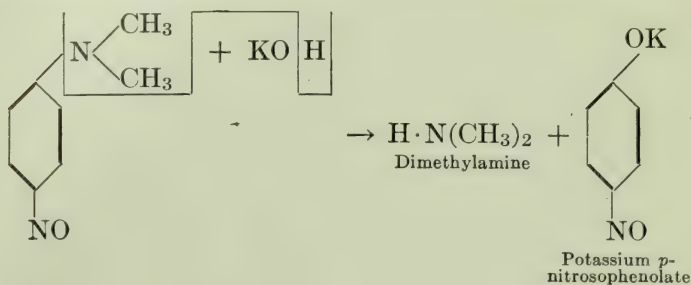


The last two are manufactured by heating aniline and methanol under pressure, the one or the other amine being obtained, depending upon the ratio of the reacting substances used. Both the methylaniline and the dimethylaniline are used extensively in the manufacture of dye intermediates and dyes.

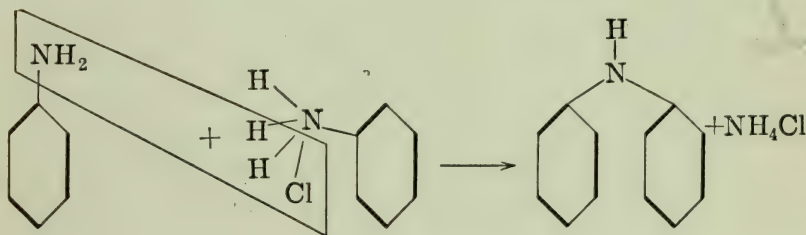
Nitrous acid reacts with dimethylaniline as follows:



the product being used in the manufacture of dyes and for the preparation of pure dimethylamine:

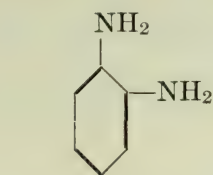


**Diphenylamine** or phenylaniline, is manufactured by heating aniline with aniline hydrochloride around  $240^\circ$  in an autoclave (under pressure).

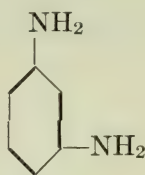


It is added to smokeless powder to increase its stability; and is also used as a test for nitric acid and nitrates, and in the manufacture of dyes.

**The diaminobenzenes,**



*o*-Diaminobenzene  
or  
*o*-phenylenediamine



*m*-Phenylenediamine



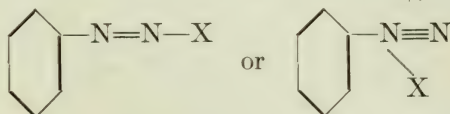
*p*-Phenylenediamine

are known as the "diamines." The *m*- and *p*-compounds are used very extensively in the manufacture of dyestuffs. (The  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_4$  group (divalent) is known as the "phenylene" group.)

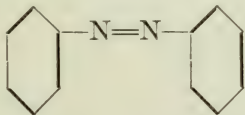
## DIAZO AND AZO COMPOUNDS

("Azote" is the French word for nitrogen. "Diazo," therefore, indicates *two* nitrogens.)

A diazo compound has one aryl group attached to one nitrogen of:

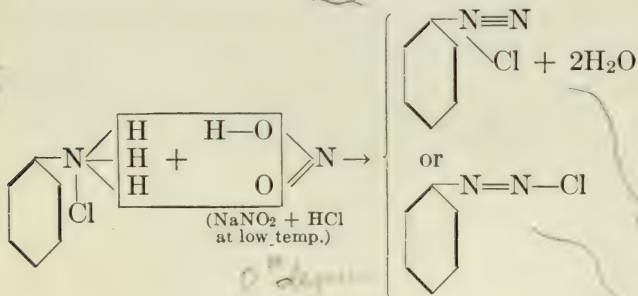


An azo compound has two aryl groups attached to two nitrogen atoms:

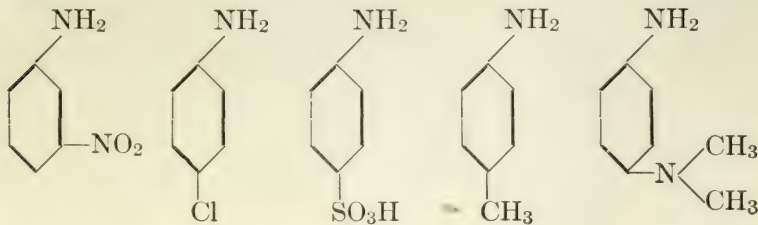


(The diazo and azo substances are an extremely important class of organic compounds. They have played a very important part in the development of synthetic and industrial organic chemistry, especially in the manufacture of dyestuffs. These facts will be appreciated as we proceed.)

**Type Reaction Illustrated** (*Griess' diazo reaction*).



In the place of the phenyl group we may use any other substituted aryl groups, such as are illustrated in the following compounds:

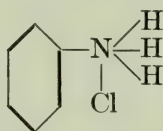




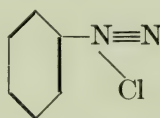
as well as the naphthalene group (p. 278), containing the  $\text{NH}_2$  attached to the ring; so that the reaction is of the widest possible application.

The action of nitrous acid on an aromatic amine whereby a diazonium compound is formed, is known as **diazotization**.

The diazo compounds in solution are highly unstable at ordinary temperatures. (They are not prepared in the dry state for they are more or less unstable and explosive.) They are usually soluble in water and show many properties analogous to the ammonium salts, such as conductivity and salt formation. The structure is written with this analogy in mind; e.g.,



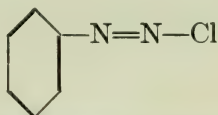
Phenyl ammonium chloride



Benzenediazonium chloride (A)

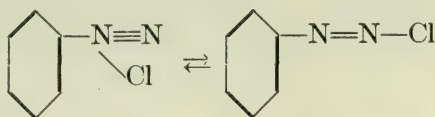
where one N in (A) is pentavalent. Compounds of type (A) are known as "diazonium," the ending "ium" suggesting the ending in "ammonium." Benzenediazonium chloride may be looked upon as phenyl ammonium chloride, wherein the three hydrogens are replaced by one nitrogen.

Compounds of type (A), like the ammonium compounds, show salt-like properties. In some reactions, however, the diazotized product does not show salt-like properties. hence (A) is also written as

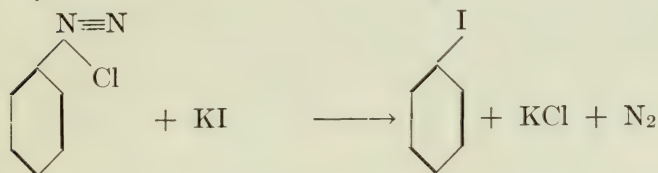
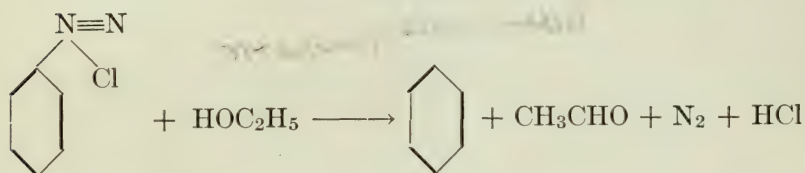
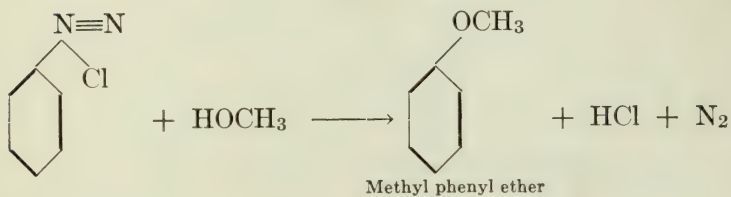
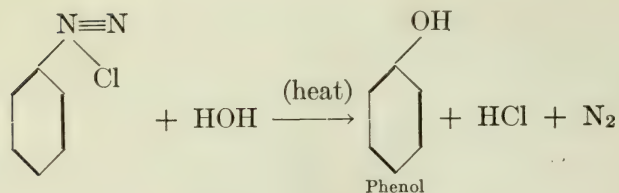


Diazobenzene chloride (B)

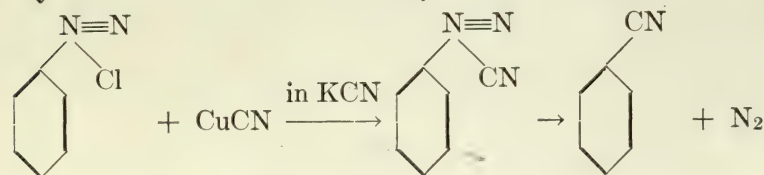
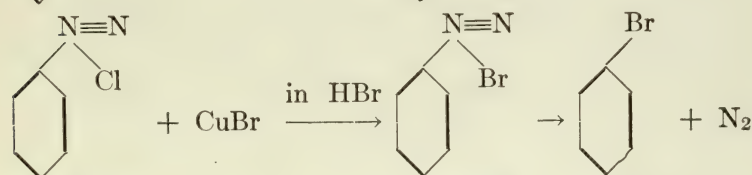
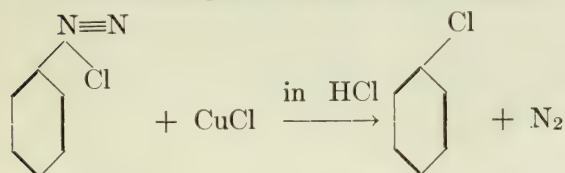
We probably have both (A) and (B) present in compounds of the diazo type:



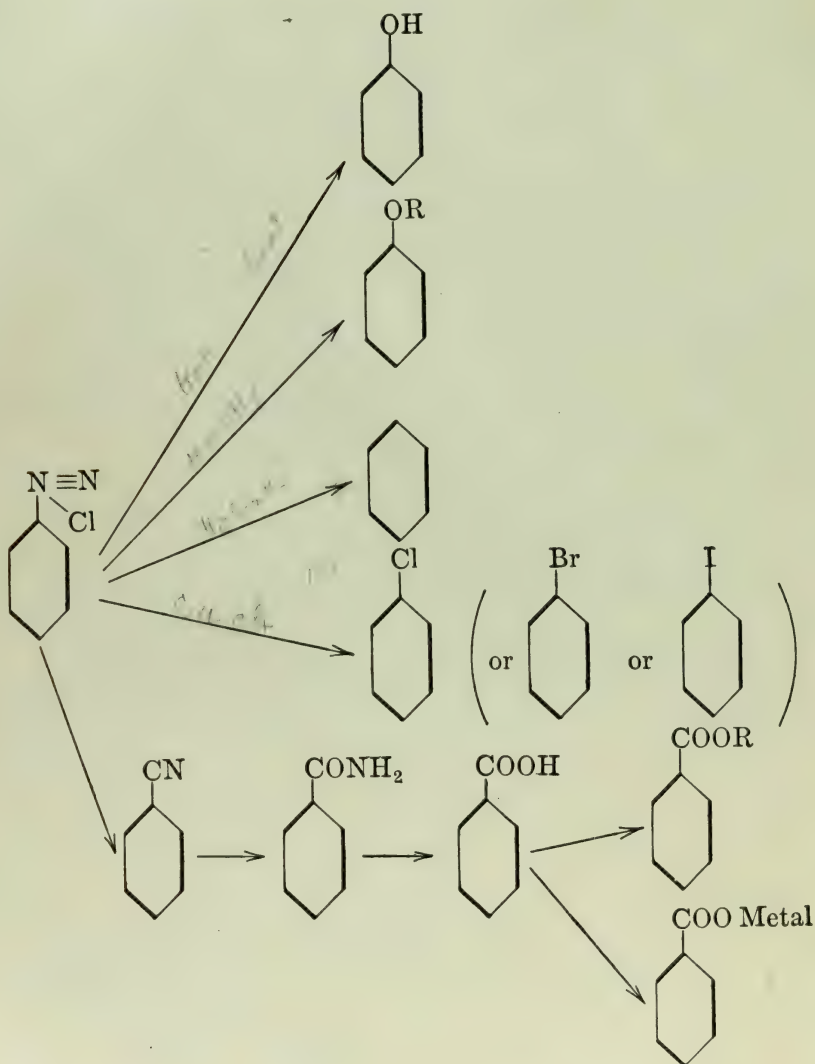
Many types of aromatic compounds are prepared from these diazonium or diazo compounds; e.g.,



The following are known as the *Sandmeyer* reactions:



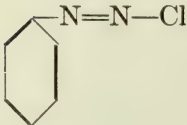
We may summarize these reactions to show the preparation of various types of aromatic compounds:

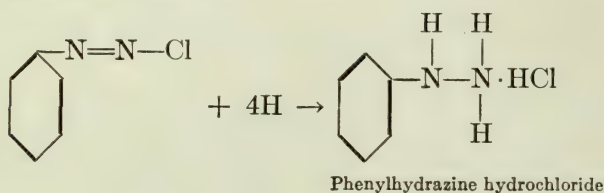


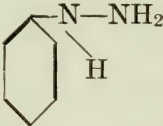
which gives an idea of the wide applicability which these diazonium compounds possess.

We must now proceed to reactions which are better explained



by the structure . Upon partial reduction, the following reaction takes place:

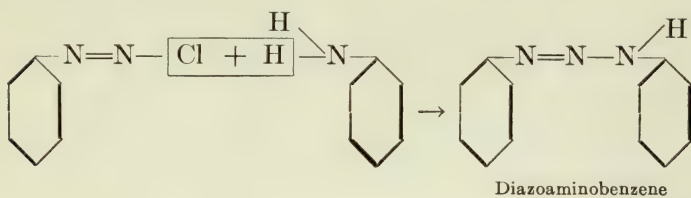


and the base, **phenylhydrazine**, , may be obtained

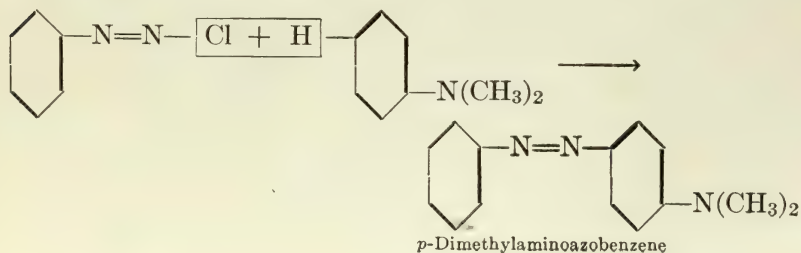
by the addition of NaOH. (Hydrazine is  $\text{H}_2\text{N}-\text{NH}_2$ .)

Phenylhydrazine, a poisonous liquid, has been used very extensively by Fischer and others in determining the structure of sugars. It is used in the identification of sugars (p. 163), in tests for aldehydes and ketones (p. 73), in the manufacture of antipyrine (p. 311) and various dyestuffs.

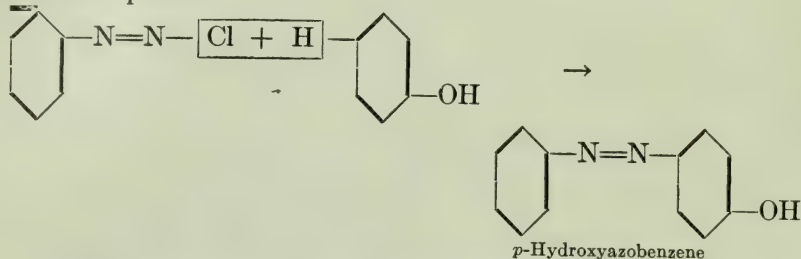
Diazobenzene chloride may be "coupled" with aniline (in neutral or weak acid solution) thus:



and with dimethylaniline:



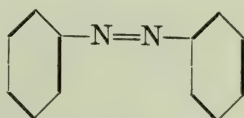
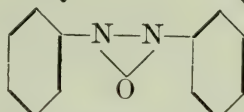
and with phenol:

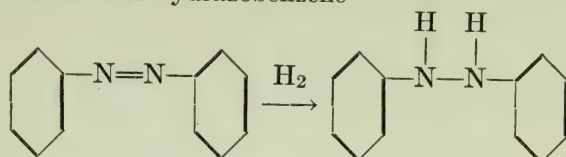


—reactions which are much better explained on the basis of a “diazot” rather than on a “diazonium” configuration.

Reactions of the type just given are of great importance in the manufacture of azo dyes (p. 299).

The azo compounds are far more stable than the diazo compounds.

**Azobenzene**, , is prepared by distilling azoxybenzene, , with iron filings; or by the action of an alkaline solution of stannous chloride on nitrobenzene. It may be reduced to hydrazobenzene



which, when boiled with strong HCl undergoes an intramolecular rearrangement into *p,p'*-diaminodiphenyl, better known as **benzidine**:



which is an important dye intermediate. (Benzidine is also used in one of the tests to detect blood.)

#### READING REFERENCE

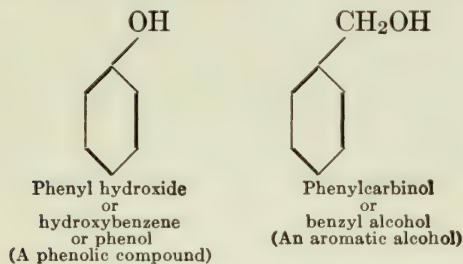
GROGGINS—Aniline and Its Derivatives. (1924), chap. 1 (Discovery of Aniline Oil); chap. 4 (Acetanilide).

CHAPTER XXIV

AROMATIC ALCOHOLS, PHENOLS AND ETHERS

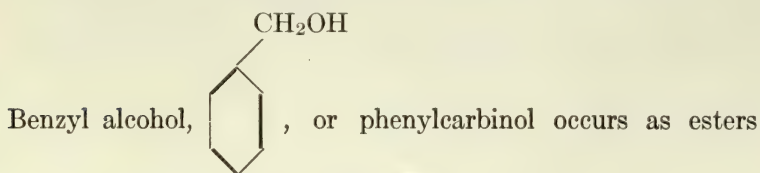
WE have already pointed out (p. 210) that in aromatic compounds substitution may occur either in the side-chain or in the nucleus, and that the products obtained when substitution takes place in the side-chain are quite different from those obtained when substitution takes place in the nucleus.

We have seen, in the case of the amines, for example, how the  $\text{NH}_2$  group may be attached either to the nucleus or to the side-chain. This is equally true of the OH group. Where the OH is attached to the nucleus, it is known as a **phenolic** compound, and where it is attached to the side-chain it is an **aromatic alcohol**; e.g.,



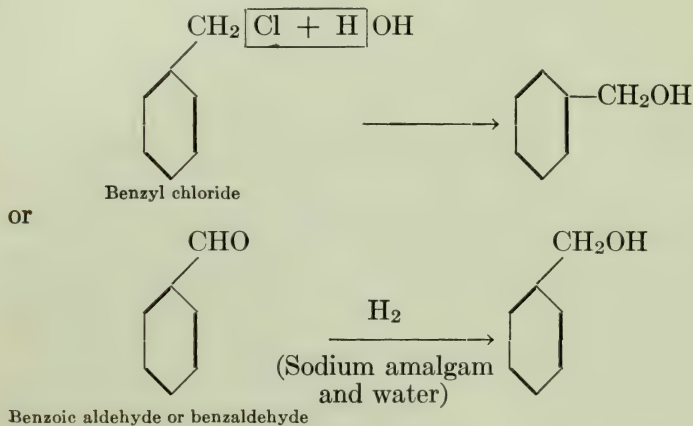
(In the aromatic alcohols, the OH group is attached to an alkyl residue, or side-chain; the properties of these compounds, therefore, are closely analogous to those of the aliphatic alcohols. See Chapter V.)

AROMATIC ALCOHOLS



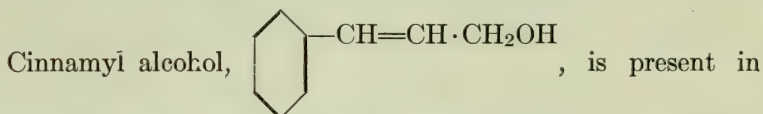
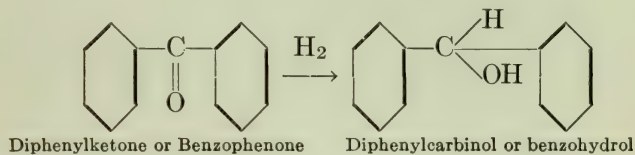


in balsam of Peru and Tolu, storax resin, in oils of flowers, etc. It may be obtained as follows:

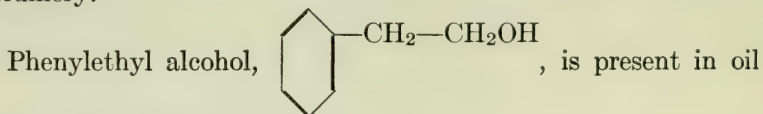


It is used in perfumery, and in medicine as a local anesthetic.

Diphenylcarbinol, or benzohydrol, is a secondary alcohol, and may be prepared by reducing the corresponding ketone.



storax, and has an odor like that of hyacinth. It is used in perfumery.

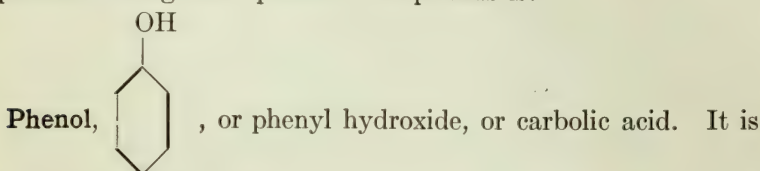


of rose and is used in perfumes.

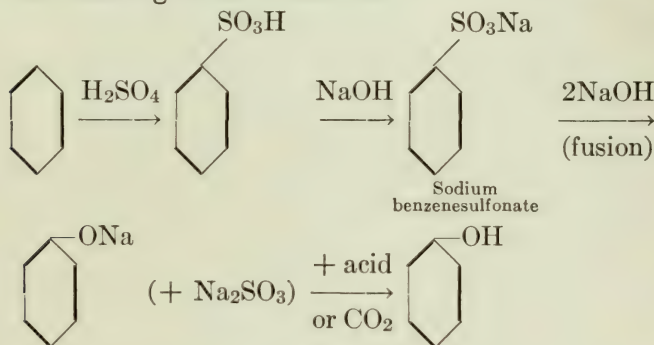
#### PHENOLS

The aromatic alcohols, like those of the aliphatic series, are neutral bodies, but when the OH enters the ring and we get a

phenolic compound, then we obtain a very weak acid. The most important among these phenolic compounds is:

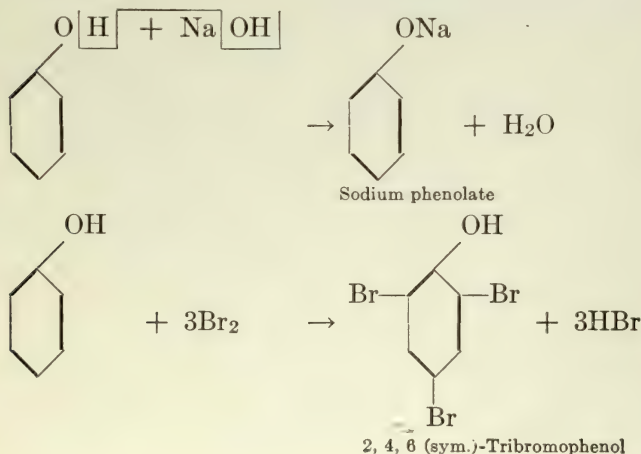


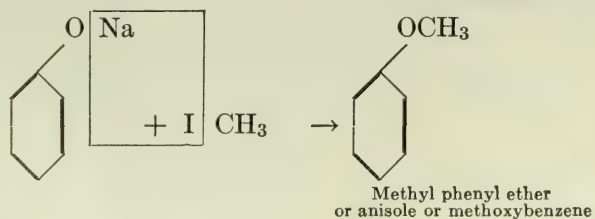
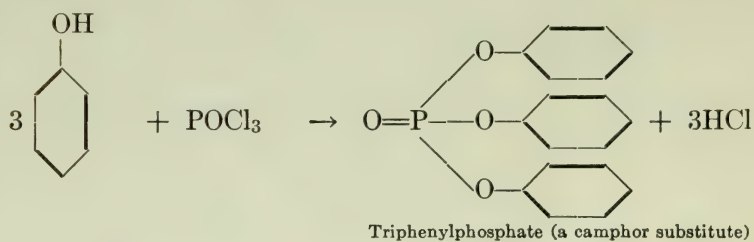
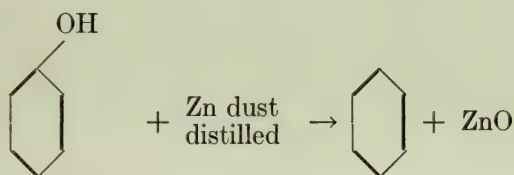
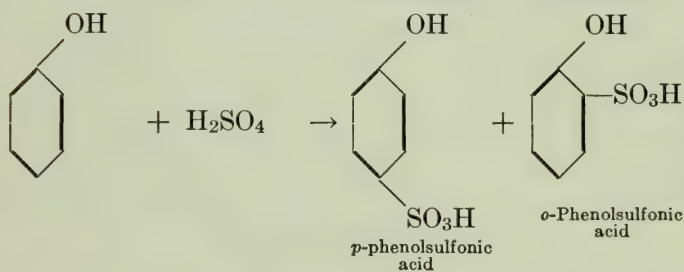
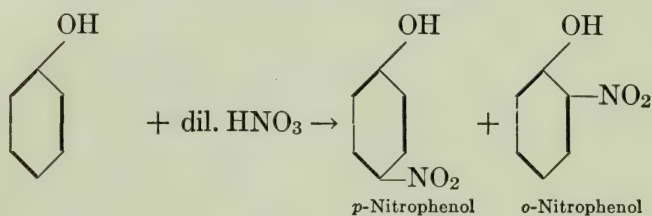
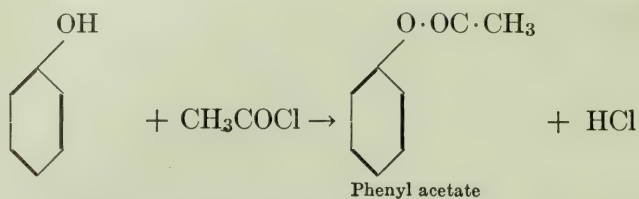
present in wood tar and coal tar (see chart facing p. 199), from which much of it is obtained. It is also manufactured by making use of the following series of reactions:



It may also be prepared by the diazo reaction (p. 231).

**Properties.**—Phenol is a very weak acid but slightly dissociated (less so than carbonic acid). It is very corrosive and poisonous. Some of its general reactions may be illustrated by the following:





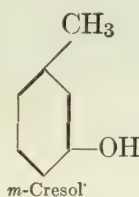
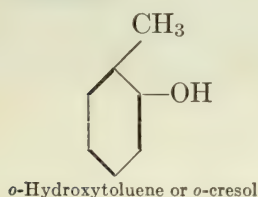


Phenol gives a violet coloration with ferric chloride. It is a colorless, crystalline substance which becomes liquid upon the addition of 15 per cent of water. It is a powerful antiseptic, disinfectant and germicide, and is used to a certain extent (in 3 per cent solutions) as a dressing for wounds, for disinfecting surgical instruments, rooms, etc.

Phenol is also used in the manufacture of explosives, dyes, developers, various medicinals, bakelite and other resins, etc.

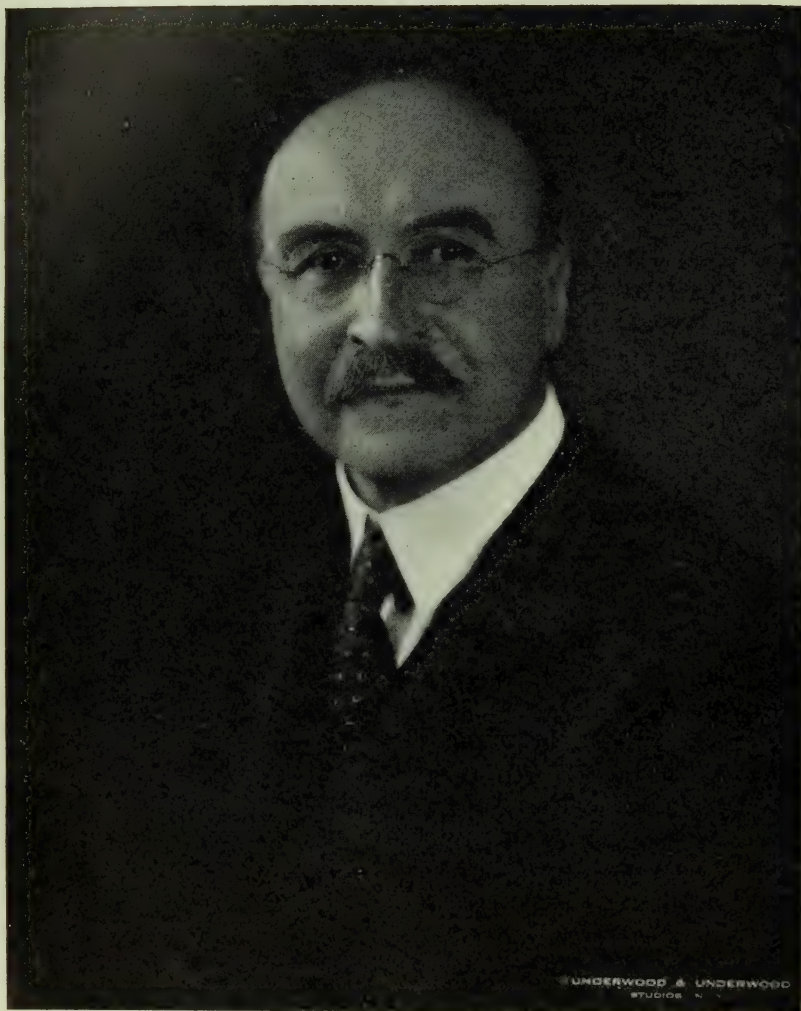
The resins, of which "bakelite" is an example, are sufficiently important to warrant a few words of description. Phenol combines with formaldehyde to produce a resinous material. These products—known as bakelite, redmanol, etc.—vary in properties, for the particular type of resin obtained will depend upon the exact method employed in its preparation. Pure phenol and pure formaldehyde react very slowly, even when heated, but in the presence of catalytic agents, particularly bases—ammonia seems to be used in many cases—the action is accelerated. Where ammonia is used, it is believed that what first takes place is a reaction between the formaldehyde and the ammonia, forming hexamethylenetetramine (p. 74), and that the latter then combines with phenol, forming a resin, the chemical composition of which is not clear. This resin undergoes further changes when heated. It then becomes less fusible and less soluble. The raw bakelite, for example, is both soluble and fusible, but when heated becomes insoluble, infusible, very hard, strong and resistant. This bakelite is used in moulding materials, varnishes, enamels, lacquers, cements, pipe stems, cigar holders, handles, insulating substances, etc.

#### Cresols.



All three are present in coal tar and in wood tar, and all three act as antiseptics. They are known as "cresylic acid" or "tri-cresol." The properties of these cresols are, in general,

*ammonia  
catalyze  
2200 lb  
3500 F  
for  
5 min*

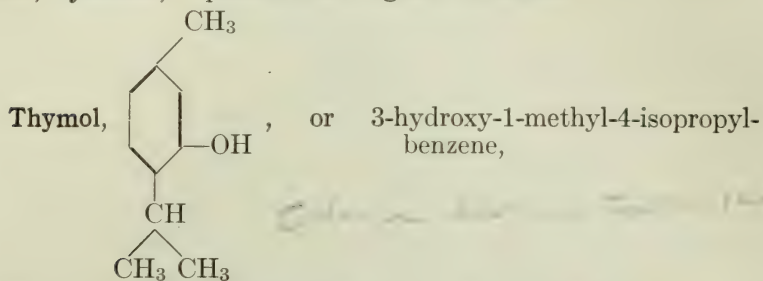


LEO HENDRIK BAEKELAND (1863- )

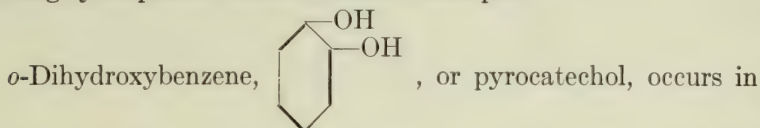
PRESIDENT OF THE AMERICAN CHEMICAL SOCIETY IN 1924 AND HONORARY PROFESSOR OF CHEMICAL ENGINEERING AT COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY, IS BEST KNOWN FOR HIS WORK ON "BAKELITE" (P. 239), SYNTHETIC PLASTICS IN GENERAL AND FOR "VELOX" (THE PHOTOGRAPHIC PAPER).



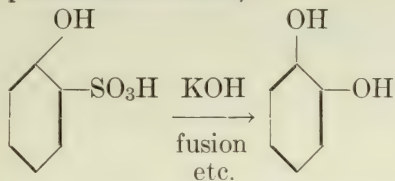
similar to phenol. The cresols have greater germicidal power than phenol and are less poisonous. They are slightly soluble in water and are rendered more soluble by the addition of soap. Preparations such as lysol, creolin, phenoco, etc., contain cresols. Cresols are also used for the manufacture of synthetic resins, dyestuffs, explosives and organic chemicals.



occurs in oil of thyme, mint, and other essential oils, and is an important antiseptic. It is very often used in the treatment of hookworm and to preserve urine. Diiododithymol (prepared from thymol and iodine) is known as "aristol" and has largely displaced iodoform as an antiseptic.

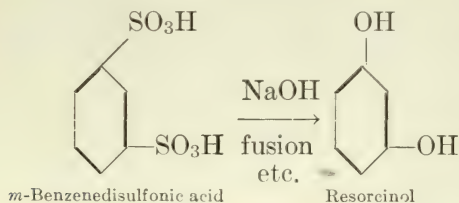


"catechu" resin and is prepared from resins by fusing them with KOH, or from *o*-phenolsulfonic acid;



It is used in the manufacture of adrenaline and guaiacol.

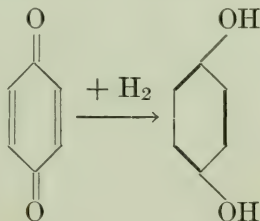
**Resorcinol**, or *m*-dihydroxybenzene, or resorcin, is prepared thus:





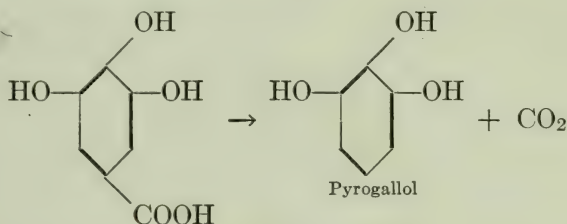
It is used as an antiseptic and an antipyretic, and in the preparation of dyestuffs.

**Quinol**, or *p*-dihydroxybenzene, or hydroquinone, is prepared from *p*-benzoquinone (p. 250) by reduction:



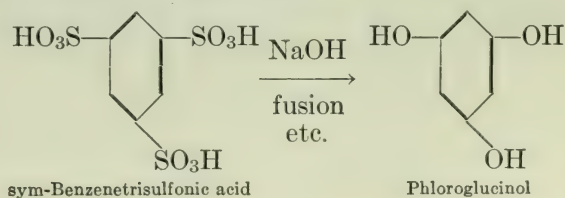
It is used as a photographic developer (that is, as a mild reducing agent, it being converted into benzoquinone).

Of the three trihydroxybenzenes, **pyrogallol** (or pyrogallie acid) is obtained by heating gallic acid:



It is a strong reducing agent and absorbs oxygen in alkaline solution—a property used in estimating oxygen in gas mixtures. Pyrogallol is also used as a photographic developer and in the manufacture of dyestuffs.

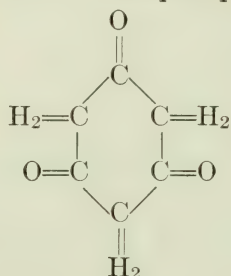
**Phloroglucinol**, or sym. (1, 3, 5)-trihydroxybenzene, may be prepared from the corresponding sulfonic acid:



It occurs in the glucoside phloridzin and in different resins.

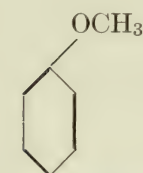
(The behavior of phloroglucinol towards reagents is worthy of discussion. That it is a trihydroxy compound is shown by the fact that it forms a triacetyl derivative with acetic anhydride.

On the other hand, it forms a trioxime with hydroxylamine, indicating a ketonic structure—compare p. 129:

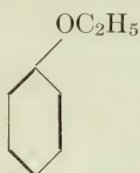


where, under certain conditions, the same compound may exist in two different forms, we have a case of **tautomerism**. This is to be distinguished from isomerism, where we have two different compounds having the same molecular formula.)

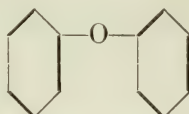
Phloroglucinol is used for the determination of furfural (p. 310)—a test based upon the production of a red color.

ETHERS <sup>1</sup>

Methyl phenyl ether  
or anisole  
or methoxybenzene

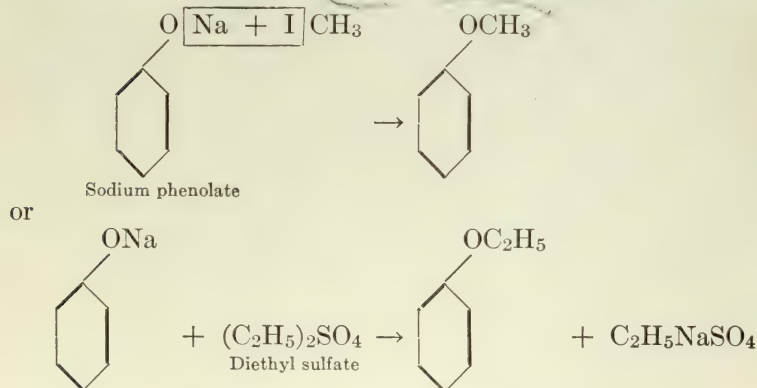


Ethyl phenyl ether  
or phenetole  
or ethoxybenzene



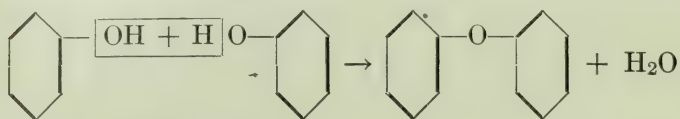
Phenyl ether  
or phenyl oxide

Ethers of the type of **anisole** and **phenetole** are produced thus:



<sup>1</sup> The student is advised to review Chap. VI, p. 64.

The phenyl ether is prepared by heating phenol with zinc chloride:



It has a geranium-like odor.

These ethers are used in synthetic perfumes.

#### READING REFERENCES

SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry. (1920), chap. 7 (Synthetic Plastics).

ELLIS—Synthetic Resins.

HARROW—Contemporary Science. (1921), pp. 152-191 (Before and After Lister). [Use of Phenol].




## CHAPTER XXV

### AROMATIC ALDEHYDES,<sup>1</sup> KETONES<sup>1</sup> AND QUINONES

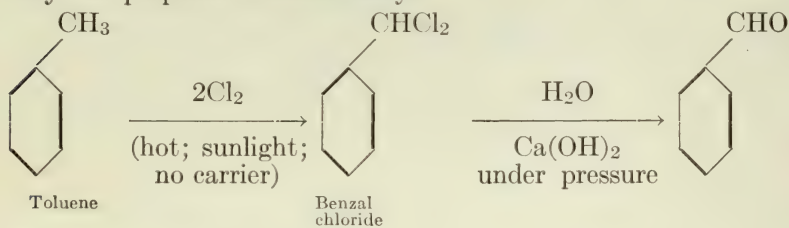
THE aromatic aldehydes and ketones contain the  $\text{—C}\begin{smallmatrix} \text{O} \\ \text{//} \\ \text{H} \end{smallmatrix}$  and  $\text{>C=O}$  groups, respectively (like the aliphatic compounds). The quinones have no analogues in the aliphatic series.

#### AROMATIC ALDEHYDES

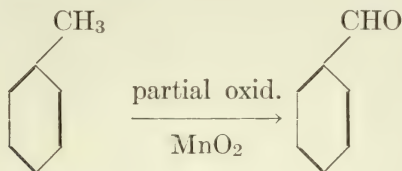
The most important aromatic aldehyde is

**Benzaldehyde,** , or phenyl formaldehyde, or benzoic aldehyde, or artificial oil of bitter almonds. This compound

may be prepared in several ways:




or



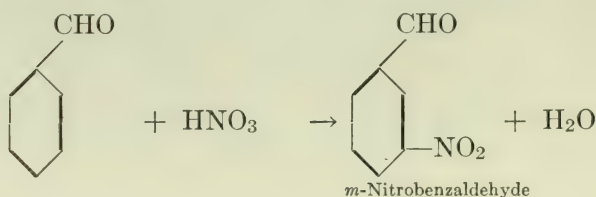
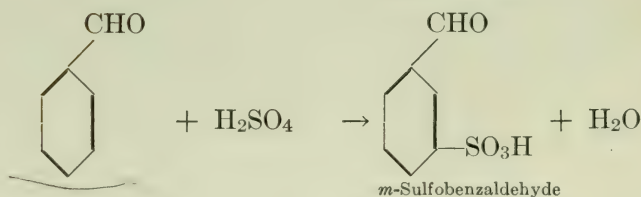
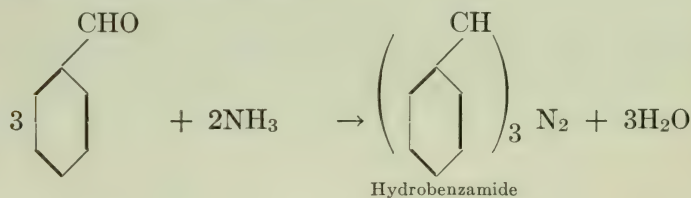
<sup>1</sup>The student should review Chap. VII, p. 67, on the aliphatic aldehydes and ketones.

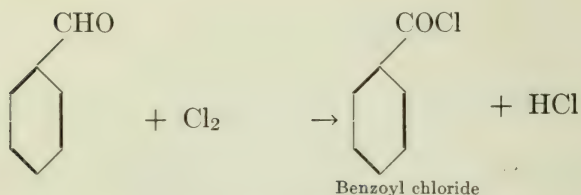
Benzaldehyde occurs in bitter almonds, the kernels of fruits, etc. In bitter almonds, the aldehyde is present in the form of a glucoside (amygdalin). An enzyme (p. 339) present in amygdalin and known as "emulsin," hydrolyzes the glucoside into glucose (hence the name "glucoside"), hydrogen cyanide and benzaldehyde. (This hydrolysis may also be brought about by means of acids.) Benzaldehyde is used extensively in flavoring extracts, perfumes, the manufacture of dyes, and in the preparation of various organic compounds.

**Properties.**—Many of the properties of benzaldehyde resemble those of the aliphatic aldehydes. When exposed to air, it is

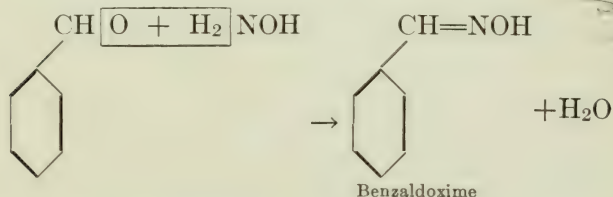
oxidized to the corresponding benzoic acid, ; it reduces

ammoniacal silver nitrate solution; it forms addition compounds with  $\text{NaHSO}_3$  and  $\text{HCN}$ ; and reacts with hydroxylamine and phenylhydrazine to form oximes and hydrazones, respectively. With ammonia, sulfuric and nitric acids, and with chlorine, the following reactions take place:

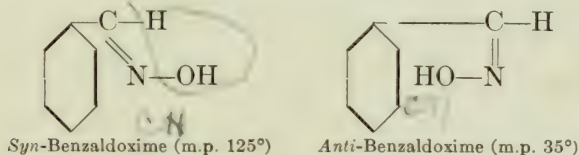




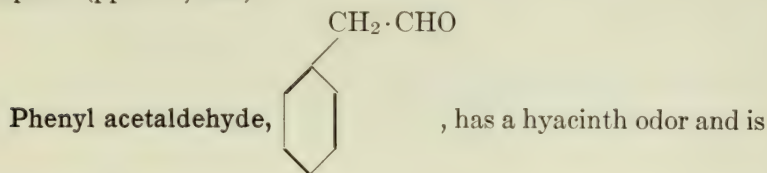
The reaction with hydroxylamine is as follows:



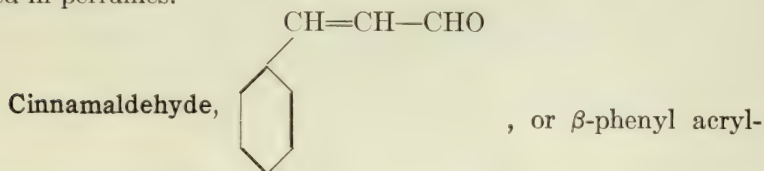
Two forms—stereoisomeric forms—p. 88, are known:



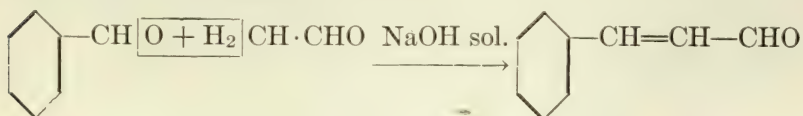
Other reactions for benzaldehyde will be given in subsequent chapters (pp. 257, 299).



used in perfumes.

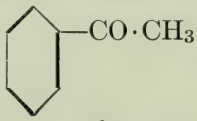


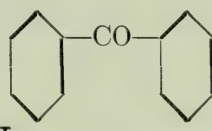
aldehyde, is the chief constituent of oil of cinnamon, and is used in perfumery. It can be synthesized by condensing benzaldehyde with acetaldehyde:






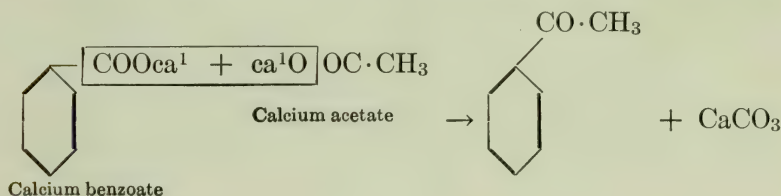
## AROMATIC KETONES

The aromatic ketones are divided into those containing aryl and alkyl groups; e.g.,  and those in which both

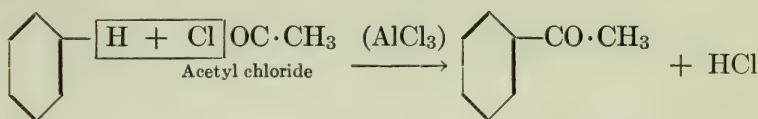
the groups are "aryl"; e.g., 

**Acetophenone**, , or methyl phenyl ketone, or "hypnone,"

is used as a soporific. It may be prepared by heating a mixture of



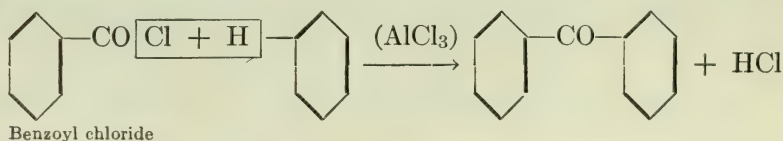
OR



The last is an application of the *Friedel-Craft's reaction*.

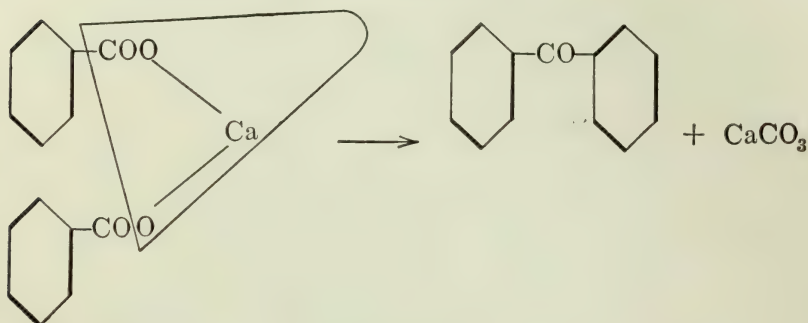
**Benzophenone**, , or diphenylketone, may be

prepared by an application of the *Friedel-Craft's reaction*:

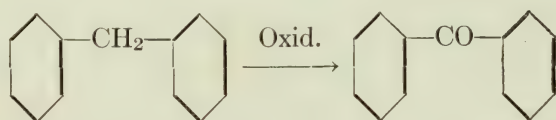


<sup>1</sup> ca here indicates  $\frac{1}{2}$  Ca.

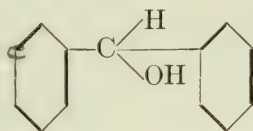
or by the distillation of calcium benzoate:



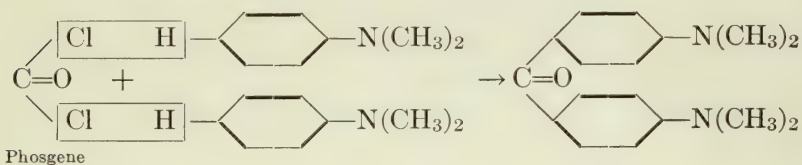
or by the oxidation of diphenylmethane:



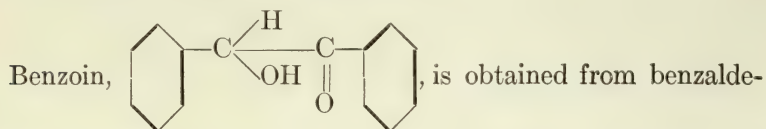
Benzophenone, when reduced, forms benzohydrol, or diphenylcarbinol:



(Michler's ketone, or *p, p'*-tetramethyldiaminodiphenyl ketone, is manufactured as follows:



It is an important dye intermediate.)

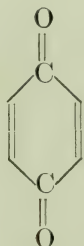


Benzoin, is obtained from benzaldehyde when treated with alcoholic KCN solution, two molecules of the former condensing (aldol condensation type, p. 76).

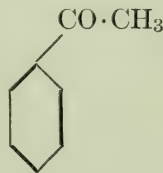
*Handwritten notes:*  
Benzoin  
Aldol Condensation

## QUINONES

The CO group in an aromatic ketone is not part of the ring. Quinones are aromatic compounds in which the CO is part of the ring; e.g.,



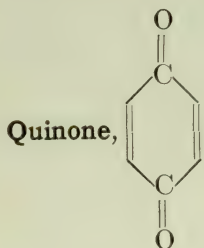
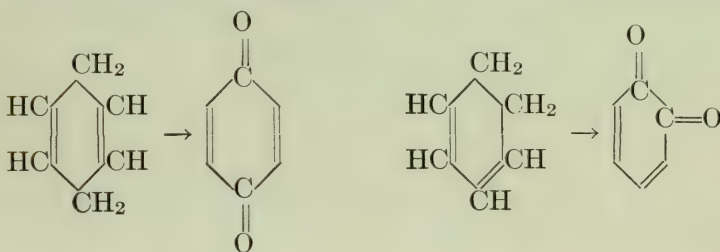
A quinone



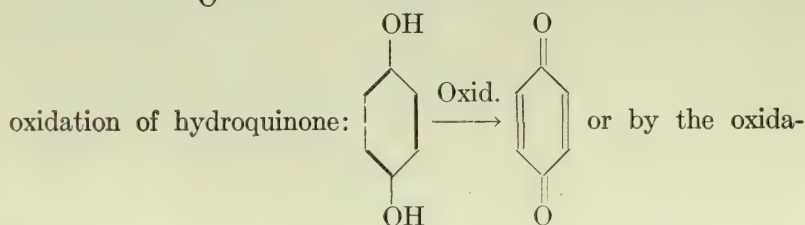
A ketone

(When the 2 CO groups are in the *p*-position with respect to one another, we get *p*-quinones, and when in the *o*-position, *o*-quinones. No *m*-quinones are known.)

The quinones may be regarded as derivatives of dihydrobenzenes in which 2(CH<sub>2</sub>) groups are replaced by 2(CO) groups:

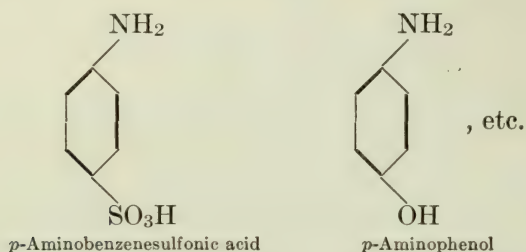


Quinone, or benzoquinone, may be prepared by the

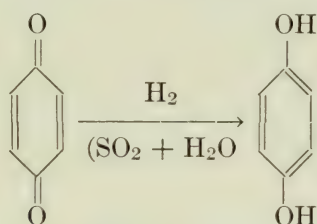




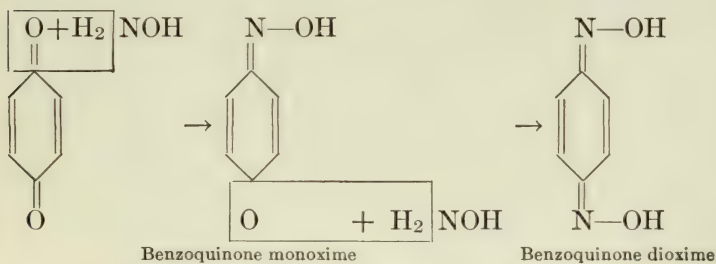
tion of aniline with  $\text{Na}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7 + \text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ; or, by oxidizing amino and hydroxy compounds belonging to the *p*-series; such as



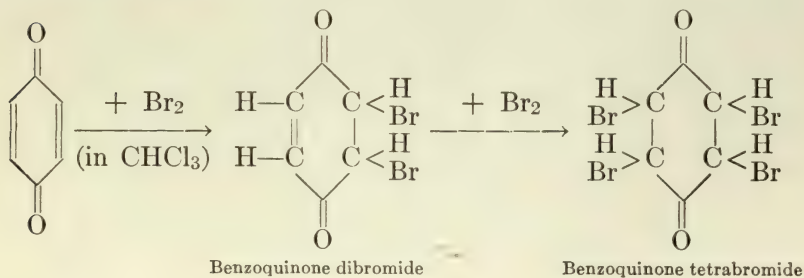
Benzoquinone is a yellow, crystalline solid, volatile with steam and possessing a pungent odor. It is reduced to hydroquinone;

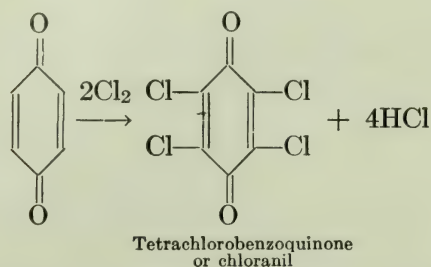


forms mono- and di- oximes:



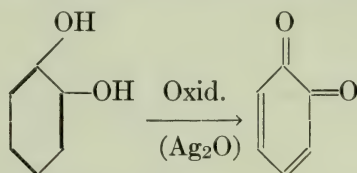
and halogen derivatives; e.g.,





(The halogen compounds as shown above illustrate either addition products within the ring—a fact which suggests that these quinones are quite unlike benzene derivatives—or substitution products.)

***o*-Benzoquinone** is prepared from catechol by oxidation:

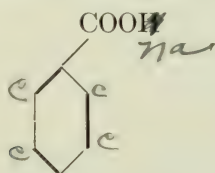


(The structure of quinones has been used to explain the chemistry of dyestuffs and the relationship between color and chemical structure. See p. 295.)

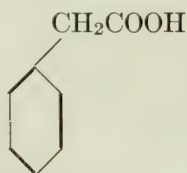
## CHAPTER XXVI

### AROMATIC ACIDS AND THEIR DERIVATIVES <sup>1</sup>

THE aromatic acids contain the COOH group attached directly to the ring or to the side-chain; e.g.,



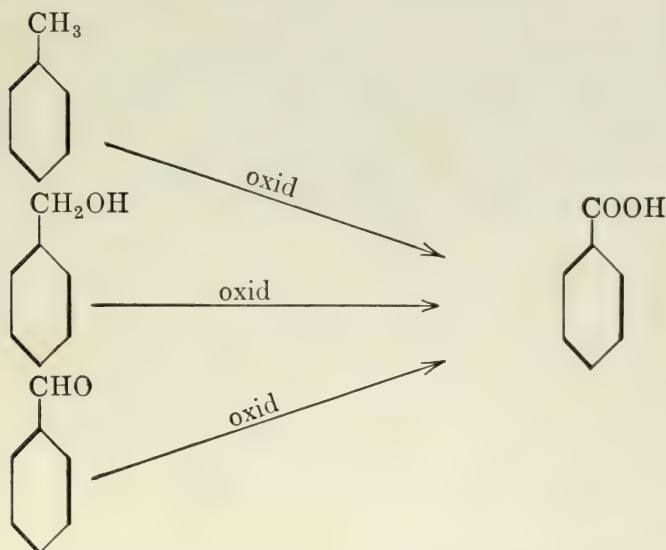
Benzoic acid or phenylformic acid



Phenylacetic acid

Many of the aromatic acids occur in nature (either in the free state or in the form of esters). We shall select benzoic acid as representative of the group.

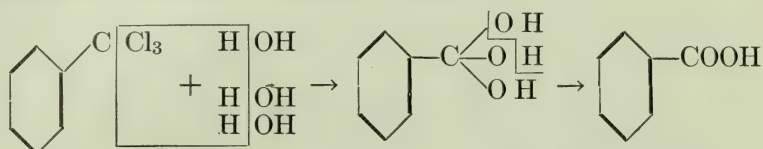
**Benzoic acid** may be prepared by the oxidation of toluene, benzyl alcohol or benzaldehyde:



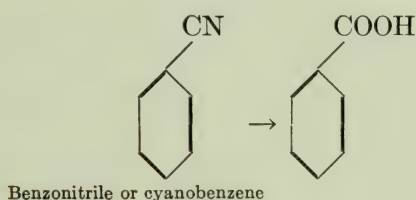
<sup>1</sup> The student should review Chaps. VIII, IX, XI, and XII.



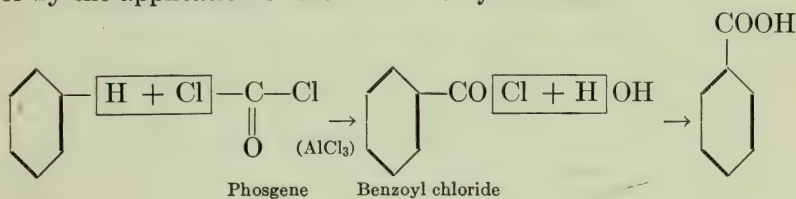
or by the hydrolysis of benzotrichloride:



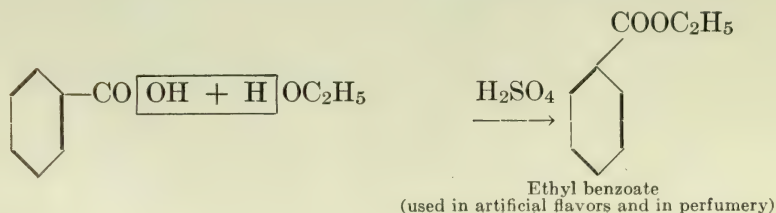
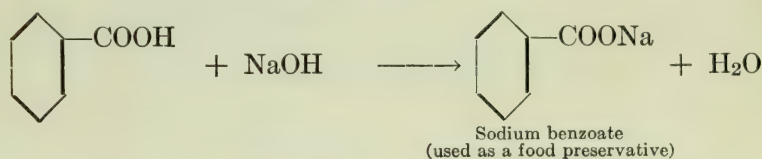
or by the hydrolysis of the corresponding cyanide:

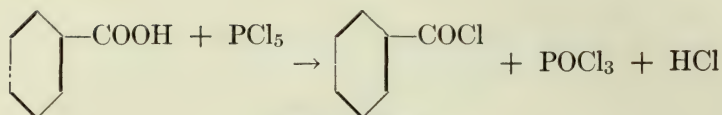


or by the application of the *Friedel-Craft's* reaction:

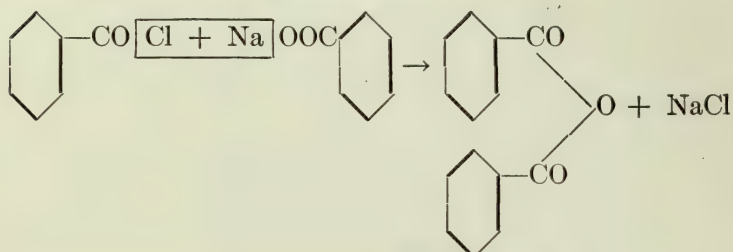


Benzoic acid occurs (as the free acid or as the ester) in gum benzoin, resins, balsams of Tolu and Peru, berries, etc. The free acid is generally purified by sublimation. Its properties are similar to those of compounds containing, on the one hand, a benzene nucleus, and on the other hand, a carboxyl group. Some of its reactions may be summarized as follows:

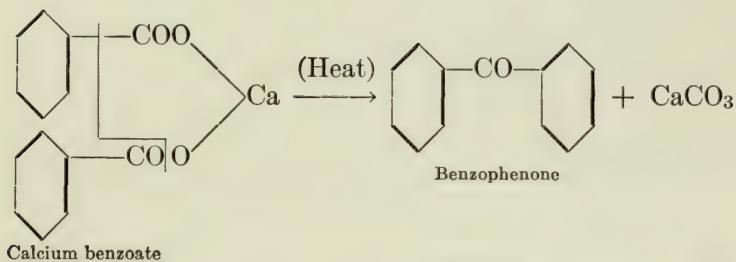




Benzoyl chloride

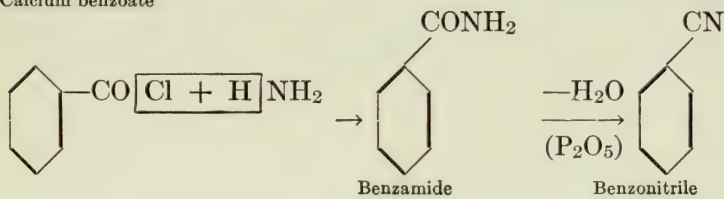


Benzoic anhydride



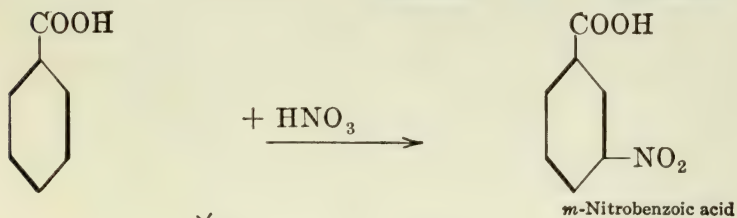
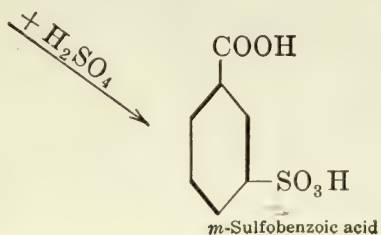
Calcium benzoate

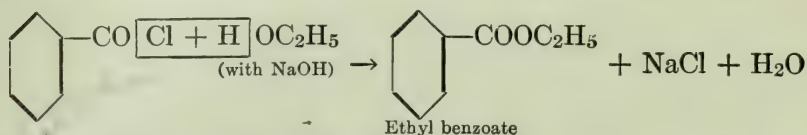
Benzophenone



Benzamide

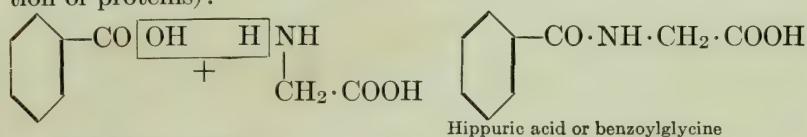
Benzonitrile

*m*-Nitrobenzoic acid*m*-Sulfobenzoic acid

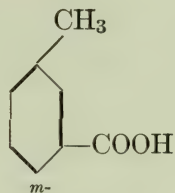
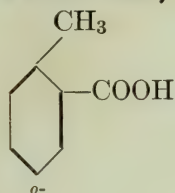


Benzoic acid itself finds use in medicine as an antiseptic and also in the manufacture of dyes. Sodium, lithium and ammonium benzoates are used as internal antiseptics. Sodium benzoate is used as a food preservative.

An interesting synthesis of hippuric acid in the body—by the kidneys—is brought about by the combination of benzoic acid (obtained from fruits, vegetables and, to some extent, proteins) and the amino acid, glycine, (obtained from the decomposition of proteins):



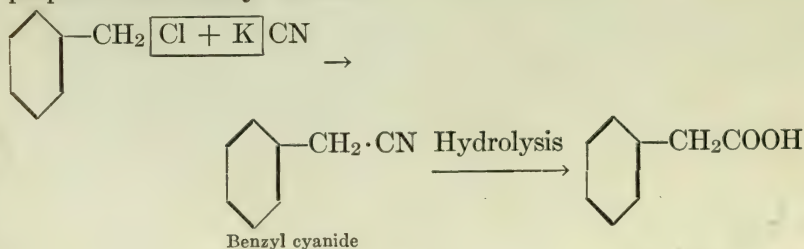
#### The toluic acids,



can be prepared by partial oxidation of the corresponding xylenes, or from the corresponding toluidines.


Phenylacetic acid,  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{CH}_2\text{COOH}$ , has its carboxyl group

in the side-chain and is isomeric with the toluic acids. It may be prepared from benzyl chloride:

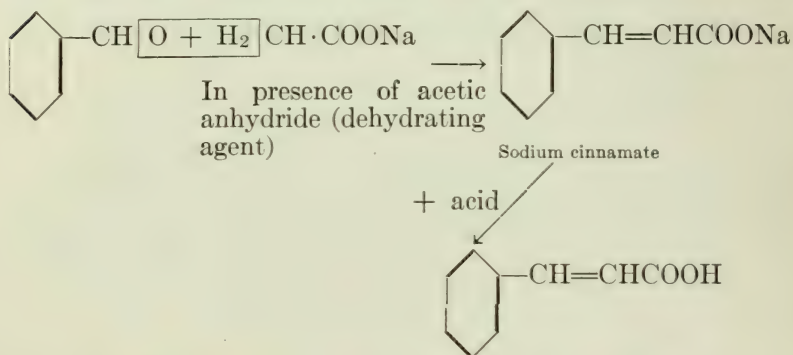





The acid and its esters are used in perfumery.

**Cinnamic acid**, , or  $\beta$ -phenylacrylic

acid, may be prepared by *Perkin's* reaction:

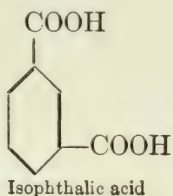
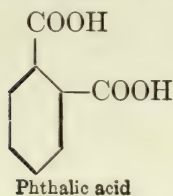


Esters of cinnamic acid and the acid itself are present in oil of cinnamon, resins, storax, balsams, gums, etc. The esters are used in flavoring materials and perfumery. The properties of cinnamic acid are those of a compound containing (a) a benzene nucleus, (b) a double bond structure, (c) a COOH group.

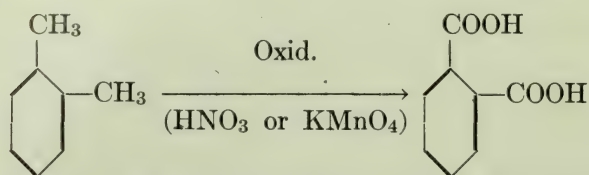
**Hydrocinnamic acid**, , or  $\beta$ -phenyl-

propionic acid, is prepared from cinnamic acid by reduction (sodium amalgam and water).

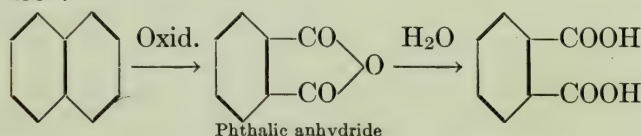
Of the **phthalic acids**,



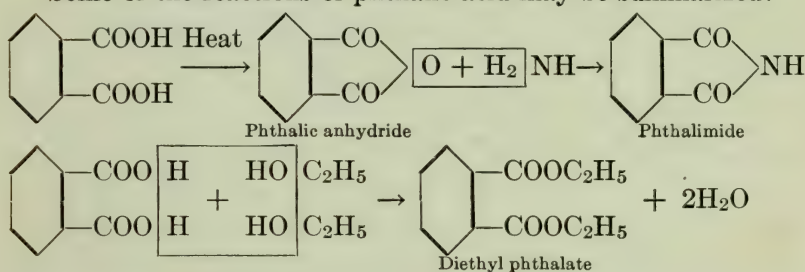
the first, or phthalic acid, is the most important. It may be prepared by oxidizing *o*-xylene:



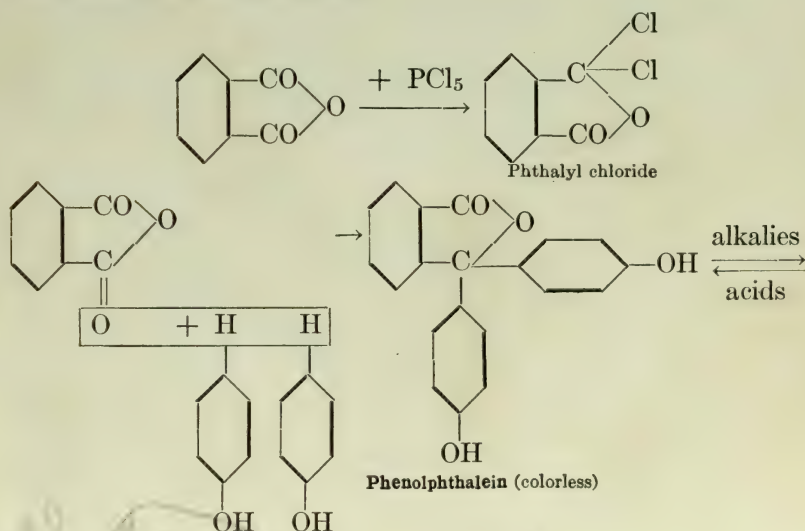
The commercial method is to pass the vapor of naphthalene and air over vanadium pentoxide ( $\text{V}_2\text{O}_5$ ) (or other catalysts) at about  $400^\circ$ :



Some of the reactions of phthalic acid may be summarized:



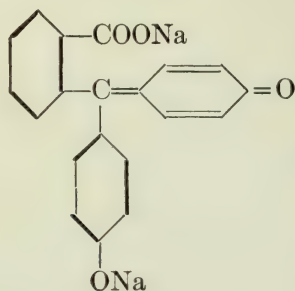
(The diethyl phthalate is a bitter substance and is used as a denaturant for ethyl alcohol.)





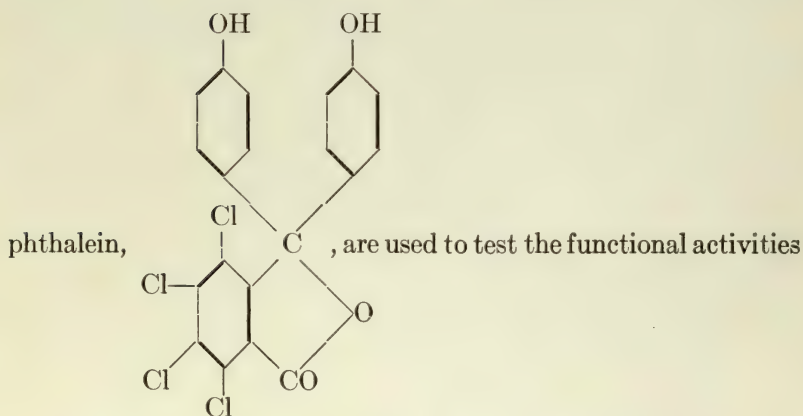
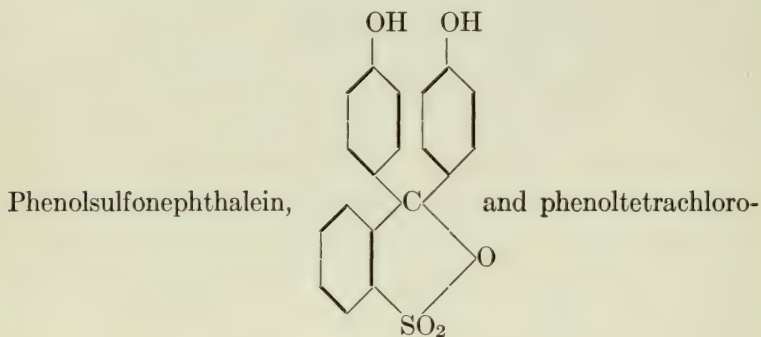
# HYDROCINNAMIC ACID

259



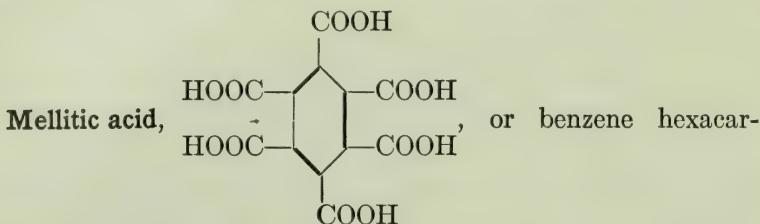
(pink)

Phenolphthalein is one of the best-known indicators. It is also used as a purgative. Phthalic anhydride is used in the manufacture of anthraquinone (p. 286), and in the manufacture of several important dyes.

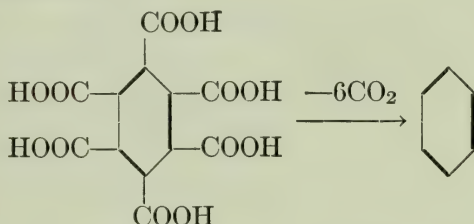


of the kidney and liver respectively.





boxylic acid, may be prepared by the oxidation of graphite with  $\text{HNO}_3$ . Its aluminium salt occurs in nature as the mineral "honey stone." When heated with soda lime, the acid is converted into benzene:



#### READING REFERENCES

- SHERWIN—The Fate of Foreign Organic Compounds—Benzoic acid, etc. —in the Body. *Physiological Reviews*, **2**, 238 (1922).  
 ANON.—Influence of Sodium Benzoate on Nutrition and Health of Man. (Agricultural Dept. Report 88.) Government Printing Office, Washington.

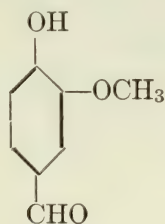
261

## CHAPTER XXVII

### ADDITIONAL AROMATIC COMPOUNDS CONTAINING MIXED GROUPS <sup>1</sup>

So far we have largely considered compounds containing single groups attached to the benzene ring, such as nitro compounds, sulfonic acids, phenols, aldehydes, etc.; and also, to some extent, a number of compounds containing dissimilar or mixed groups. In this chapter we shall consider additional compounds with unlike or mixed groups attached to the benzene ring. As thousands of such substances are known, only a few of the common and important ones can be mentioned.

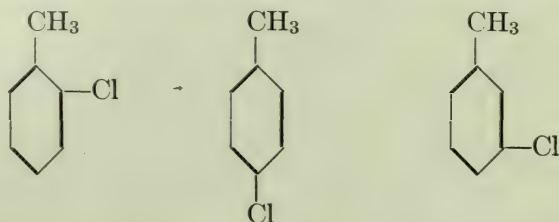
(Note to student: In studying the following compounds, the student should bear in mind that each group attached to the ring is responsible for certain characteristic reactions, and that the properties of the compound as a whole are, as a rule, the summation of properties exhibited by the individual groups present. For example, such a compound as



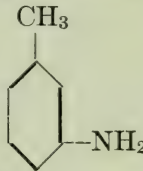
shows properties due (a) to the presence of the benzene ring, (b) to the OH group, (c) to the OCH<sub>3</sub> group and (d) to the CHO group.)

<sup>1</sup> The student is advised at this point to review the rules for substitution in the benzene ring (p. 203).

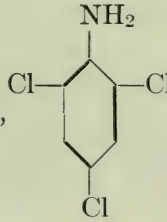
**Chlorotoluenes**, or tolyl chlorides.—Three isomers are known:



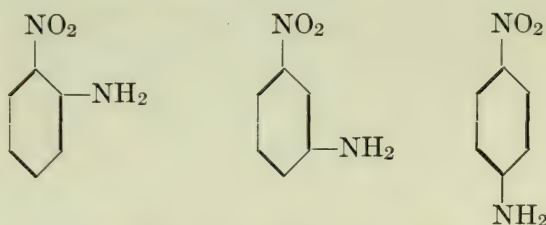
A mixture of the first two (*o*- and *p*-) is obtained when toluene is chlorinated (in presence of a halogen carrier). Direct chlorination of toluene does not yield the third, or *m*- variety; but we

may start with *m*-toluidine, , diazotize it, and apply the Sandmeyer reaction (p. 231).

Three isomeric **chloroanilines** are known. When aniline is

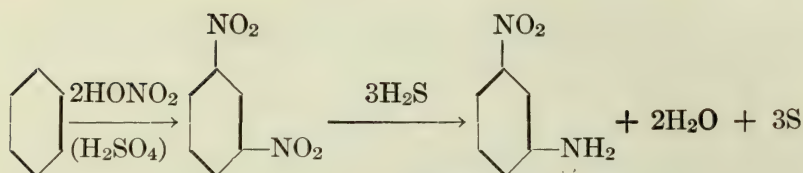
treated with chlorine, sym.-trichloroaniline, , is obtained.

Of the three **nitroanilines**

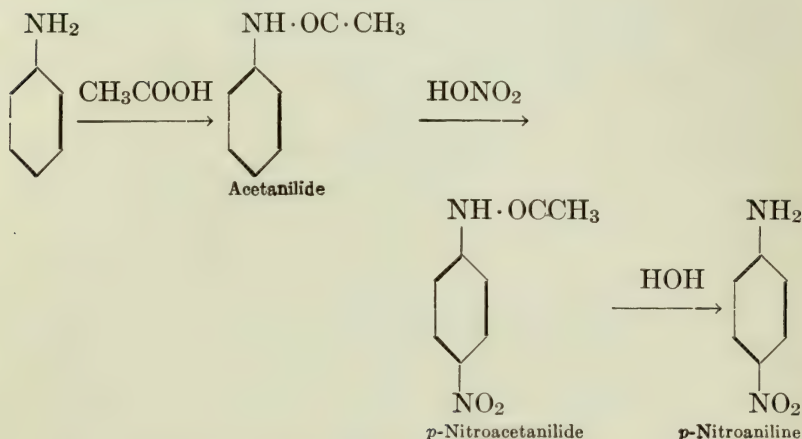


the second (*m*-variety) is prepared by treating benzene with nitric and sulfuric acids to produce the *m*-dinitrobenzene, and then employing a sufficiently mild reducing agent to reduce but one of the  $\text{NO}_2$  groups:



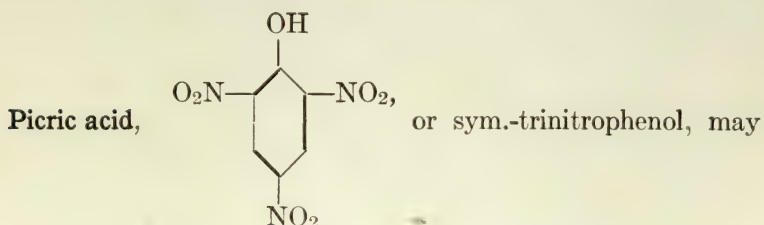
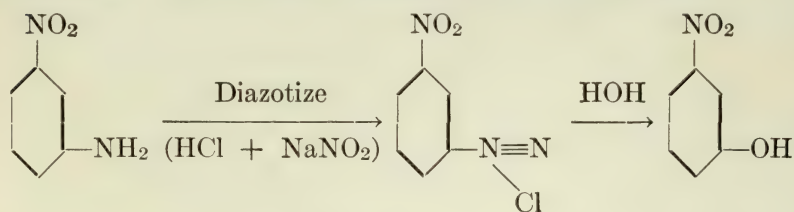


The *p*-nitroaniline is obtained as follows:

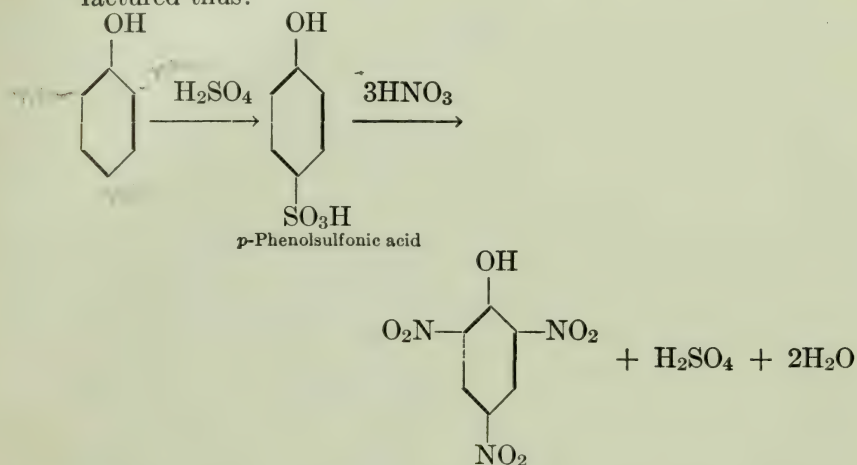


(The object of first acetylating is to "muzzle" the  $\text{NH}_2$  group; or in other words, the  $\text{NH}_2$  group must be protected against the oxidizing action of nitric acid.)

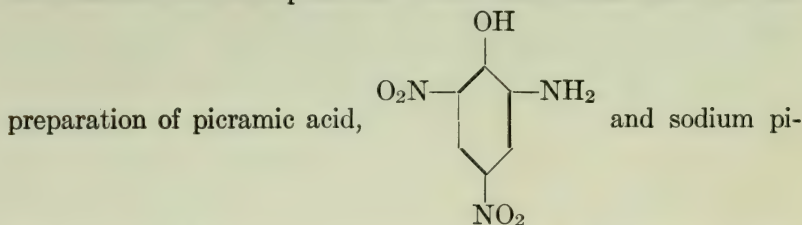
The *o*- and *p*-nitrophenols are prepared by direct nitration of phenol; the *m*- variety is prepared from *m*-nitroaniline:



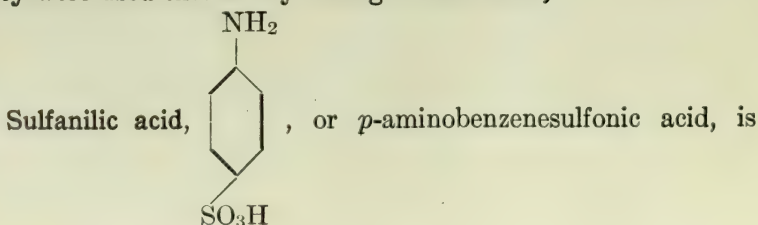
be prepared from phenol by nitration. Commercially, it is manufactured thus:



Picric acid is more strongly acidic than phenol, the increased acidity being due to the presence of the nitro groups. It is used in a colorimetric method for determining glucose in the blood, as a test for creatinine, as a precipitant for organic bases and proteins, as a "fixing" agent in histological work, in the treatment of the skin diseases and of burns, as an antiseptic, and in the manufacture of explosives. Picric acid is also used for the




cramate, which in turn are converted into several green and brown dyes. (Many of the nitro compounds of the aromatic series, such as picric acid and T.N.T.—p. 219—are powerful explosives. They were used extensively during the late war.)

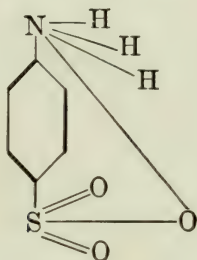


prepared from aniline by treatment with sulfuric acid, which first



forms aniline acid sulfate, , and this on heating to 180° is

converted to sulfanilic acid. The acid is used in the manufacture of several dyes. (Since this compound contains a basic—NH<sub>2</sub>— and an acidic—SO<sub>3</sub>H—group, an “inner salt,” of the type



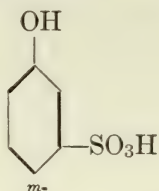
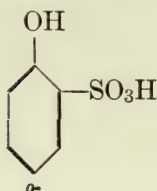
is possible. Compare with amino acids, p. 138.)



is **metanilic acid**. It is prepared by reducing

*m*-nitrobenzenesulfonic acid and is used in the preparation of azo dyes.

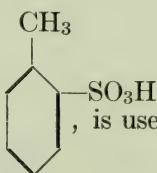
Of the **phenolsulfonic acids**,

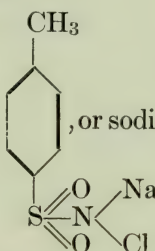


the *o*-variety is prepared by treating phenol with H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> (in the cold), the *p*-, by heating phenol with H<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub> to 96°, and the *m*-, by cautiously fusing (with NaOH) the *m*-benzenedisulfonic acid.

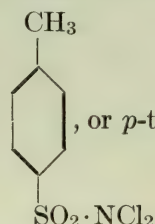


A mixture of the *o*- and *p*- is used as an antiseptic under the name "aseptol."

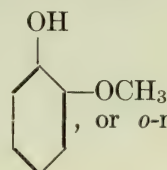
The *o*-Toluenesulfonic acid, , is used in the preparation of saccharin (p. 275).

Chloramine-T, , or sodium-*p*-toluenesulfon-*N*-chloramide

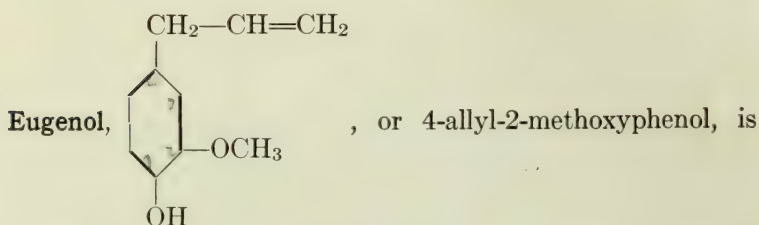
or "chorazene" (a derivative of *p*-toluenesulfonic acid), is used as an irrigating fluid in the treatment of wounds, as a mouth wash, and, in general, as an active germicide. (It has approximately four times the antiseptic value of phenol.) It was introduced by Carrel and Dakin during the late war.

Dichloramine-T, , or *p*-toluenesulfon-*N*-dichloramide, is

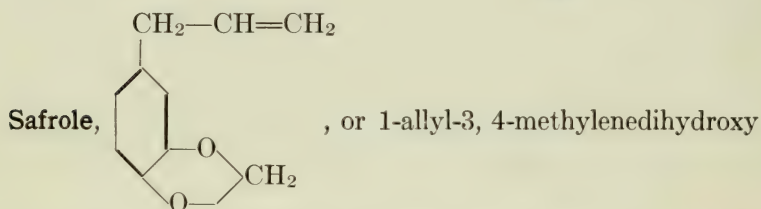
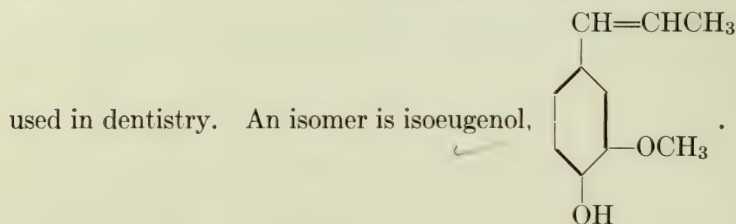
also used in the treatment of infected wounds.

Guaiacol, , or *o*-methoxyphenol, or the monomethyl

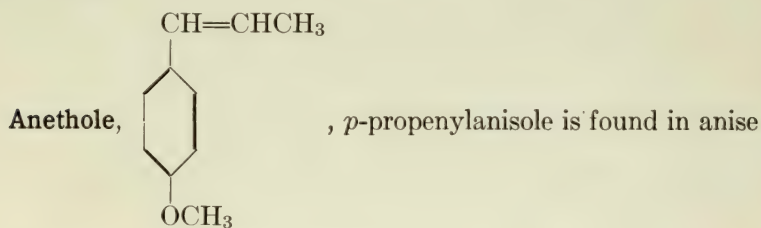
ether of catechol, is found in gum guaiacum and in beechwood tar, and is obtained from guaiac resin by distillation. (The guaiac resin, dissolved in alcohol, is the "guaiac reagent" used in tests for oxidizing enzymes, blood, milk, etc.) Guaiacol, as well as some of its salts and esters, is used as internal antiseptic.



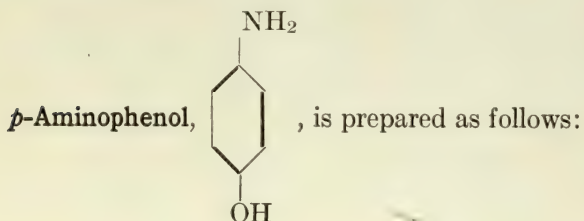
present in oil of cloves. It is an antiseptic and local anesthetic

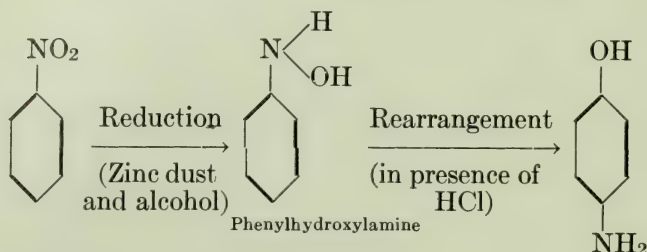


benzene is the chief constituent of oil of sassafras. It is used as an anodyne.



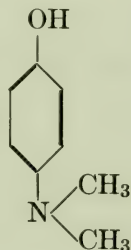
seed oil and is used as an antiseptic.



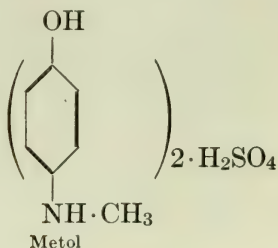
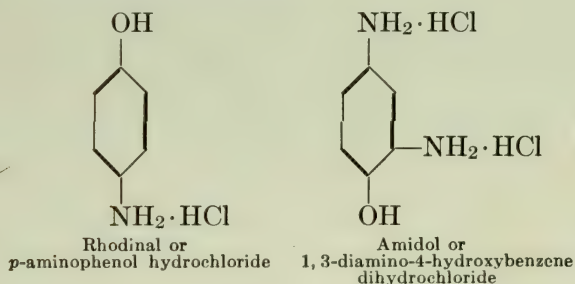


and is used as a photographic developer and in the manufacture

of such dye intermediates as *p*-hydroxydimethylaniline,

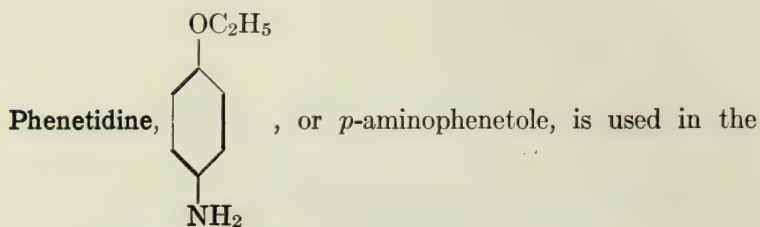


The 1, 4, or *p*-aminophenol type of compound and its derivatives make the best photographic developers. Some of the compounds used as photographic developers are:

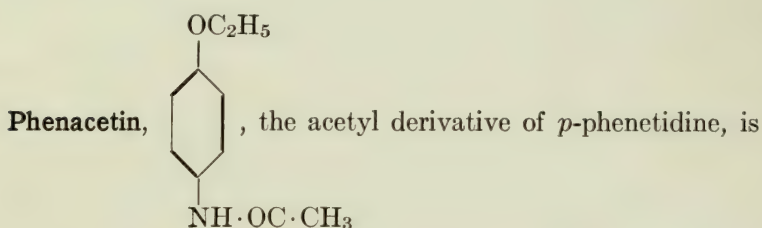


and there are number of others.

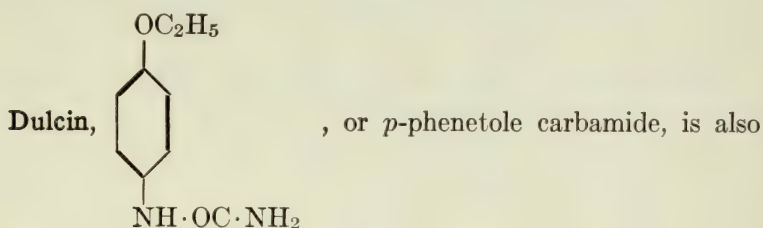




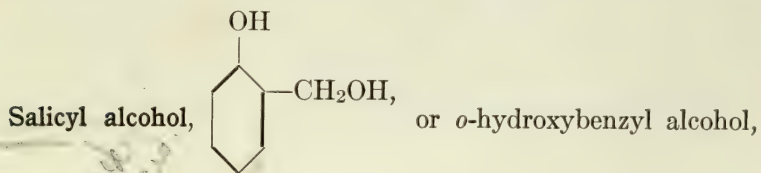
preparation of phenacetin, and often appears in the urine when phenacetin is administered.



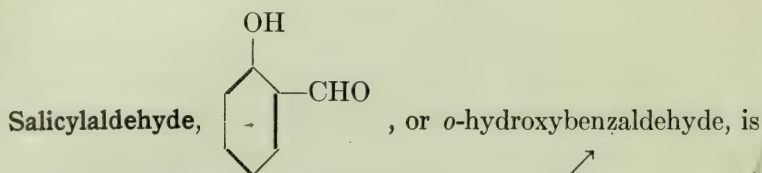
used as an antipyretic and analgesic.



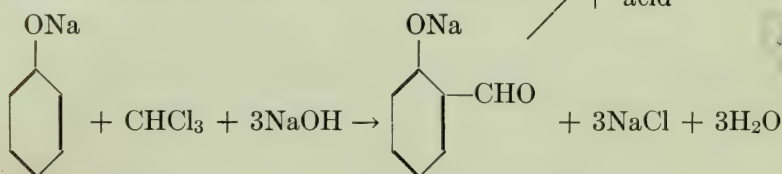
called "suerol." It is two hundred times as sweet as cane sugar.



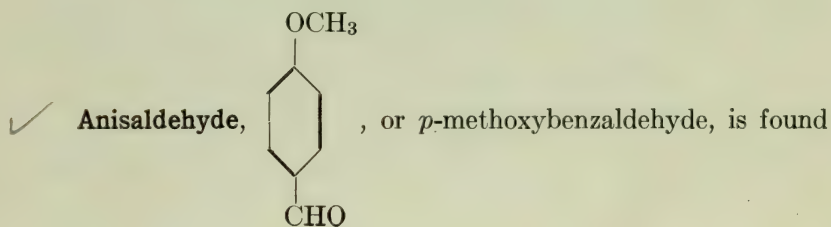
or saligenin occurs in combination with glucose in the glucoside salicin (present in willow bark). It has been recently recommended as a local anesthetic.



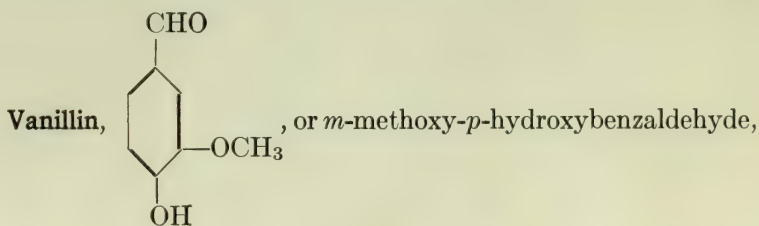
prepared by the *Reimer-Tiemann* reaction:



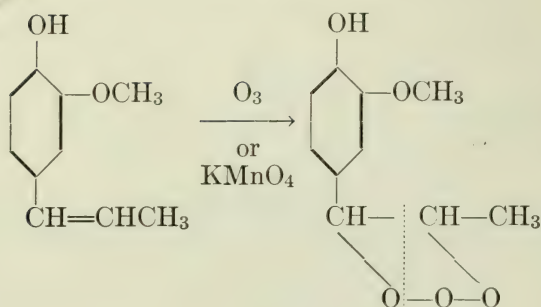
(The *p*-modification is also produced, but the *o*- and *p*- can be separated by steam distillation, the *o*- passing over with the steam.) This aldehyde occurs in oil of spiroea and oil of certain flowers and is used in perfumery and in the preparation of coumarin (p. 313).



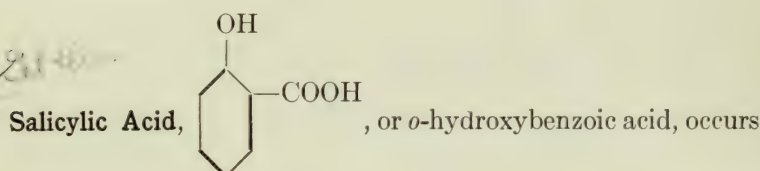
in anise seed oil and is used in perfumery.



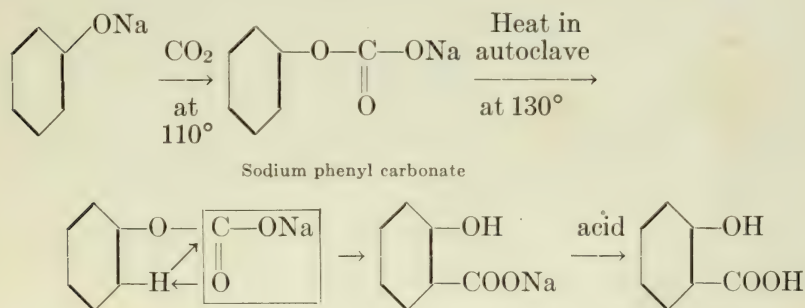
is present in vanilla bean and is the chief constituent of extract of vanilla. It is manufactured by the oxidation of isoeugenol:



and also from guaiacol by the *Reimer-Tiemann* reaction (see above). It is used in perfumery, as a flavoring agent and as a gastric stimulant.

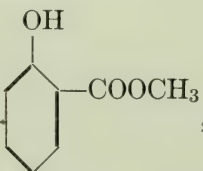


in blossoms of meadow sweet, and, as its methyl ester in oil of wintergreen. It is prepared by the *Kolbe-Schmitt* reaction:

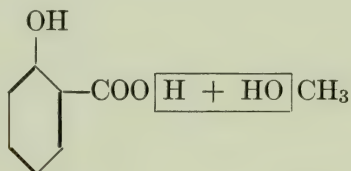


Salicylic acid is sometimes used in medicine for the treatment of rheumatic diseases, to check gastric fermentation and also as an antipyretic and intestinal antiseptic. It is most commonly administered in the form of some of its derivatives, such as salol, aspirin, sodium salicylate, strontium salicylate and methyl salicylate. It is employed to some extent in the preparation of corn cures and skin disease salves. Large quantities are used in the manufacture of dyestuffs.

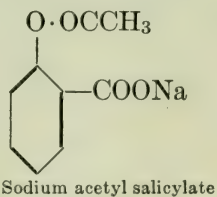
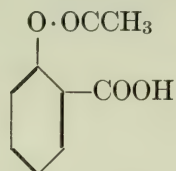
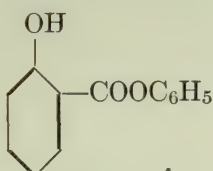
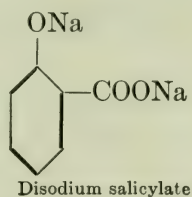
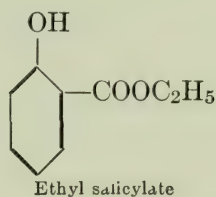
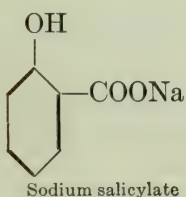


Methyl salicylate, , is the chief constituent

of "oil of wintergreen," and is the artificial oil of wintergreen. It is prepared by heating salicylic acid with methanol (esterification):

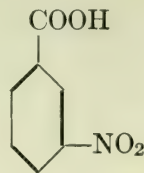
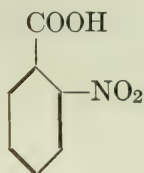


A number of the salicylates, and their derivatives, such as

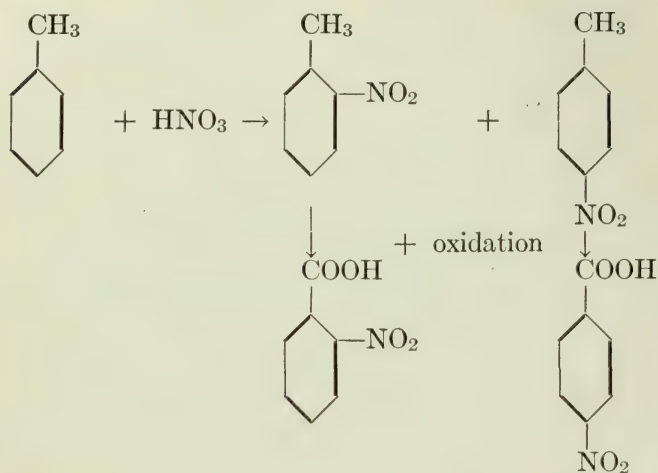


are used as intestinal antiseptics and as antipyretics.

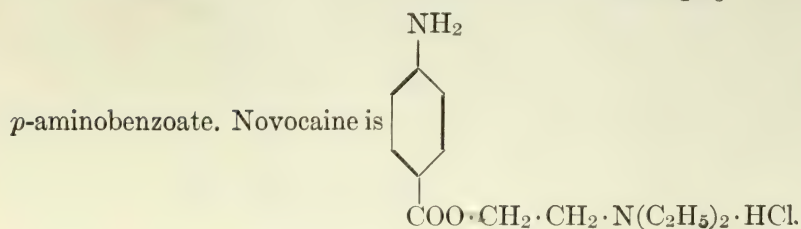
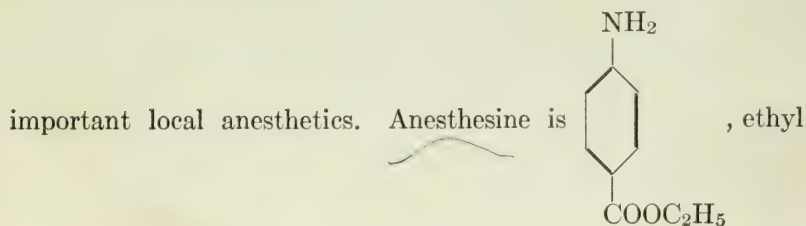
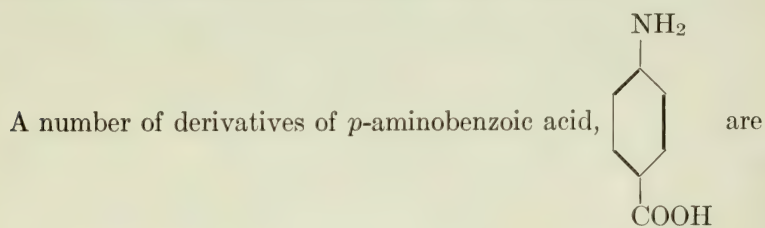
There are three isomers of **nitrobenzoic acid**:



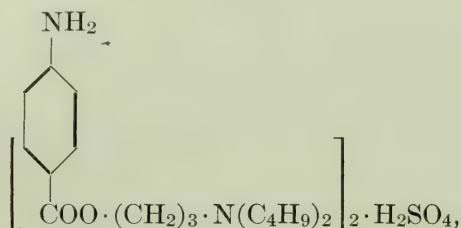
the first two being prepared from toluene; e.g.,



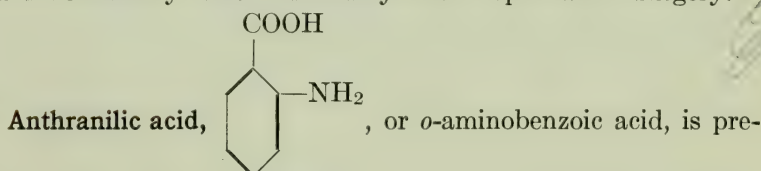
and the *m*-variety, by direct nitration of benzoic acid. On reduction they yield the corresponding amino acids.



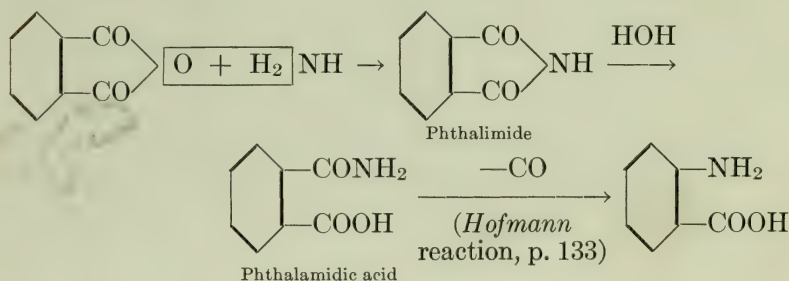
It is only one-seventh as toxic as cocaine. Procaine is another name for novocain. Butyn is




and is extensively used in dentistry and in ophthalmic surgery.

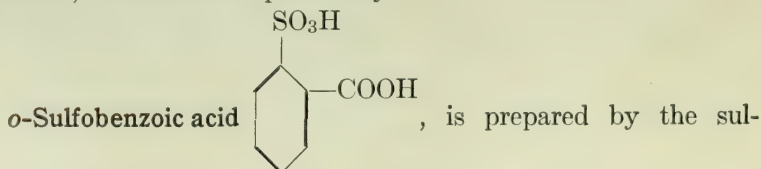


pared either from *o*-nitrobenzoic acid by reduction, or from phthalic anhydride:



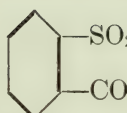
It is used as a dye intermediate and in the synthesis of indigo.

Methyl anthranilate, , is a constituent of orange blossoms, and is used in perfumery.

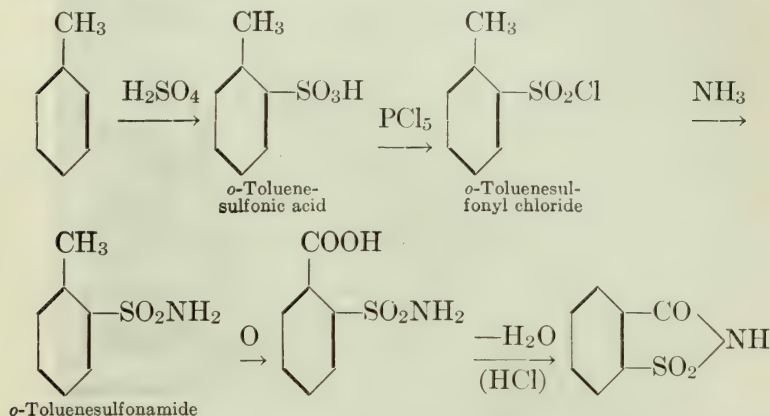


fonation of toluene and the subsequent oxidation of the CH<sub>3</sub> group.




Saccharin, , or *o*-benzoic sulfimide, may be prepared as follows:

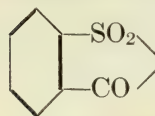
prepared as follows:



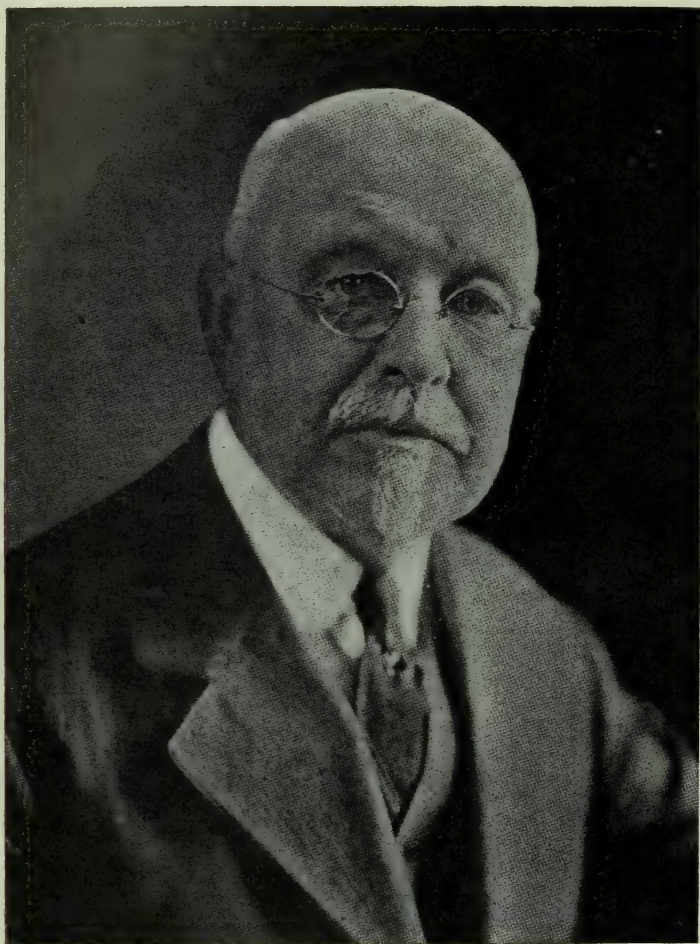
(When toluene is sulfonated a mixture of *o*- and *p*-compounds are, of course, formed. These are separated at the sulfonyl-

chloride stage  by filtering them with ice, the *p*-compound, being a solid at that temperature, remains on the filter, the *o*- going through in the form of a thick, oily liquid.)

Saccharin was first prepared by Remsen. It is said to be about 550 times as sweet as sugar, and is used as a substitute for sugar in diabetes, and as sweetening agent in mouth-washes, tooth-pastes, etc. The substance has no nutritive value. (Since saccharin itself is not very soluble in water, the sodium salt

, which is very soluble, is manufactured.)

*p*-Toluenesulfonylchloride, is employed with *p*-toluenesulfonamide as a camphor substitute. *p*-Toluenesulfonic acid is also used in the manufacture of dyes. *p*-Toluenesulfonamide is employed in the preparation of chloramine-T.

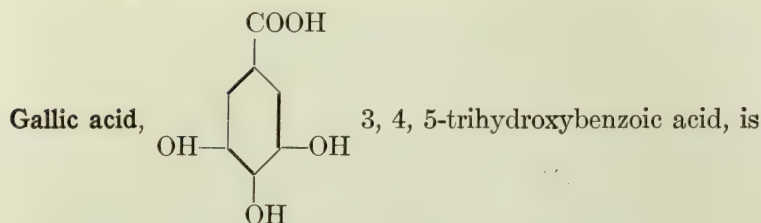


*Ira Remsen.*

IRA REMSEN (1846- )

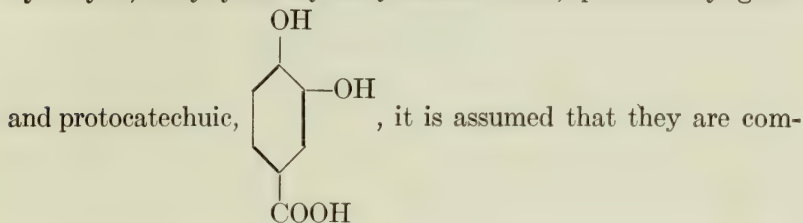
FOR MANY YEARS PROFESSOR OF ORGANIC CHEMISTRY AT JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY (AND LATER ITS PRESIDENT), IS BEST KNOWN FOR HIS WORK ON SACCHARIN (p. 275) AND AS THE AUTHOR OF TEXT-BOOKS ON ORGANIC CHEMISTRY HE HAS DONE MUCH TO FURTHER RESEARCH IN ORGANIC CHEMISTRY IN THIS COUNTRY.





found free, or as a glucoside in a number of plants (sumach, gall nuts, etc.), and may also be obtained by hydrolyzing tannins with acid. When heated,  $\text{CO}_2$  is evolved and pyrogallie acid is formed (p. 242). Gallic acid is used in photography, ink and as an astringent.

**Tannic acids.**—These acids are found in gall nuts and other plants. Their exact constitution is not known, but since, on hydrolysis, they yield hydroxybenzoic acids, particularly gallic



plex anhydrides of such acids.

The mother substances of these tannic acids are tannins, which are glucosides. (The names "tannic acid" and "tannins" are commonly used interchangeably.) These tannins are found in gall nuts, oak, chestnut, pine, hemlock, etc. They give characteristic blue-black or green-black colors with ferric chloride and are valuable astringents. They precipitate proteins and alkaloids. They are largely employed in the making of leather, as mordants in dyeing, and in the manufacture of inks.

#### READING REFERENCES

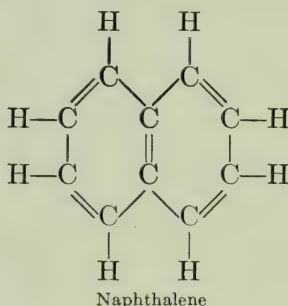
- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), chap. 22 (Drugs).  
 FISCHER—Synthesis of Depsides, Lichen Substances and Tannins. *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, **36**, 1170 (1914).  
 HARROW—Eminent Chemists of Our Time. (1920), pp. 197-216 (Remsen).  
 BROWN—Forest Products. (1919), chap. 3 (Tanning).  
 CLARK—Applied Pharmacology. (1923), pp. 80-84 (The Action of Salicylates).



## CHAPTER XXVIII

### NAPHTHALENE, ANTHRACENE AND THEIR DERIVATIVES

So far we have considered aromatic compounds containing the benzene nucleus; but now we begin to discuss compounds containing two or more condensed benzene rings, in which—to take an example—two carbon atoms are common to both rings:




Naphthalene and anthracene are the most important of such compounds.

**Naphthalene.**—This hydrocarbon is obtained from coal tar in the fraction distilling over between 170–230° (middle or carbolic oil fraction. See chart facing p. 199); the crude product so obtained is purified by sublimation. Naphthalene crystallizes in lustrous plates, having a m.p. of 80° and a b.p. of 218°. It is very volatile and has a characteristic odor. It is used in the preparation of naphthalene compounds, in moth-balls, as an insecticide and germicide, in the manufacture of phthalic anhydride (p. 258), and dye intermediates (p. 316).

Naphthalene has the formula  $C_{10}H_8$  and on oxidation yields

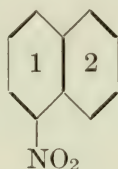
phthalic acid,  $\text{COOH}$   
 $\text{COOH}$ , which proves the hydrocarbon to

contain a benzene ring, as well as some side-chains containing two carbon atoms in the *o*-position with respect to one another. That the actual constitution of naphthalene corresponding to

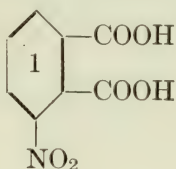
$C_{10}H_8$  is  or two condensed benzene rings, is suggested

by a number of reactions, of which two will be mentioned.

Naphthalene, like benzene, can be readily nitrated, yielding nitronaphthalene, and the latter reduced, giving aminonaphthalene. When nitronaphthalene is oxidized, we get nitrophthalic acid, but when aminonaphthalene is oxidized, we do not get aminophthalic acid, but just phthalic acid. If we write the structure for nitronaphthalene as



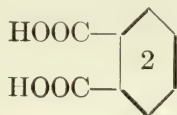
then it is plain that on oxidation, ring (2) must be oxidized to yield nitrophthalic acid



whereas if we write aminonaphthalene as



then it is equally evident that ring (1) must here be oxidized to yield phthalic acid

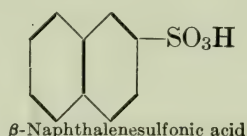
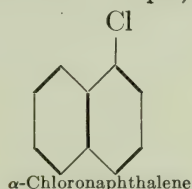


Obviously, then, there must be two benzene rings in naphthalene—two benzene rings having two carbon atoms in common.

Naphthalene has 8 replaceable hydrogen atoms:

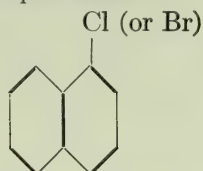


Since the molecule is symmetrical in structure, positions 1, 4, 5 and 8 are identical, and positions 2, 3, 6 and 7 are identical. We, therefore, have two possible monosubstitution products, a substituent at position 1 (or 4, 5, 8) being known as  $\alpha$ - (*alpha*), and a substituent at position 2 (or 3, 6, 7) being known as  $\beta$ - (*beta*). For example,



With disubstitution products, where the substituents are the same, 10 isomers are possible: 1:2, 1:3, 1:4, 1:5, 1:6, 1:7, 1:8, 2:3, 2:6, 2:7; but where they are dissimilar, 14 isomers become possible. Many substitution products and derivatives of naphthalene are manufactured, since they are used as dye intermediates, but only a few of these will be discussed here.

$\alpha$ -Chloro (or bromo) naphthalene

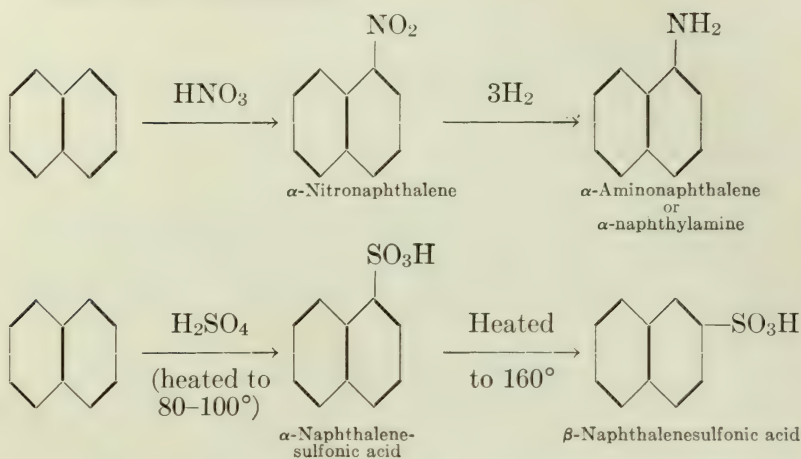


is prepared by the direct action of chlorine (or bromine) on boiling naphthalene. (The  $\beta$ -chloro—or bromonaphthalene—is prepared by indirect methods.) On the other hand, when chlorine (from potassium chlorate and HCl) is allowed to act on the hydro-

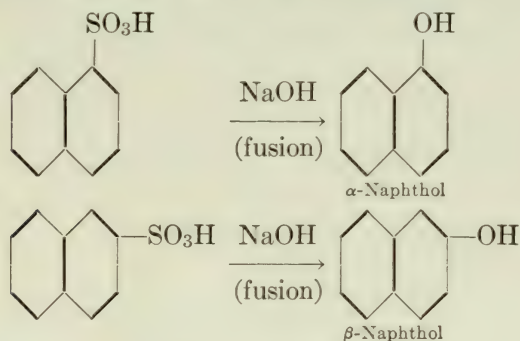
carbon, naphthalene tetrachloride, an addition product is obtained.



Some other reactions are:

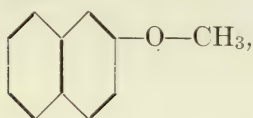


The sulfonic acids are used in the manufacture of naphthols:



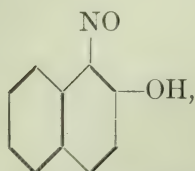
These reactions, it will be noticed, are entirely analogous to the preparation of phenol from benzenesulfonic acid (see p. 237). The naphthols are very important dye intermediates.  $\alpha$ -naphthol is also used to test for the presence of carbohydrates (p. 164).

$\beta$ -naphthol is employed internally as an intestinal antiseptic, and externally, in the form of ointment, for the treatment of skin diseases.



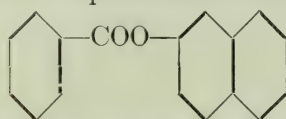
$\beta$ -naphthyl methyl ether is known as

synthetic "yara-yara" and is used in perfumery. The  $\beta$ -naphthyl ethyl ether is known as synthetic "nerolin" and is also used in perfumery.

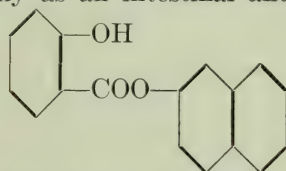


$\alpha$ -nitroso- $\beta$ -naphthol is used to determine

cobalt in quantitative analysis.

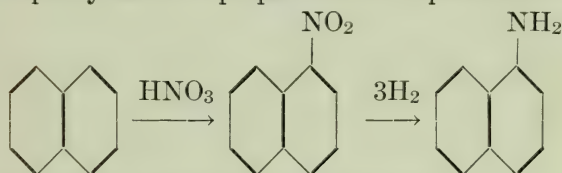


,  $\beta$ -naphthyl benzoate is used internally as an intestinal antiseptic in diarrhea and typhoid fever.

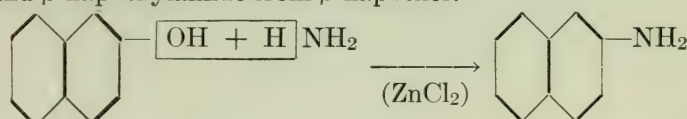


,  $\beta$ -naphthyl salicylate is useful in intestinal fermentations.

$\alpha$ -Naphthylamine is prepared from naphthalene:



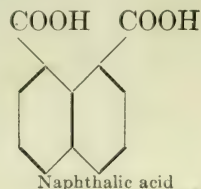
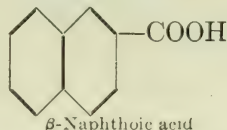
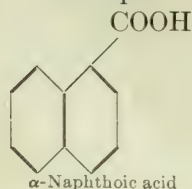
and  $\beta$ -naphthylamine from  $\beta$ -naphthol:



The  $\beta$ -naphthylamine may also be obtained by heating  $\beta$ -naphthol with ammonium chloride and NaOH in an autoclave at  $160^\circ$ . The naphthylamines are used extensively for the manufacture of dye intermediates and azo dyes (p. 299).

(Just as the  $\text{NH}_2$  group in aniline, etc., can be diazotized—see p. 229—so can the  $\text{NH}_2$  group in naphthalene compounds.)

Examples of acids derived from naphthalene are:



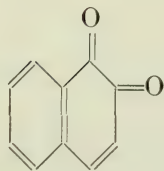
*naphthyl*

*Sulfonated 20-100%  
Sulfonated 10-15%  
Sulfonated 5-10%  
Sulfonated 2-5%*

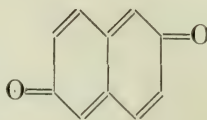
and of quinones:



$\alpha$ -Naphthoquinone



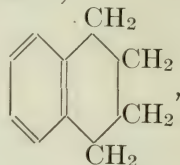
$\beta$ -Naphthoquinone



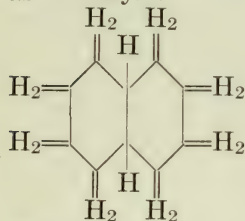
Amphi-Naphthoquinone

(The  $\alpha$ -variety may be prepared by oxidizing naphthalene with chromic acid in the presence of glacial acetic acid.)

("Tetralin," or naphthalene tetrahydride,



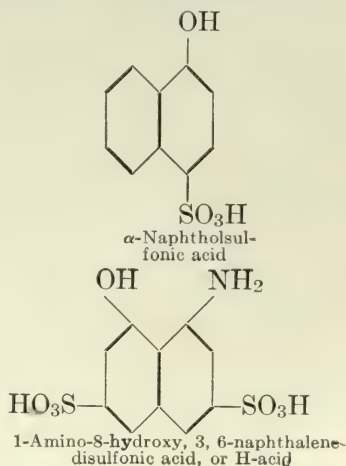
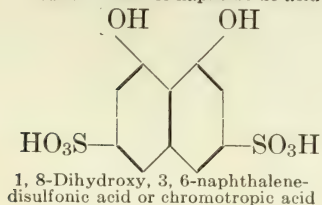
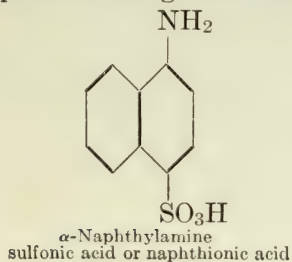
which has been suggested as a motor fuel and solvent, is prepared by reducing naphthalene with hydrogen in the presence of nickel as catalyst. A somewhat similar compound, "decalin,"



, has also been suggested as motor fuel and

solvent.

Many dye intermediates containing different substituents in the naphthalene ring are manufactured. A few of these are:

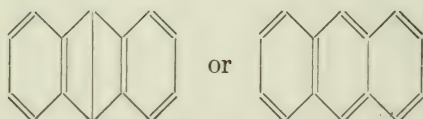




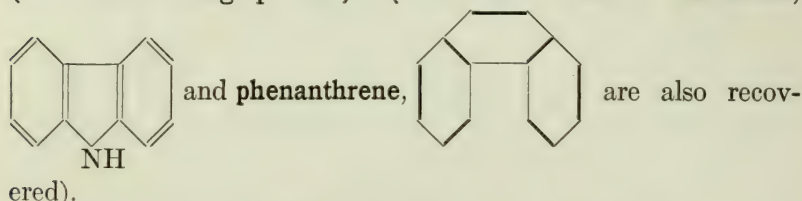
The following chart shows the position of entering substituents in the naphthalene ring.  
If a hydrogen atom in naphthalene is replaced

by	Cl	Br	OH	OR	NO <sub>2</sub>	NH <sub>2</sub>	NHR	SO <sub>3</sub> H	CN	COOH
in the position	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2	1 2
the new group enters in the position										
Cl	4	4	2?	1				1	5 5or8	5
Br	4 5or8	4 5	1		5or8		4	1	5	5
NO <sub>2</sub>	4	4 8	2	1 4	5 8	5 8	2 4	4 5 8	5 ?	5 8 ?
SO <sub>3</sub> H under 100°	4 5	4 ? 8	2 4	6 8	5 6 7	4 5 8		5 6	5 ?	α β β
SO <sub>3</sub> H above 100°	5	6	2	6 7		6 7		5 6 7		
NO			2 4	1						
COOH			2	1 3						

**Anthracene**,  $C_{14}H_{10}$ , or

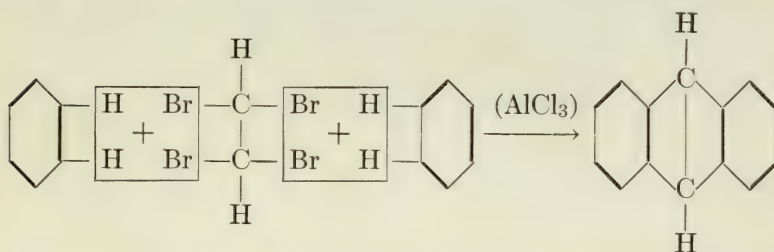


is separated from coal tar in the fraction which boils over  $270^\circ$  (see chart facing p. 199). (From this fraction **carbazole**,

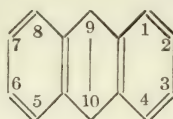


The process by which this hydrocarbon is purified is a rather laborious one. The final purification is carried out by sublimation with superheated steam (m.p.  $216^\circ$ , b.p.,  $360^\circ$ ). Anthracene comes in the form of colorless, glistening leaflets, having a blue fluorescence. It is used in the manufacture of anthraquinone and its derivatives.

The structure of anthracene has been confirmed by a number of syntheses of the compound, one of which will be given: In the presence of  $AlCl_3$ , two molecules of benzene combine with one molecule of tetrabromoethane to form anthracene (*Friedel-Craft's reaction*.)

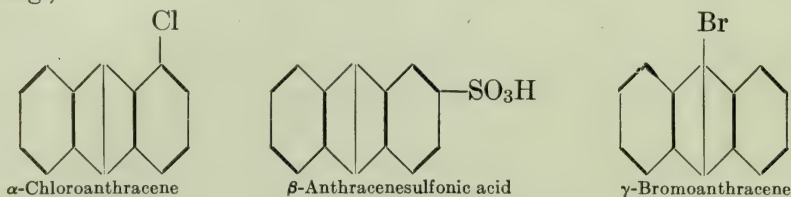


The positions of the replaceable hydrogen atoms are numbered thus:

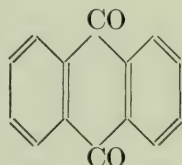


and from its structure it may be seen that positions **1, 4, 5 and 8** bear exactly the same relationship to the molecule. This is also

true of positions 2, 3, 6 and 7, and of 9 and 10. There are possible, therefore, three mono-substitution products; 1, 4, 5 or 8—being known as  $\alpha$ -; 2, 3, 6 or 7, as  $\beta$ ; and 9 or 10 as  $\gamma$  (gamma); e.g.,



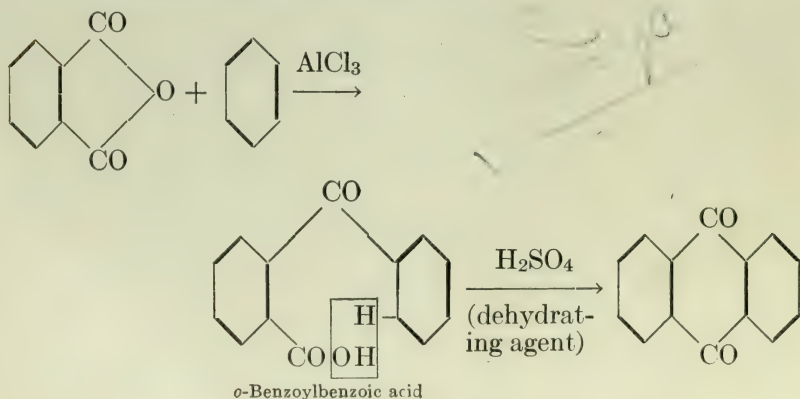
The most important derivative of anthracene is anthraquinone,



which is prepared from anthracene by oxidation with chromic acid ( $\text{Na}_2\text{Cr}_2\text{O}_7$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ).

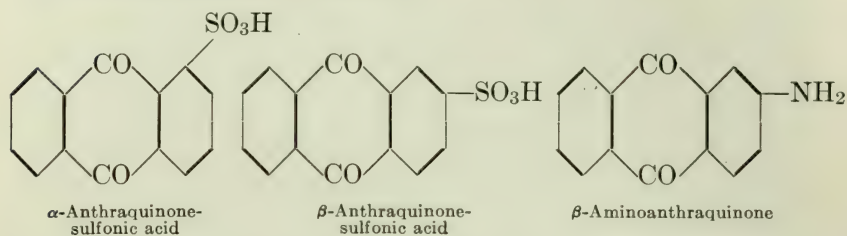
(Nitric acid does not give rise to nitro-derivatives with anthracene, but converts it to anthraquinone—an indication that the central nucleus in anthracene is somewhat different from the two outer benzene nuclei.)

Anthraquinone is manufactured on a large scale, for it is used in the manufacture of dyes (such as alizarin) and dye intermediates. It is synthetically produced from phthalic anhydride by condensing the latter with benzene.

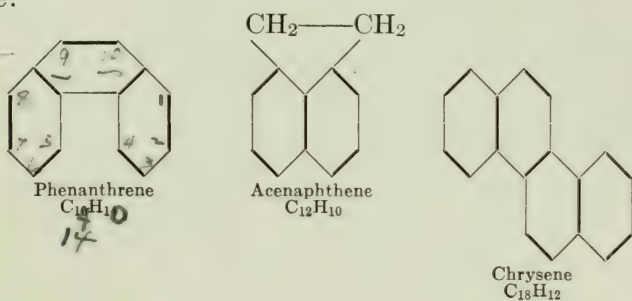




A number of other important anthraquinone derivatives used in the manufacture of dyes are:



A few other condensed ring compounds obtained from coal tar are:



READING REFERENCE

BARNETT—Anthracene and Anthraquinone.

CHAPTER XXIX  
DYES AND STAINS

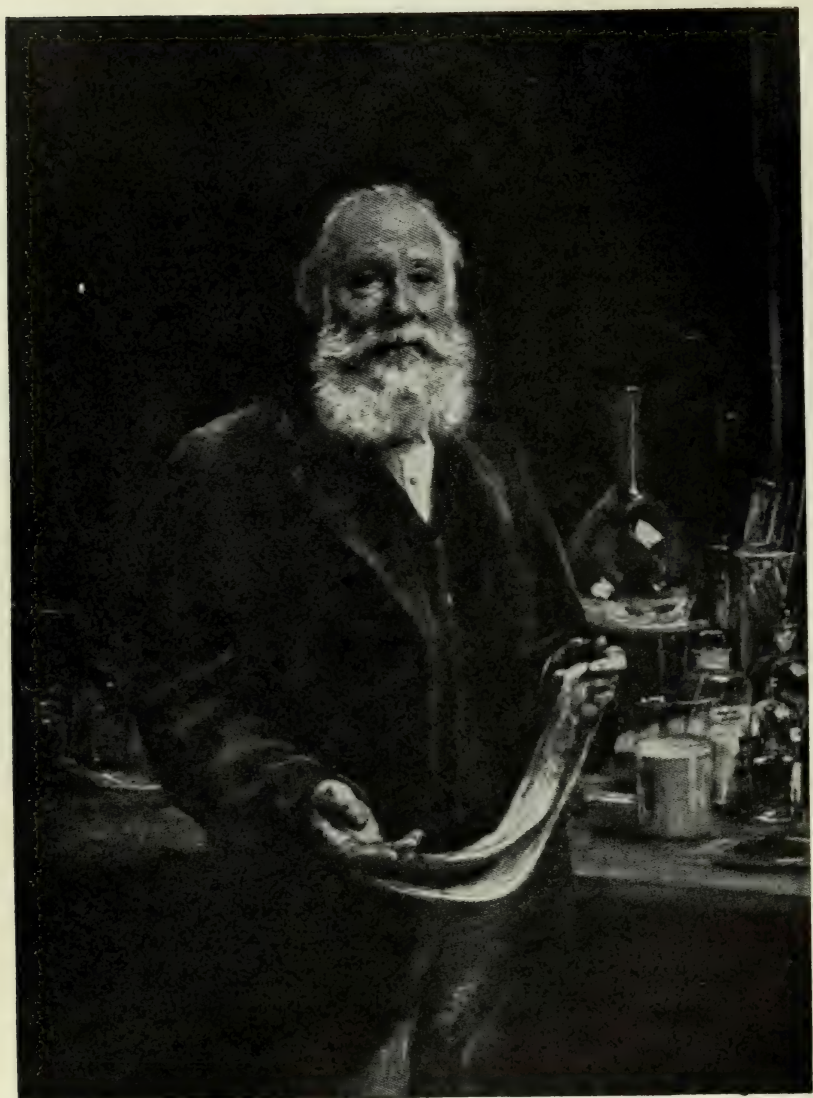
DYES

DYES have a wide application. They are applied to cotton, linen, silk, wool, paper, straw, wood, leather, feathers, hair, fats, waxes, soaps, inks, food, condiments (jams, macaroni, candy), varnishes, paints, etc. In analytical chemistry, dyes are used as indicators (e.g., phenolphthalein, congo red, methyl orange). In histology and bacteriology, they are used for staining microscopical preparations (e.g., methylene blue, acid fuchsin, safranine, eosin, gentian violet, neutral red, Bismarck brown). Dyes are also used as explosives (picric acid, picrates, trinitrocresols, etc.); in photography (eosin, erythrosin, etc.); as antiseptics (acriflavine, proflavine, malachite green, etc.).

Dyes have been used from the very earliest times. Until the middle of the last century, those used for dyeing and printing were the vegetable dyes, coloring substances from certain insects (as cochineal) and mulloes, and a number of mineral colors. In 1856, Perkin, in attempts to prepare quinine artificially, found that aniline (a coal tar product) could be oxidized with chromic acid to yield a violet dye, to which was given the name "mauve." This was the first coal tar dye to be prepared, but since then no less than 3000 dyes derived from coal tar products have appeared on the market.

The dyes, then, may be either "natural" or "artificial." Among the former are logwood, fustic, Brazil wood, turmeric, natural indigo, etc., and they still find uses. The artificial dyes, however, play a much more important part in the industries. The ones of particular value are "fast" to light, rubbing and washing.

Dyes are also classified in accordance with their behavior towards fabrics as "substantive" or "direct" and "adjective"



WILLIAM HENRY PERKIN (1838-1907)

PREPARED THE FIRST COAL-TAR DYE, "MAUVE" (P. 288), AND IS THEREFORE  
CALLED THE "FATHER" OF THE COAL TAR DYE INDUSTRY.



or "mordant" dyes. The "direct" dye can be applied directly (without a mordant) to the fabric, usually silk or wool. The "adjective" or "mordant" dye needs a "go-between"—a third substance which attaches itself to the fabric on the one hand, and the dye on the other; this third substance is the "mordant"—"bite into"—(e.g., various aluminium, chromium and iron salts, tannic acid, etc.). The combination of a mordant and a dye is known as a color "lake," the color of the "lake" varying with the type of mordant used. By using different mordants with the same dye, various colored lakes are produced. "Mordant" dyeing is mainly used for cotton goods. (In "direct" dyeing, the fabric is immersed directly in the prepared dye bath, heated to the required temperature, and agitated for a certain length of time.)

We cannot in this volume go into the various theories which have been suggested to explain the process of dyeing, beyond merely enumerating them: the chemical theory—a combination of the dye with the components of the fabric or certain constituents of the cell; the mechanical theory, based on adsorption; the solution theory, somewhat like the solution of one metal in another, as in an alloy; and the colloid theory, based on the colloidal properties of the reacting substances.

From the practical standpoint, the classification of dyes depends upon their behavior towards fibers.

The dyes are divided into:

(1) *Acid dyes*, which include nitro compounds and the sodium salts of sulfonic and carboxylic acids. These are direct dyes for wool and silk (in an acid bath), but are not adapted for the dyeing of cotton. (These dyes fade rapidly when the fabric is washed with soap or washing powders, but are resistant or "fast" to the effects of sunlight.)

(2) *Basic dyes*, substances which readily combine with acids to form salts. They are "direct" dyes for silk, artificial silk and wool, but not for cotton and linen. The last two have first to be "mordanted," the mordant used being acid in character (such as tannic acid, for example), since the dye itself is basic. Fabrics dyed with basic dyes fade when exposed to sunlight.

(3) *Direct cotton dyes*, usually sodium salts of sulfonic and carboxylic acids and generally contain the azo ( $-N=N-$ ) grouping. They are adsorbed by the fiber directly and are used

mainly for dyeing cotton material (in the presence of NaCl or Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>).

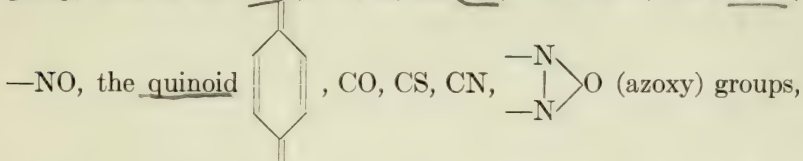
(4) *Sulfur dyes*—produced from various aromatic organic compounds by the action of sulfur and sodium sulfide. They are used for dyeing cotton and are fairly "fast" to washing.

(5) *Vat dyes*. These dyes are first reduced (generally with sodium hydrosulfite), the fabric being then agitated in the reduced dye bath and exposed to the air (whereby the dye is oxidized). Examples of such dyes are indigo and anthraquinone dyes. They are very stable, being the "fastest" colors known. *re oxidized*

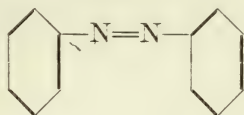
(6) *Mordant dyes*, which are generally of a phenolic or acidic character. Here mordants must be used to fix the dye to the fabric. Examples of mordant dyes are the coloring matters of dye woods (such as logwood and fustic) and alizarin. *alizarin*

(7) *Ingrain dyes*. These include substances (such as aniline black and para red) which are really only formed in the dye bath as a result of the chemical combination of two or more compounds. They are mainly cotton dyes.

The classification just described is a somewhat empirical one and arose in response to the practical needs of the dyer. There is still another classification, a more scientific one, based on the presence of certain groups in the molecule of the dyestuff. All dyes, in the first place, contain a **chromophore**, or color-producing group, such as the nitro, —NO<sub>2</sub>, the azo, —N=N—, the nitroso,

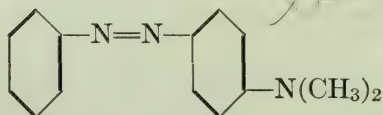


etc. But before the colored body can become a dye, it must also possess either acidic or basic characteristics, so that it can attach itself to the fiber, or to the tissue (within the cell). These acidic or basic properties are given to the dye when **auxochrome** groups are present, such as OH, SH, NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NR<sub>2</sub>, etc. For example, azobenzene,



which is a colored compound, is not a dye, but *p*-dimethylamino-azobenzene,





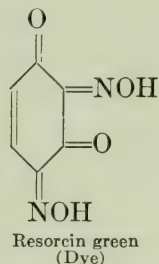
is a dye.

The entire subject of dyes is so extensive, that nothing more than a few members of the class can be mentioned here. However, the latest, and generally accepted classification of dyes will be given, and each type will be illustrated by one or more examples of dyes, stains or indicators in use. (The student should make a point here of noting the presence of chromophore and auxochrome groups in these compounds.)

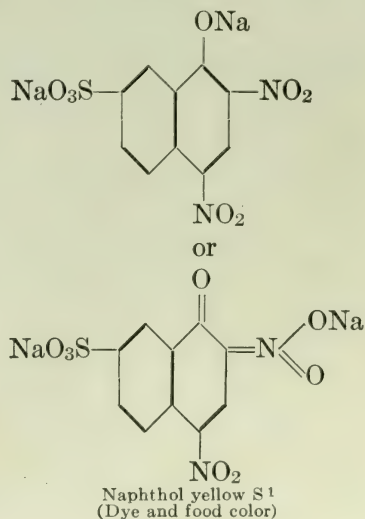
CLASSES OF  
DYESTUFFS

EXAMPLES

Nitroso dyes



Nitro dyes





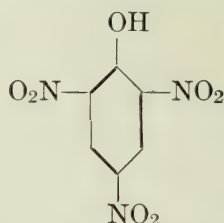
# Colour Index. by Rauve

DYES

293

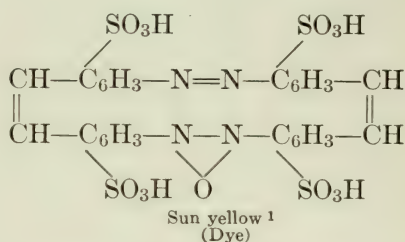
## CLASSES OF DYESTUFFS

### EXAMPLES



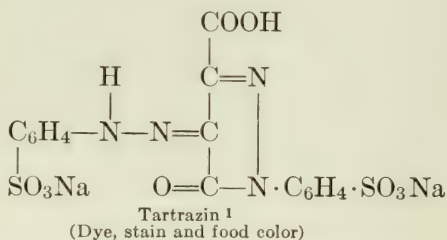
Picric acid  
(Dye and explosive)

## Stilbene dye



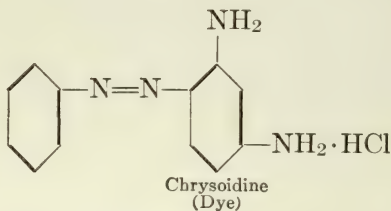
Sun yellow <sup>1</sup>  
(Dye)

## Pyrazolone dyes



Tartrazin <sup>1</sup>  
(Dye, stain and food color)

## Azo dyes

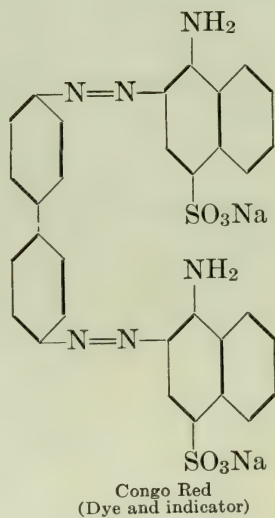
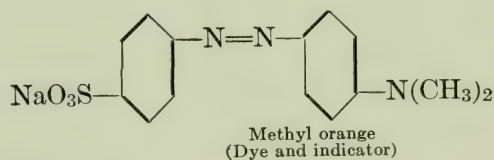
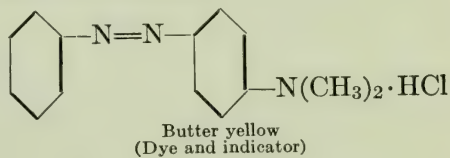


Chrysoidine  
(Dye)

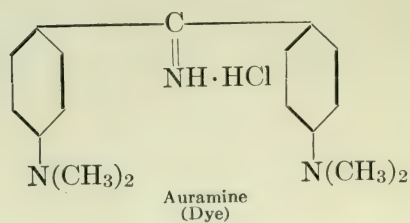
<sup>1</sup> Notice the presence of the sulfonic acid grouping, or of its salt, as part of the structure of some of these dyes. The presence of this group increases the solubility of the dye in water.

CLASSES OF  
DYESTUFFS

## EXAMPLES



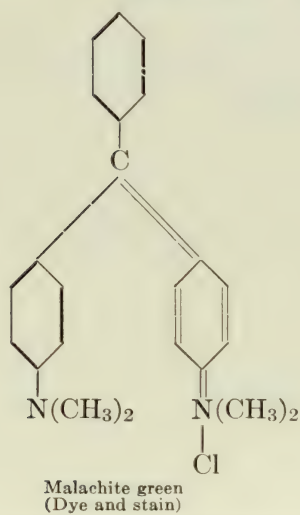
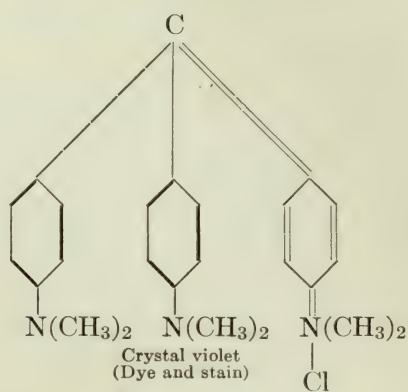
## Diphenylmethane dyes



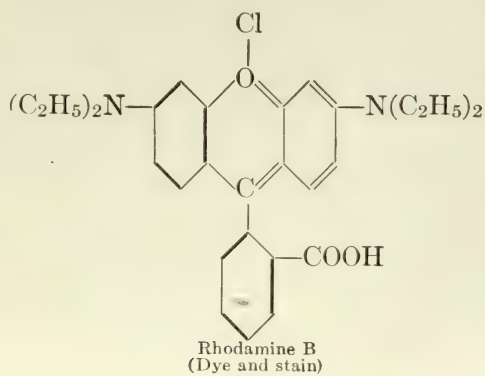
CLASSES OF  
DYESTUFFS

## EXAMPLES

## Triphenylmethane dyes



## Xanthone dyes

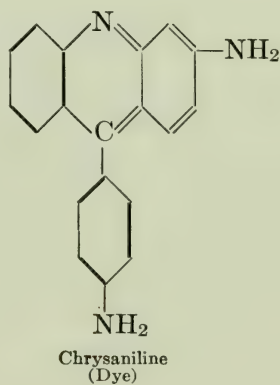




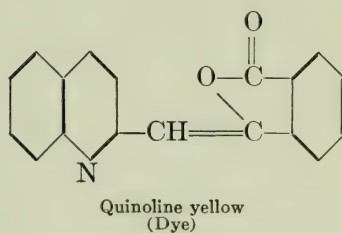
CLASSES OF  
DYESTUFFS

## EXAMPLES

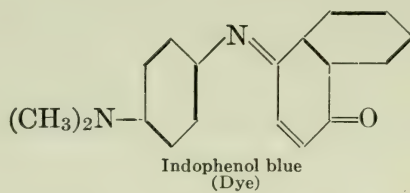
## Acridine dyes



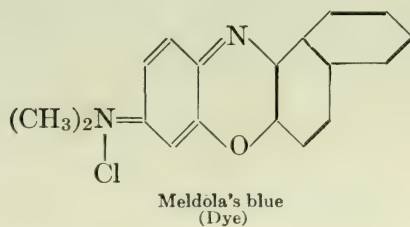
## Quinoline dyes



## Indophenol dyes



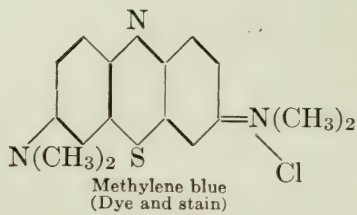
## Oxazine dyes



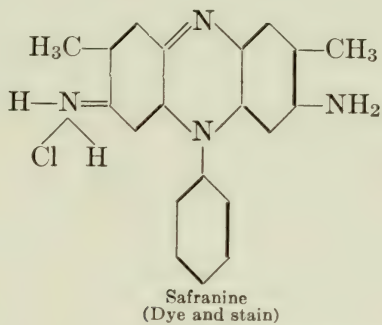
CLASSES OF  
DYESTUFFS

## EXAMPLES

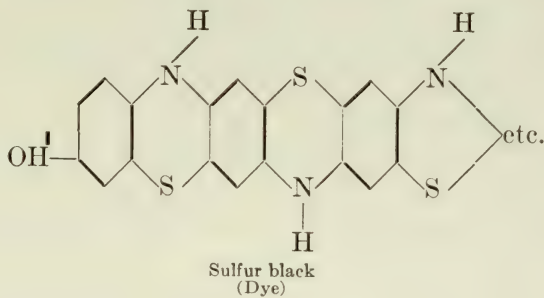
## Thiazine dyes



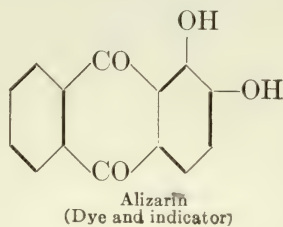
## Azine dyes



## Sulfur dyes

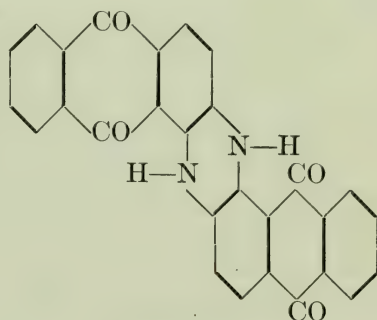


## Anthraquinone dyes

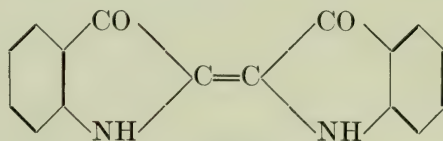


CLASSES OF  
DYESTUFFS

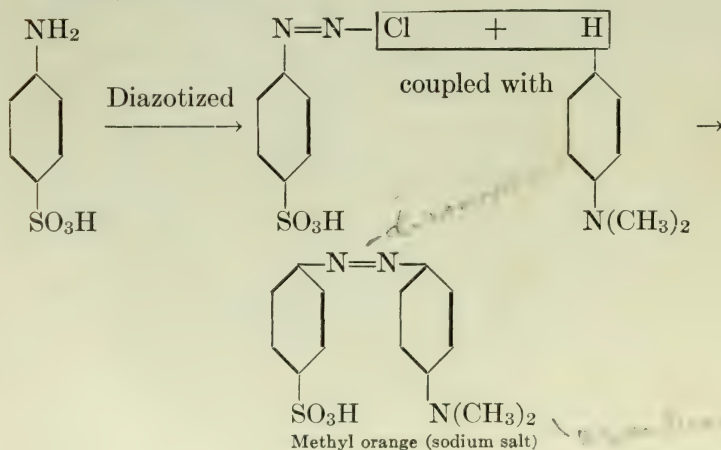
## EXAMPLES

Indanthrene blue R  
(Dye)

## Indigo dyes

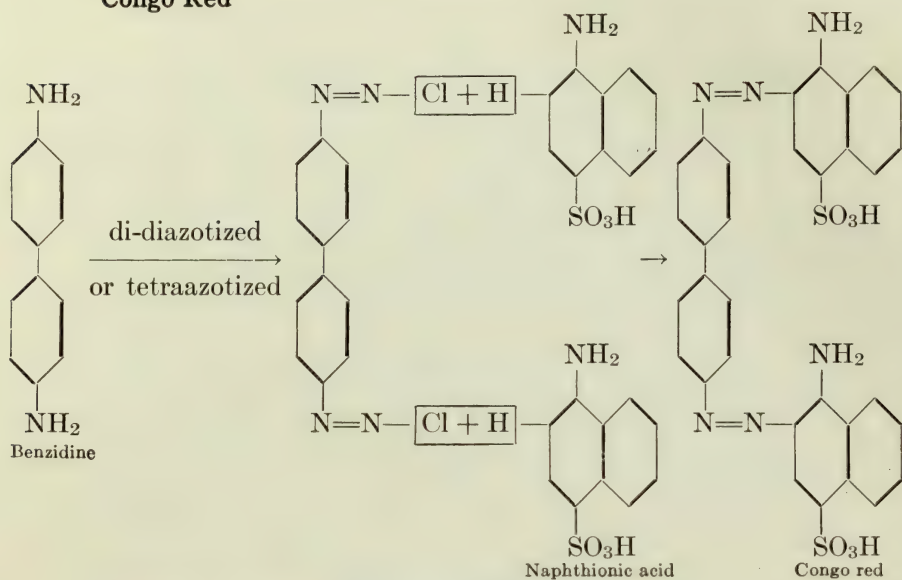
Indigo  
(Dye)

While the preparation of all of the above dyes cannot be given here, the principles employed in the synthesis of a few of them will be included.

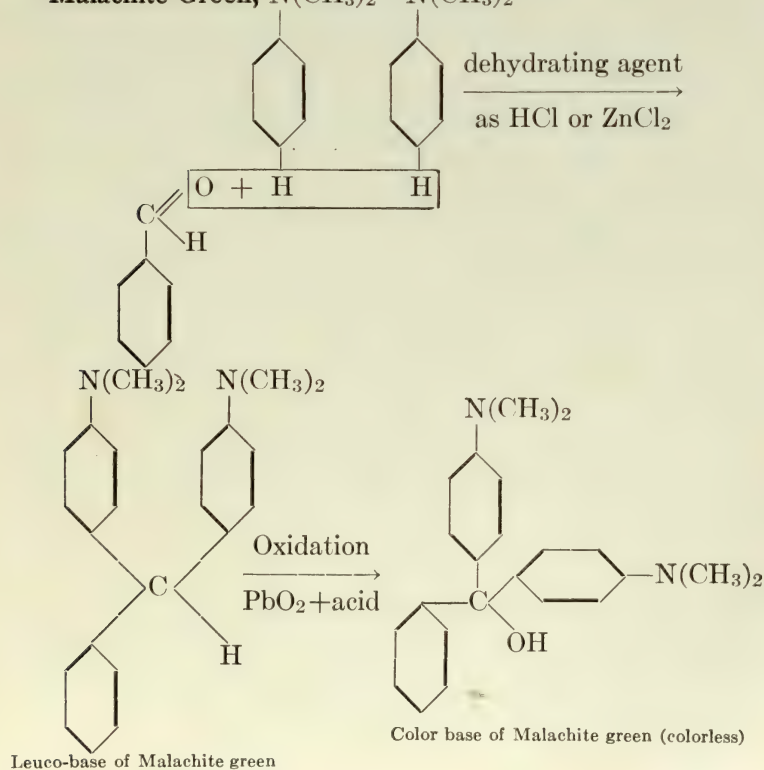
**Methyl Orange**

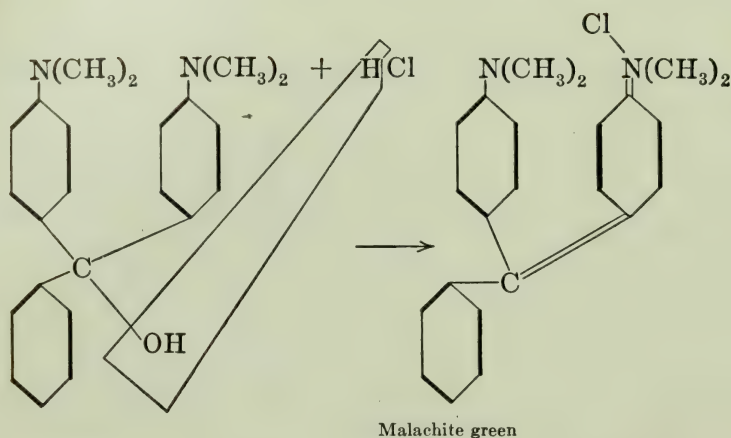
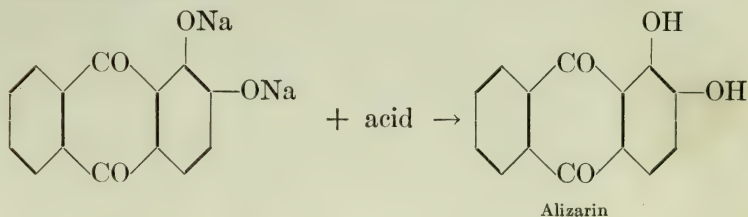
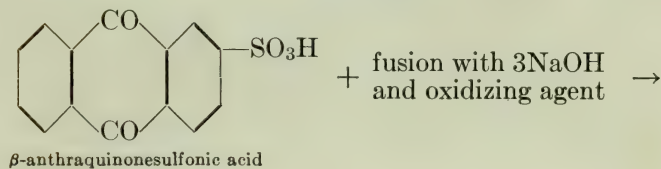
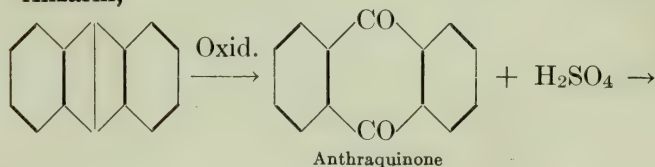


Congo Red



Malachite Green,  $\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$   $\text{N}(\text{CH}_3)_2$



**Alizarin,**

(The preparation of phenolphthalein is given on p. 258 and of indigo on p. 316).

**STAINS**

Dyes have come into use in bacteriology, because very often various bacteria can be differentiated by "staining" them with dyes. A stain is a dye or any other substance which colors tissues so that they can be submitted to microscopic examination.

Basic aniline dyes are the type of stains commonly used; these show special affinity for the nuclei of cells. Acid dyes are also sometimes used; these usually have a selective affinity for the protoplasm. Some of the most commonly employed aniline dyes are methylene blue, gentian violet, fuchsin, crystal violet, safranine, etc.

The chemistry of the process involved in staining is probably not unlike that which occurs in dyeing; there may be a chemical combination between the dye and the protoplasm of the cell, or a process of adsorption may be involved, or possibly both processes are operative.

(Recent research has resulted in the production of a "tripan-red" type of dye, of unpublished composition, known as "Bayer 205," which appears to be the most active trypanocide yet discovered. It has been used with success in advanced cases of sleeping sickness.)

## READING REFERENCES

TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century (1916), chap. 21 (Production of Dyes); chap. 30 (Natural Colors).

WOOD—Chemistry of Dyeing.

RAMSEY AND WESTON—Artificial Dyestuffs.

PERKIN AND EVEREST—The Natural Organic Coloring Matters.

ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 1006-1032 (Dyestuffs and Their Applications).

WATSON—Color in Relation to Chemical Constitution.

HARROW—Eminent Chemists of Our Times. (1920), pp. 1-19 (Perkin and Coal-tar Dyes).



Start

## CHAPTER XXX

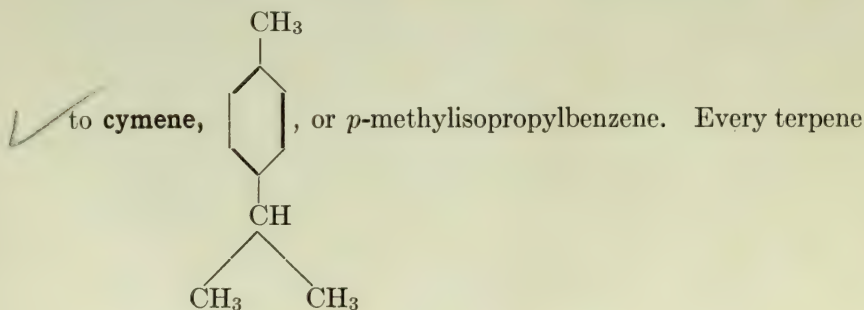
### TERPENES AND RELATED SUBSTANCES

THE terpenes are complex hydrocarbons, usually with the formula  $C_{10}H_{16}$ , present in, or obtained from, such substances as camphor, oil of turpentine and particularly "essential oils." ("Essential oils" are the products obtained when certain plants—such as the conifer and citrus—barks, leaves or flowers are distilled with steam; or when the oil is pressed or extracted with organic solvents. They are usually sweet-smelling substances containing a number of related organic compounds and are extensively used as flavors, in perfumery and in medicine.)

The compounds classified as terpenes fall into several classes:

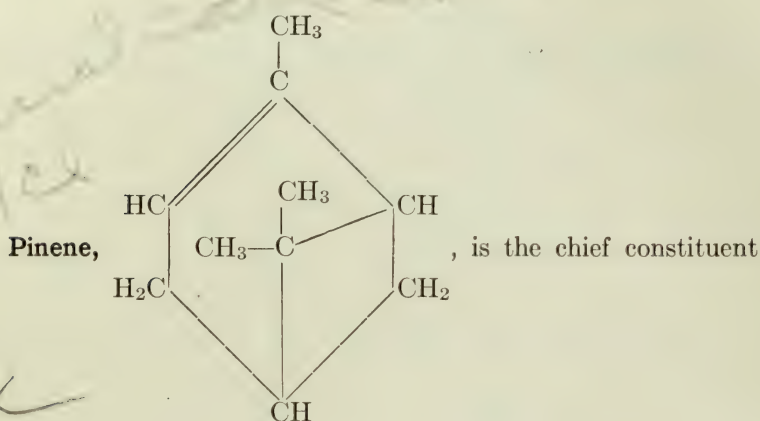
$C_5H_8$ —hemiterpenes,  
 $C_{10}H_{16}$ —terpenes (true terpenes),  
 $C_{15}H_{24}$ —sesquiterpenes,  
 $(C_{10}H_{16})_x$ —polyterpenes.

The terpenes are hydroaromatic hydrocarbons, closely related



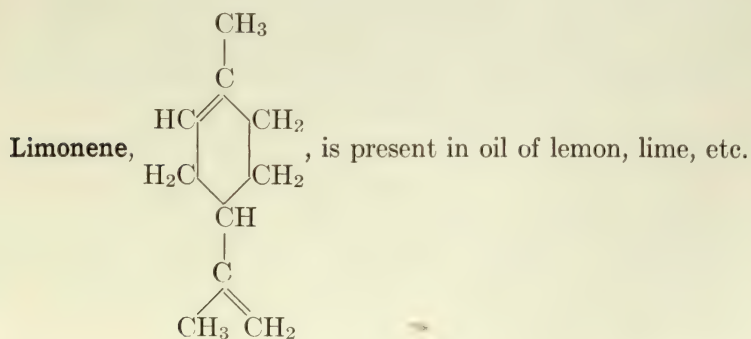
contains a hydrogenated benzene nucleus and either a methyl and isopropyl group, or radicals related to these groups.

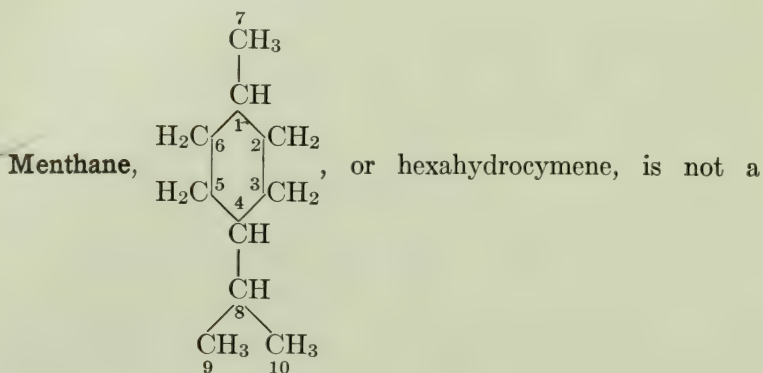
Some of the more important compounds belonging to the terpene group are as follows:



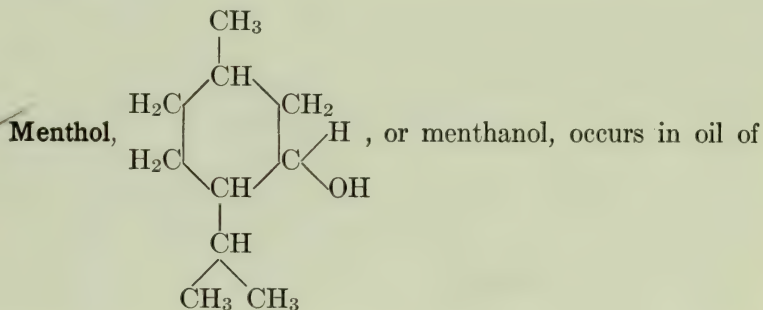
of oil of turpentine. Owing to the presence of a double bond, it forms addition products with halogens, halogen acids, nitrosyl chloride, nitrogen peroxide, etc. One such product, pinene hydrochloride (obtained by uniting pinene with hydrochloric acid), is "artificial camphor," which resembles camphor.

(When crude turpentine is distilled with steam, pure turpentine or "oil of turpentine" collects in the distillate and "rosin," or "colophony," a solid resin, remains in the still. The oil of turpentine is used in paints and varnishes and the rosin is used in soap making, varnishes, sealing wax, etc.)

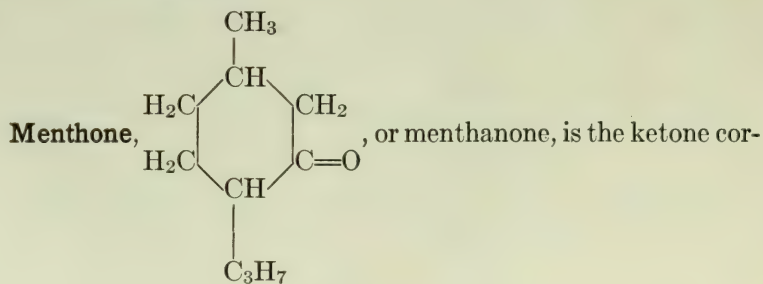




natural product, but we have a number of important substances related to it.

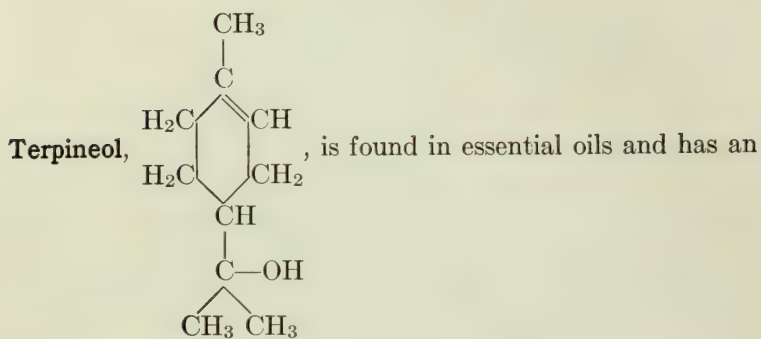


peppermint. It has a peppermint-like odor and finds extensive use as a flavoring agent.

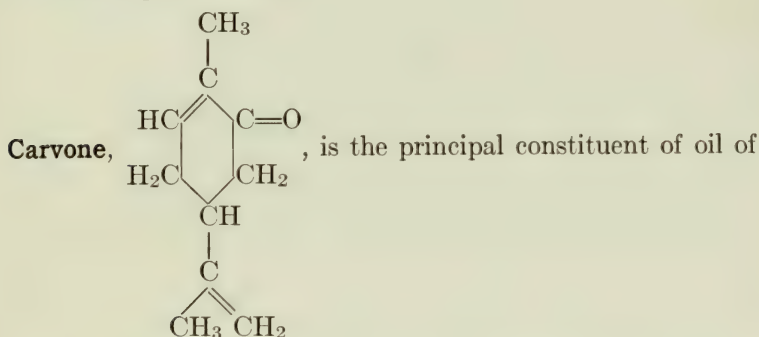


responding to menthane, and is also found in oil of peppermint. Like other ketones, it may be reduced to a secondary alcohol (in this case to menthol).

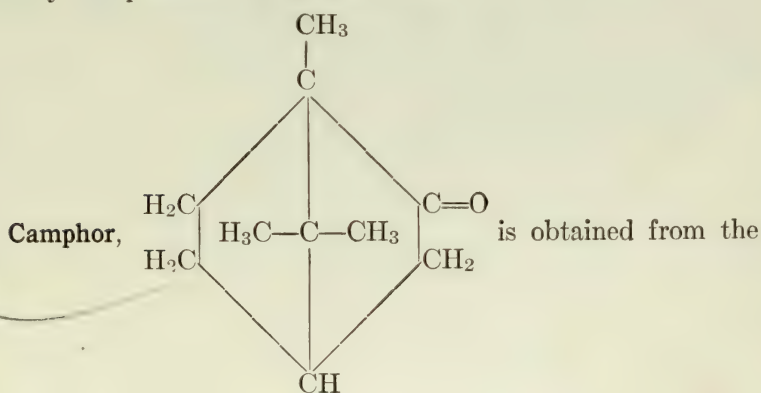




odor resembling that of lilacs.

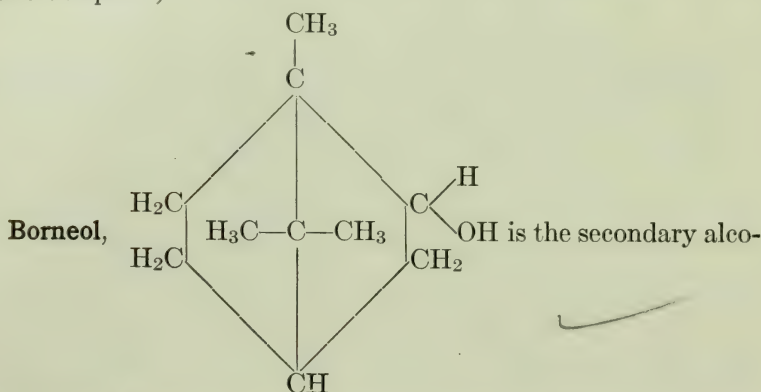


caraway and possesses the characteristic odor of this oil.



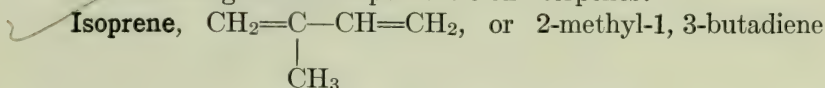
camphor tree by steam distillation. It may also be obtained synthetically from pinene hydrochloride (p. 303). It is largely used in the manufacture of celluloid (p. 172) and in pharmaceutical preparations. (The artificial camphors on the market are either pinene hydrochloride or triphenyl phosphate, p. 238. Artificial

camphor does not have the same structure as natural or synthetic camphor.)

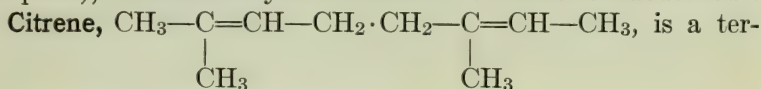


It occurs in nature, being known as "Borneo-camphor," and has a camphor-like odor.

The following are the important olefin terpenes:

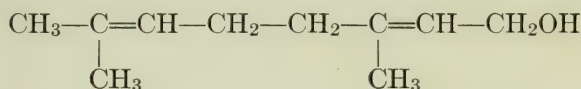


(see p. 37), is obtained by the distillation of rubber or caoutchouc.

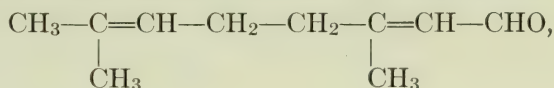


pene obtained from lemon oil.

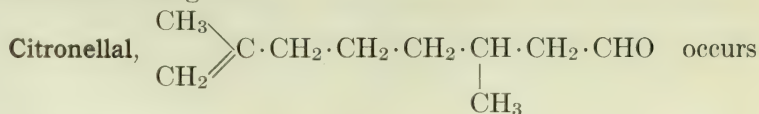
✓ **Geraniol** (the alcohol),



is found in rose and geranium oils; and **citral** (the aldehyde),



in lemon and orange oils.



in oils of citrus fruits.

## TABLE OF ESSENTIAL OILS

Oil	Chief Known Constituents
Allspice	Eugenol; sesquiterpene
Angelica Root	Phellandrene; valeric acid
Angelica Seed	Phellandrene; valeric acid
Anise	Anethole; anisaldehyde
Birch	Methyl salicylate
Bitter Almond	Benzaldehyde; hydrocyanic acid; phenyloxyaceto- nitrile
Camphor	Camphor; borneol; pinene
Caraway	Carvone; <i>d</i> -limonene
Cedar Wood	Cedrene; cedar camphor
Celery Seed	Limonene; phenols
Cinnamon Bark	Cinnamaldehyde; eugenol
Citronella	Geraniol; citronellal
Clove	Eugenol
Cognac	Esters of caprylic acid
Eucalyptus	Phellandrene; cineol
Fennel	Anethole; fenchone
Garlic	Allyl propyl disulfide; diallyl disulfide
Geranium	Geraniol; citronellol
Ginger	Phellandrene
Guaiac Wood	Guaiacol
Hops	Humulene; geraniol; terpenes
Jasmine	Benzyl acetate; linalol
Juniper Berries	Pinene; cadinene; juniper camphor
Lavender	Linalyl acetate; linalol
Lemon	Limonene; phellandrene; citral; citronellol; geranyl acetate; linalol
Lime	<i>d</i> -Limonene; citral; methyl anthranilate
Mustard	Allyl isothiocyanate
Neroli	Linalyl acetate; linalol; geraniol; limonene
Nutmeg	Myristicin; pinene
Onion	Allyl propyl disulfide
Orange	Limonene
Pepper	Phellandrene; dipentene
Peppermint	Menthol; menthyl esters; menthone
Rose	Geraniol; citronellol; geranyl acetate
Sassafras	Safrol; eugenol; camphor; pinene; phellandrene
Spearmint	Carvone; limonene; pinene
Thyme	Thymol; carvacrol; cymene; linalol; borneol
Tolu	Esters of benzoic and cinnamic acids
Turpentine	Pinene



Valerian	Borneol; bornyl formate, acetate and isovalerianate; pinene; camphene
Wintergreen	Methyl salicylate
Ylang-ylang	Linalol; geraniol; benzoic esters; methyl ester of <i>p</i> -cresol.

(Oil of *Chenopodium*, an old household remedy for worms, is a mixture of various terpenes.)

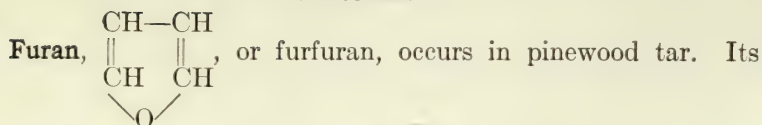
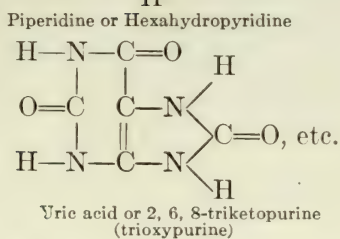
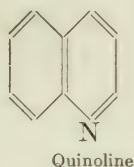
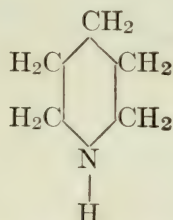
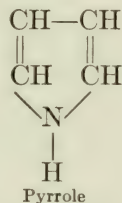
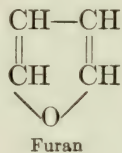
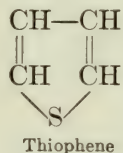
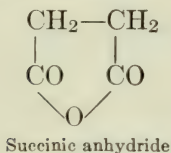
#### READING REFERENCES

- TILDEN—Chemical Discovery and Invention in the Twentieth Century. (1916), chap. 23 (Perfumes and Essential Oils).
- DUNCAN—Some Chemical Problems of Today. (1911), chap. 7 (Camphor).
- DUNCAN—The Chemistry of Commerce. (1907), chap. 8 (Floral Perfumes).
- SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry. (1920), chap. 5 (Synthetic Perfumes and Flavors).
- GILDEMEISTER AND HOFFMANN—The Volatile Oils.
- ROGERS—Manual of Industrial Chemistry. (1921), pp. 766–802 (Essential Oils, Synthetic Perfumes and Flavoring Materials); pp. 803–814 (Turpentine and Rosin).
- BOGERT—The Flower of the Organic Chemist: Perfumes Natural and Synthetic. *Journal of Industrial and Engineering Chemistry*, **14**, 359 (1922).
- POWER—The Distribution and Characters of Some of the Odorous Principles of Plants. *Journal of Industrial and Engineering Chemistry*, **11**, 344 (1919).
- HEPBURN—Recent Progress in the Chemistry of the Terpenes and Camphors. *Journal of the Franklin Institute*, Feb., 1911.
- ANON.—Turpentine. (Agricultural Bulletin 898.) Government Printing Office, Washington.
- CLARK—Applied Pharmacology. (1923), chap. 7 (Anthelminthics—Oil of *Chenopodium*, etc.)

## CHAPTER XXXI

### HETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

THE "cyclic" or "ring" compounds so far considered, with a few exceptions, such as succinic anhydride, lactones, etc., have contained the same elements within the ring (in this particular case, carbon atoms; hence **carbocyclic**). There are, however, very many compounds containing "cycles" in which elements other than carbon are also present; these are known as **heterocyclic**, for example,



most important derivative is **furfural**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}-\text{CH} \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \\ \text{CH} \quad \text{C}-\text{CHO} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ , or furfur-

aldehyde, which may be obtained from a pentose sugar, or pentosans, when boiled with hydrochloric or sulfuric acid (see p. 161). (This serves as the basis for the detection and estimation of pentoses and pentosans.) Commercially, furfural is prepared from corn and maize cobs and other waste cereal products rich in pentoses or pentosans. It is used in the manufacture of synthetic resins, disinfectants, deodorizers, solvents, etc. The general properties of furfural are similar to those of benzaldehyde. On

oxidation, we get pyromucic acid,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}-\text{CH} \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \\ \text{CH} \quad \text{C}-\text{COOH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{O} \end{array}$ , which, as its

name implies, may also be prepared by heating mucic acid,  $\text{COOH} \cdot (\text{CHOH})_4 \cdot \text{COOH}$ , an oxidation product of galactose or lactose (p. 168). (The *Molisch test* for carbohydrates—p. 164, is said to be dependent upon the production of furfural.)

✓ **Pyrrole**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}-\text{CH} \\ \parallel \quad \parallel \\ \text{CH} \quad \text{CH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \\ | \\ \text{H} \end{array}$ , is present in coal tar and in bone oil

(Dippel's oil), which is a product of the destructive distillation of bones. (The pyrrole ring is present in a number of alkaloids.)

✓ It may be reduced to **pyrrolidine**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH}_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \\ | \\ \text{H} \end{array}$ , a carboxylic acid


derivative of which is **proline**,  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_2-\text{CH}_2 \\ | \quad | \\ \text{CH}_2 \quad \text{CH} \cdot \text{COOH} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ \text{N} \\ | \\ \text{H} \end{array}$ , one of the

decomposition products of proteins (p. 146).



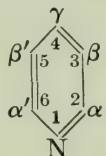


be identified by the "indophenin" reaction (a mixture of isatin, thiophene and  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  gives a blue color).

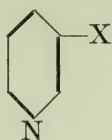
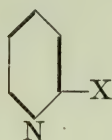
✓ **Pyridine**,  (which may be looked upon as benzene in

which one CH is replaced by N), is found in coal tar in the "light oil" fraction, in tobacco smoke, in *Dippel's* oil, and in crude ammonia. Pyridine is soluble in water, the solution being slightly alkaline in reaction. It has a characteristic, putrid odor and is an extremely stable substance, not being attacked by chromic acid ( $\text{CrO}_3$ ) or nitric acid. It is used to denature alcohol. (The pyridine ring is present in a number of alkaloids.)

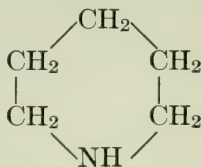
The positions in pyridine are numbered




The compound has three mono-substitution products of the type

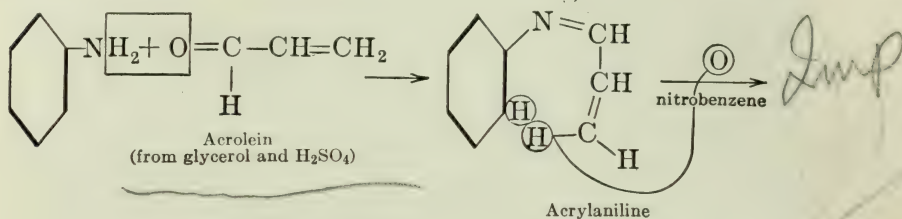


✓ When reduced, pyridine yields **piperidine**, a substance which occurs in pepper and has a pepper-like odor.

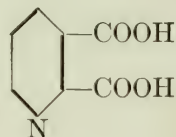


✓ **Quinoline**, , a condensation of one benzene and one

pyridine ring, is present in coal tar and bone oil, and may be prepared by the *Skraup's* reaction, in which a mixture of aniline, glycerol,  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  (dehydrating agent) and nitrobenzene (oxidizing agent) are heated:

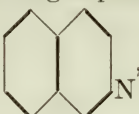


On oxidation, quinoline yields quinolinic acid,

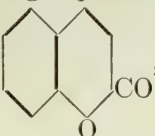


(What does naphthalene yield on oxidation?)

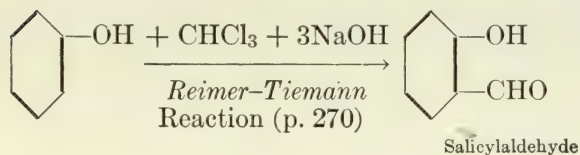
(The quinoline ring is present in certain alkaloids.)

✓ **Isoquinoline**, , is found in coal tar. (The iso-

quinoline grouping is present in a number of alkaloids.)

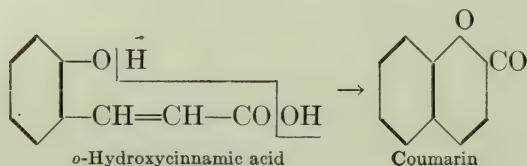
**Coumarin**, , is the sweet-smelling constituent of

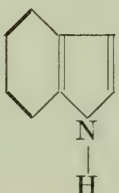
tonka bean, and freshly-mown hay. It is used extensively in flavoring extracts, flavoring tobacco, perfumery and as an adulterant for vanillin. It is made by the following series of reactions:



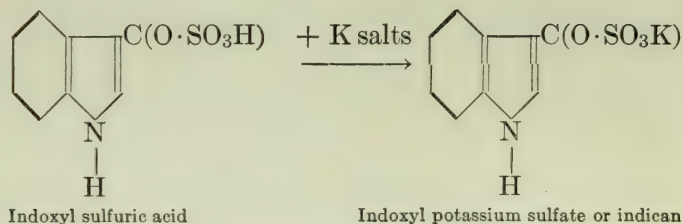
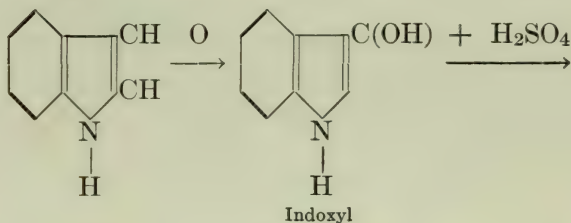


+  $\text{CH}_3\text{COONa}$  and Acetic anhydride  $\rightarrow$   
(*Perkin* reaction p. 257)



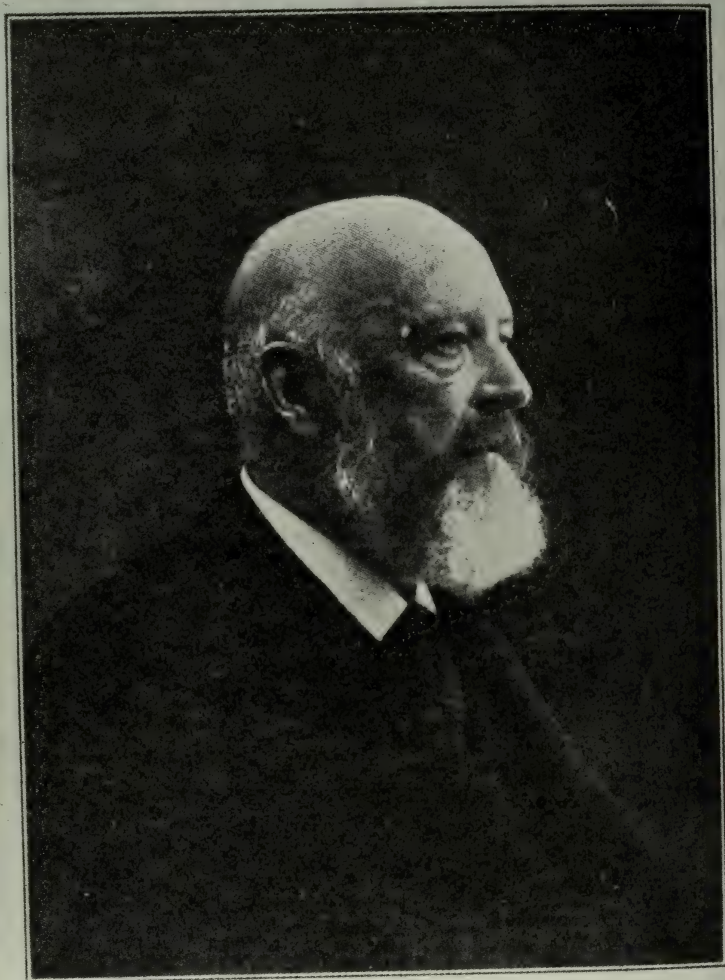
✓ Indole, , represents a condensation of the benzene

and pyrrole rings, and is an intestinal product formed when proteins putrify. Indole is a highly toxic substance and is de-toxified by being converted into indican, in which form it is eliminated in the urine:



(The amount of indican in the urine is a rough indication of the extent of putrefaction within the intestine.)

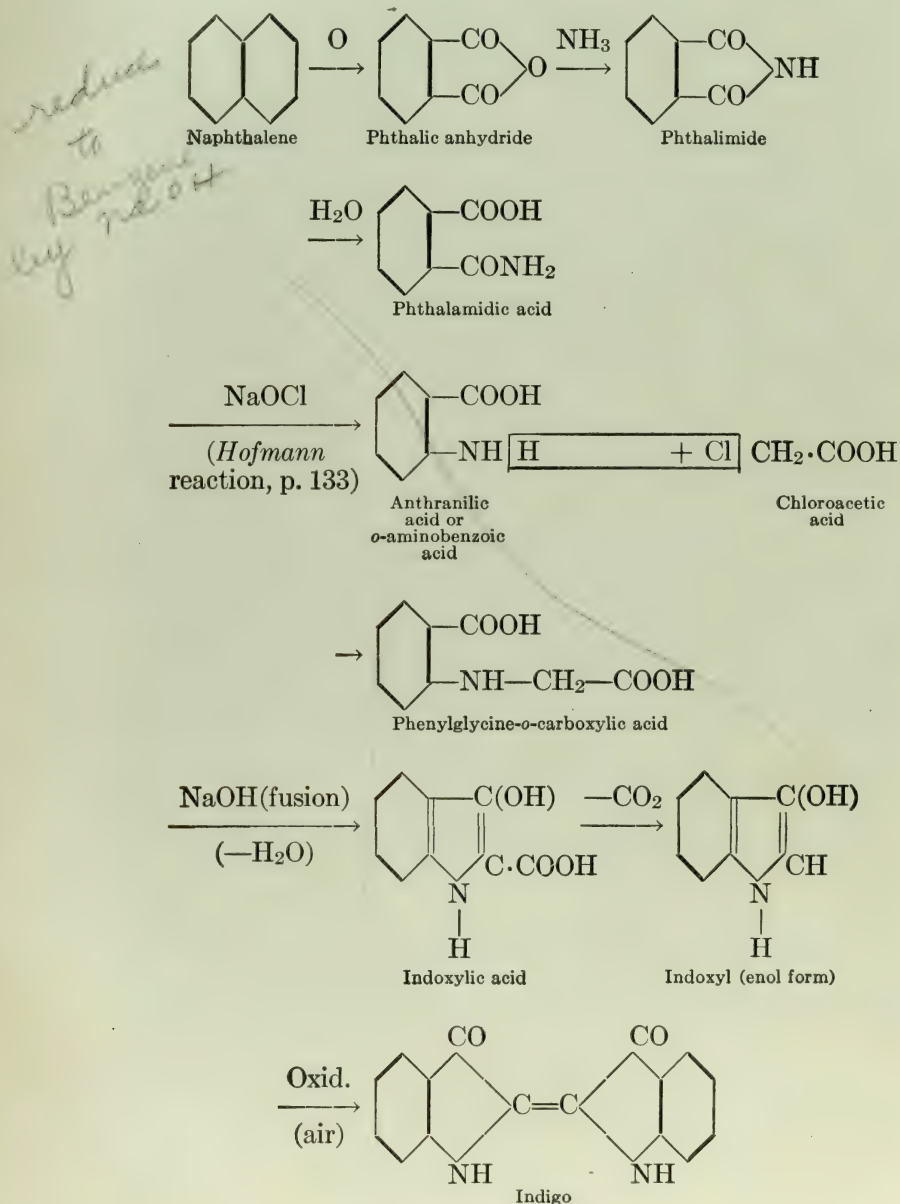
**Indigo** is a natural product obtained from the indigo plant (in which it occurs as the glucoside "indican")—which grows in tropical countries—and is one of the oldest and best known vat dyes. Its synthesis in the chemist's laboratory (by Baeyer)



*Adolf Baeyer*

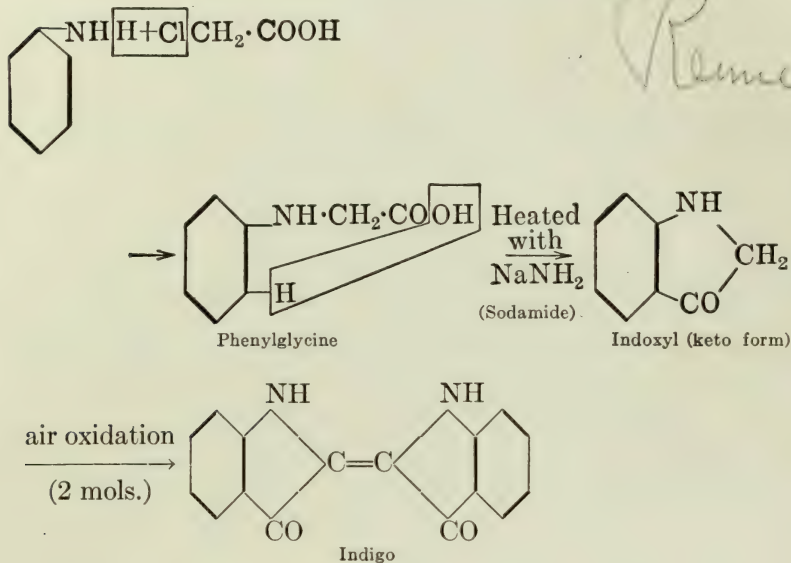
JOHANN FRIEDRICH WILHELM ADOLF BAEYER (1835-1917)  
RESPONSIBLE FOR THE SYNTHESIS OF INDIGO (P. 314), WAS ONE OF THE MOST  
FRUITFUL WORKERS IN ORGANIC CHEMISTRY DURING THE NINETEENTH CENTURY.

ranks as one of the great achievements in the history of organic chemistry. It may be produced artificially by the following series of reactions:

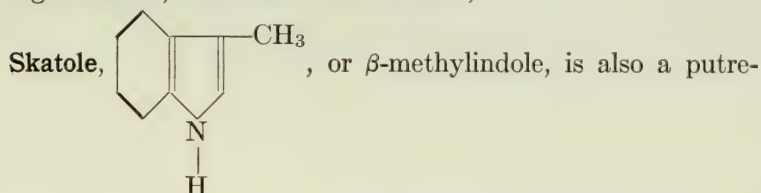




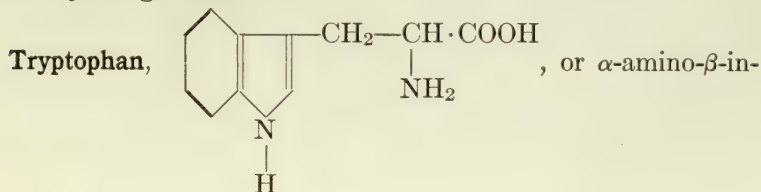
On a commercial scale at the present time, indigo is prepared as follows:



(The disodium salt of indigodisulfonic acid, known also as "indigo carmine," is used as a food color.)

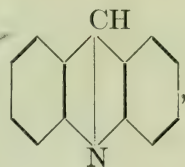


factive product formed in the intestine and its fate in the body is similar to that of indole. It is present in feces and has an extremely disagreeable odor.

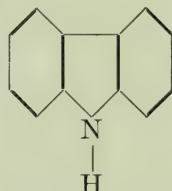


dolepropionic acid, has already been referred to under amino acids (p. 142).

Two other heterocyclic compounds are **acridine**,



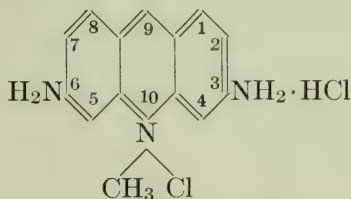
present in coal tar, and **carbazole**,



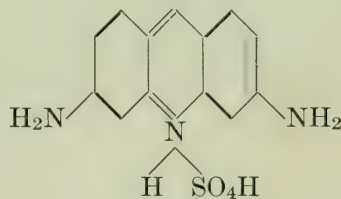
or dibenzopyr-

role, present in anthracene oil. Carbazole is used in the manufacture of dyes.

Two important derivatives of acridine have recently been introduced in medicine:



Acriflavine or  
3, 6-diamino-10-methyl-  
acridinium chloride  
hydrochloride



Proflavine  
or  
3, 6-diaminoacridinium  
hydrogen sulfate

They are strongly antiseptic and non-toxic.

## CHAPTER XXXII

### VEGETABLE ALKALOIDS

VEGETABLE alkaloids are basic nitrogenous substances which occur in plants usually in combination with organic acids (citric, tartaric, oxalic, malic, etc.) and which are characterized by powerful physiological activity. They contain the elements C, H, N or C, H, O and N and are complex in constitution, generally containing pyrrole, pyrrolidine, pyridine, quinoline or isoquinoline groups in their structure. Only a very brief presentation of the subject can be given here.

Alkaloids occur in dicotyledonous plants. Most of them are crystalline (coniine and nicotine are liquids) and most of them are levorotatory. They are insoluble in water, soluble in alcohol, ether, chloroform, etc., to a greater or less extent, form water-soluble salts with acids, have a bitter taste and some are excessively poisonous. Most of the alkaloids are used in the form of salts, such as hydrochloride, nitrate, bisulfate, sulfate, phosphate, etc.

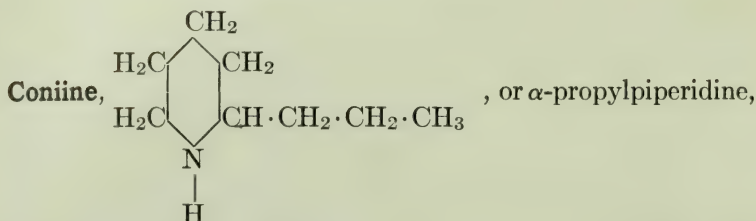
The following substances, known as "alkaloidal reagents," precipitate alkaloids from their aqueous or acid solutions; tannic acid, potassium-mercuric iodide ( $KI + HgI_2$ ), phosphomolybdic acid, picric acid and phosphotungstic acid. (The "alkaloidal reagents" are quite often used to precipitate proteins.)

Color reactions are frequently used to identify certain alkaloids.

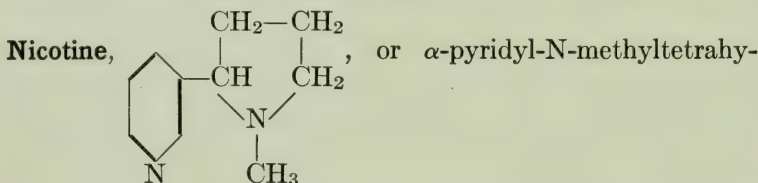
The method of extraction from plants often consists in extracting with acidified ( $HCl$  or  $H_2SO_4$ ) water and reprecipitating with bases.

The number of alkaloids known is very large; only a few of the more important ones can be mentioned here.





is obtained from the seeds of spotted hemlock and has been produced synthetically. It is very poisonous, has a disagreeable odor and an acrid taste. (Chemically, it is the simplest alkaloid.)



dropyrrole, is present in tobacco leaves and is used as an insecticide.

**Piperine**,  $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3$ , occurs in pepper, from which it is extracted.

**Atropine**,  $C_{17}H_{23}NO_3$ , obtained from the *Deadly Nightshade* (belladonna), is used as a mydriatic (dilating the pupil) in ophthalmic surgery.

**Homatropine**, an artificial alkaloid derived from atropine, dilates the pupil more rapidly than atropine and the effect is not as lasting.

**Cocaine**,  $C_{17}H_{21}NO_4$ , is contained in coca-leaves. It is used as a local anesthetic in minor operations, though, owing to its extreme toxic properties, it has been largely replaced by novocaine, butyn, etc. (p. 274).

**Quinine**,  $C_{20}H_{24}N_2O_2$ , is obtained from cinchona bark, etc. It is used in the treatment of malaria, as a "bitter" (to increase appetite), to reduce fever, etc.

**Cinchonine**,  $C_{19}H_{22}N_2O$ , from cinchona bark, resembles quinine in its physiological properties, though its effects are not so pronounced.

**Strychnine**,  $C_{21}H_{22}N_2O_2$ , and **brucine**,  $C_{23}H_{26}N_2O_4$ , occur together in the seeds of *nux vomica* and in *St. Ignatius'* beans. Strychnine is an extremely poisonous substance, acting on the spinal cord and producing characteristic convulsions. In very

small doses, it is used as a tonic, to increase the appetite, as a heart stimulant and in various forms of paralysis. Brucine acts similarly.

**Morphine**,  $C_{17}H_{19}NO_3$ , is the chief alkaloid of opium (which is the dried juice of the seed capsules of a variety of poppy). It is used as an analgesic and as a soporific.

**Heroine** is a diacetyl derivative of morphine. Its effects are, in general, similar to those of morphine. It is used as a sedative and to lessen coughing.

**Narcotine**,  $C_{22}H_{23}NO_7$ , and **codeine**,  $C_{18}H_{21}NO_3$ , are also present in opium and are closely related to morphine.

**Dionine** is an artificial alkaloid made from morphine (ethyl morphine) and is used to produce sleep and relieve pain.

**Pilocarpine** is the active principle obtained from the leaves of *Pilocarpus jaborandi*, a Brazilian shrub. It is used principally to increase perspiration.

**Emetine**, the active alkaloid of ipecac, is used in the treatment of amoebic dysentery (because of its destructive action on amoebae) and also in the treatment of pyorrhoea alveolaris, an infected condition of the teeth sockets.

#### READING REFERENCES

PICTET AND BIDDLE—The Vegetable Alkaloids.

BARBOUR—Local Anesthetics. *Science*, **51**, 497 (1920).

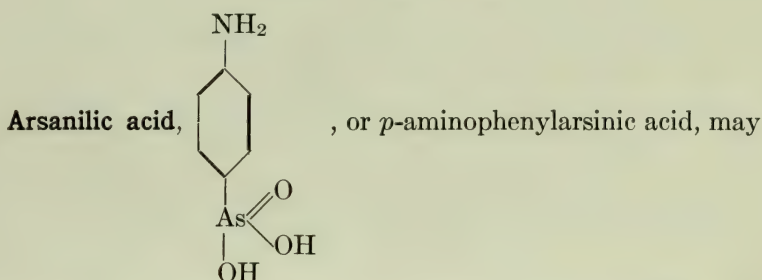
CLARK—Applied Pharmacology. (1923), chap. 5 (The Action of Quinine in Malaria).

## CHAPTER XXXIII

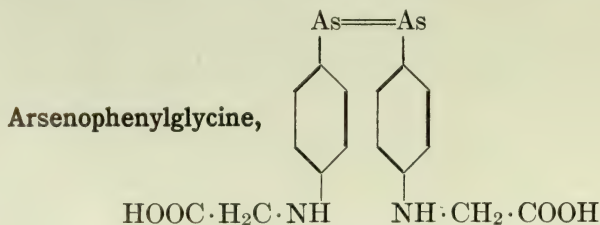
### ARSENIC AND MERCURY COMPOUNDS OF THE AROMATIC SERIES

ARSENIC and mercury compounds, particularly the former, have found wide application in the treatment of diseases caused by protozoa (such as in syphilis). The organic combinations of these metals have an advantage over the inorganic compounds in that they are less toxic to mammals and more toxic to protozoan parasites.

#### ARSENIC COMPOUNDS

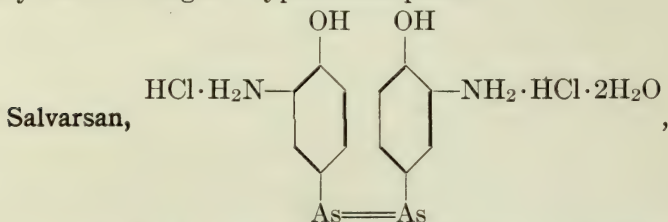


be regarded as being derived from arsenic acid,  $\text{AsO}(\text{OH})_3$ , in which one OH group is replaced by aniline, and is prepared by combining aniline with arsenic acid. The monosodium salt is known as "atoxyl" and "soamin" and, though used at one time in the treatment of syphilis, relapsing fever, etc., it is now chiefly of interest as an intermediate in the preparation of salvarsan.

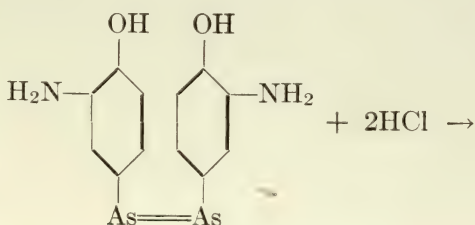
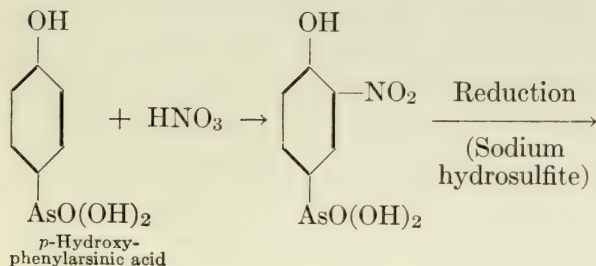
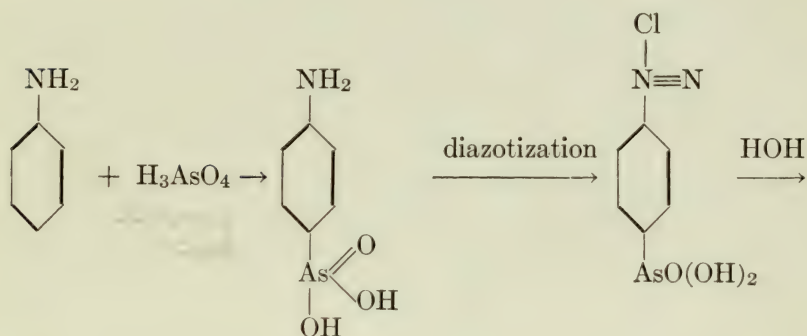


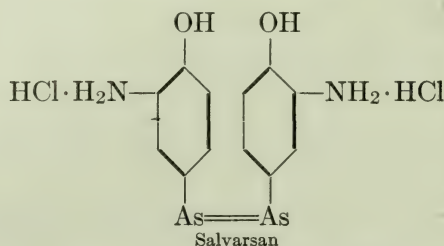


was introduced by Ehrlich as a substance even less toxic than atoxyl and of a higher trypanocidal power.



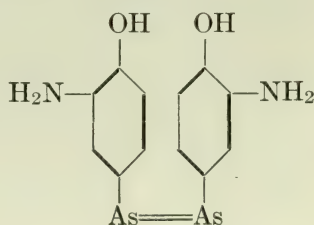
or 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxyarsenobenzene dihydrochloride, known also as arsphenamine and "606," was first synthesized by Ehrlich and introduced by him for the treatment of syphilis. One method of preparing it is as follows:



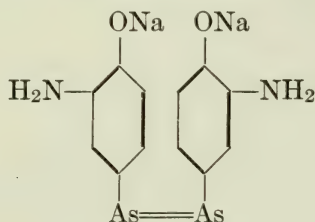


While we cannot, in this book, enter into a prolonged discussion regarding the interesting question of the effect of chemical structure upon physiological action, Ehrlich's discovery of salvarsan deserves a few words of comment. When Ehrlich first began his celebrated research, he was aware of the fact that trypanosomes—a group of parasites—are killed by a number of dyes and a number of organic arsenic compounds, of which “atoxyl” was the most important. This compound contains pentavalent arsenic. The important discovery was made that although it would cure animals of trypanosomiasis, it had no toxic action upon trypanosomes *in vitro*. After many trials with many arsenical compounds, Ehrlich was in a position to formulate this general rule: that only compounds containing trivalent arsenic were effective in killing trypanosomes, and that the effectiveness of compounds containing pentavalent arsenic depended upon their reduction in the body to the trivalent form. The most efficient substances were found to be compounds containing trivalent arsenic joined to a benzene ring and containing also an amino group. This was later still further improved upon by the discovery that the most effective compounds were those containing an OH group in the *p*-position, an amino group, and arsenic—as in salvarsan itself.

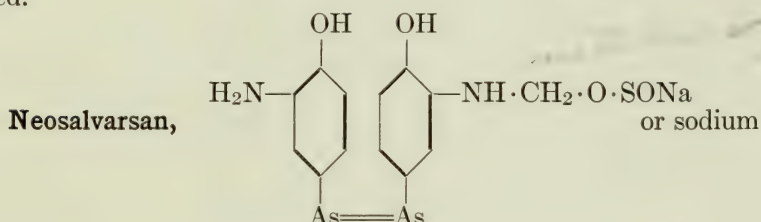
Salvarsan, that is the dihydrochloride salt, is soluble, but it forms an acid solution, and is irritant and toxic. By the addition of two gram molecules of NaOH to one of salvarsan, the neutral base is obtained:



This is insoluble. Upon the further addition of two gram molecules of NaOH, the sodium salt is produced:



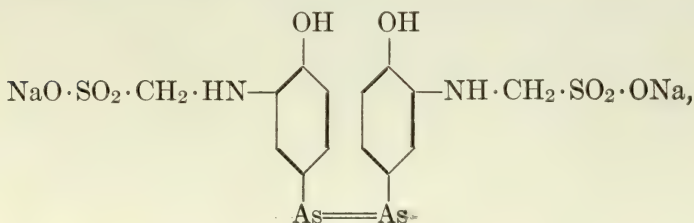
and this is soluble in water. It is the form of salvarsan generally used.



3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxyarsenobenzene-*N*-methylenesulfinate, is also known as neoarsphenamine or "914" and was introduced by Ehrlich because of its greater solubility than salvarsan. It is prepared by combining salvarsan with sodium formaldehyde sulfoxylate. ( $\text{HOCH}_2\cdot\text{OSONa}$ )

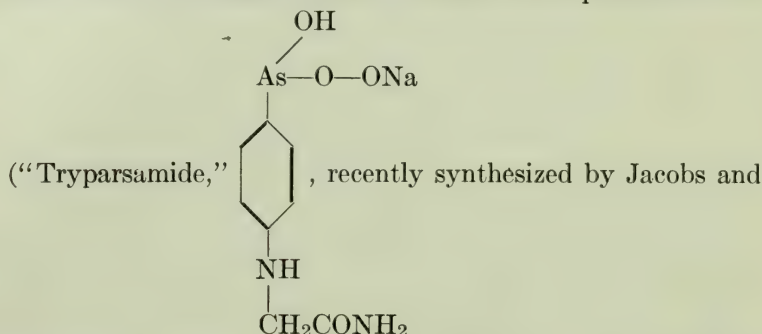
Silver salvarsan and silver neosalvarsan have the same uses as salvarsan, but it is claimed that the presence of silver in the molecule raises the toxicity to parasites without increasing the toxicity to mammals. "Luargol," which contains antimony in addition to silver and arsenic, is another salvarsan derivative for which therapeutic claims have been made. "Galyl" is a salvarsan derivative containing phosphorus in addition to arsenic.

**Sulfarsenol** (Sulfarsphenamine),





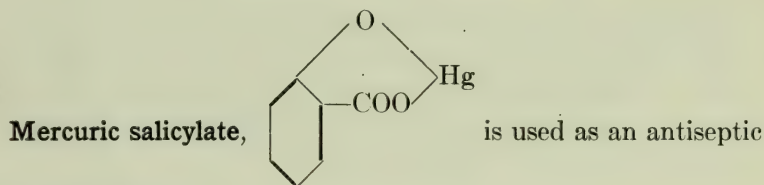
or disodium 3,3'-diamino-4,4'-dihydroxyarsenobenzene-*N*-dimethylenesulfonate, is similar in its uses to neosalvarsan, but it is claimed that its solutions are more stable in the presence of air.



Heidelberg, has been successfully applied in the treatment of human sleeping sickness.)

( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5$ )<sub>2</sub>As·Cl, diphenylchloroarsine, was used as a "sneeze" gas in the war.

#### MERCURY COMPOUNDS



and antisyphilitic.

**Mercuric benzoate** ( $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\cdot\text{COO}$ )<sub>2</sub>Hg, is also used in treating syphilis and gonorrhea.

"Mercurochrome-220," a complex mercurial derivative of fluorescein, has recently been introduced as a very active germicide.

#### READING REFERENCES

- STEWART—Chemistry and Its Borderland. (1914), chap. 4 (Immuno-Chemistry and Some Kindred Problems).  
 RAIZISS AND GAVRON—Organic Arsenical Compounds.  
 WHITMORE—Organic Compounds of Mercury.  
 HIRSCHFELDER—The Influence of Modern Chemistry on Pharmacology. *Journal of Industrial and Engineering Chemistry*, **15**, 455 (1923).  
 DALE—Chemotherapy—*Physiological Review*, **3**, 359 (1923).  
 MORGAN—Organic Compounds of Arsenic and Mercury.

## CHAPTER XXXIV

### A BRIEF OUTLINE FOR THE IDENTIFICATION OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

THE identification of an organic compound is not a simple matter. We have no methods quite as clearly defined as those of inorganic chemistry.

In the identification of an organic compound, the first step is to make certain that the compound is in a pure state—a fact which may very often be determined by ascertaining the boiling point or melting point, or by associating the compound with some other physical constant, such as specific gravity, etc.

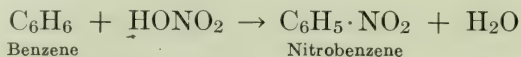
In the next place, an elementary analysis should clearly indicate the elements present in that compound. Once this is determined, certain limits are immediately set as to the kind of compound it can be. For example, a compound which upon analysis shows the elements C, H and O only, cannot be an amine.

The classification of organic compounds and many of their most characteristic reactions are intimately bound up with the presence, within the molecules of these compounds, of various "groups," such as OH, NH<sub>2</sub>, COOH, etc. In this chapter the attempt will be made to give a brief résumé of some of the reactions used for identifying such groups. Incidentally, this chapter ought to serve, to some extent, as a review.

**Hydrocarbons.**—Usually, these are colorless gases, liquids or solids, insoluble in water and soluble in alcohol and ether. (Where tests reveal that no elements other than carbon and hydrogen are present, the indications would immediately point to the presence of a hydrocarbon.) The paraffin hydrocarbons are very inert substances. The olefins add two bromine atoms to form saturated compounds, and the acetylenes generally respond to the

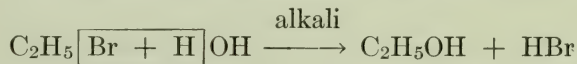


formation of metallic acetylides. The aromatic hydrocarbons may, as a rule, be nitrated, to form nitro derivatives:



Where the aromatic compounds contain a side-chain (as a  $\text{CH}_3$  group, for example), this can be oxidized (by chromic acid or potassium permanganate or dilute nitric acid) to the carboxyl group. The hydrocarbons with condensed benzene nuclei (such as naphthalene, anthracene, etc.) are solids and may be identified by their oxidation products and, very often, by the fact that they form well-defined picrates (with picric acid) with definite melting points. The terpene hydrocarbons (such as pinene) present many difficulties when attempts are made to isolate them. Sometimes a number of physical properties (boiling point, density, specific rotation, etc.) prove helpful.

**Halogen compounds.**—The aliphatic compounds are almost non-ionizable and practically insoluble in water. The alkyl chlorides are lighter than water while the bromides and iodides are heavier. They are hydrolyzed to the corresponding alcohols; e.g.,



With the aromatic halides, where the halogen is attached to the benzene nucleus, we get substances which are either liquids or solids, with a faint, agreeable odor, and insoluble in water. They are stable compounds and do not, for example, react with potassium hydroxide. They are utilized in the *Fittig* synthesis. The aromatic halogen compounds, with the halogen in the side-chain, behave similarly to the aliphatic halogen compounds and possess lachrymatory properties.

**Alcohols.**—As a rule, the monohydroxy alcohols are colorless liquids, neutral in reaction and some of them have a characteristic odor and taste. The solubility in water decreases with increasing molecular weight. The polyatomic alcohols are oily liquids or crystalline solids, soluble in water, and less soluble, or altogether insoluble in ether.

Primary alcohols when oxidized (with chromic acid, for example), give first an aldehyde and then an acid; secondary alcohols yield ketones; and tertiary alcohols break down into



carboxylic acids containing fewer carbon atoms than the original compound.

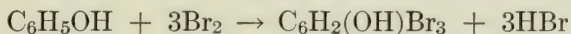
The OH group is very often identified by forming esters, either with acetyl chloride or acetic anhydride; e.g.,



Many of these esters have characteristic odors and by submitting them to a quantitative hydrolysis, it becomes possible to determine whether the original compound contains one or more OH groups. (For every OH group, one acetyl group is used.)

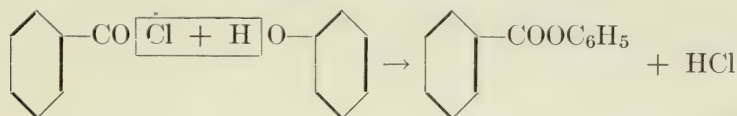
**Phenols.**—These are usually crystalline solids. (The solubility in water increasing with the number of OH groups present in the ring.) They are weak acids, being dissolved in alkalis forming salts.

Nearly all phenols give a precipitate of a polybromophenol when treated with bromine water; e.g.,



and yield deeply colored solutions with ferric chloride. Many give the *Liebermann* test (a deep blue or green color, when the phenol is dissolved in cold conc.  $H_2SO_4$ , and a little  $NaNO_2$  added). (This test is also used for identifying the nitroso group.)

Phenols, like alcohols, combine with acetic anhydride to form esters; they also form esters with acyl chlorides and these can be identified by their melting or boiling points; e.g.,

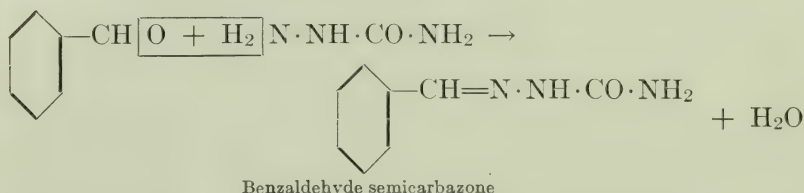
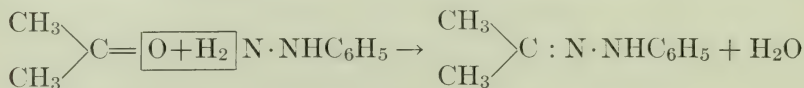


**Ethers.**—These are neutral, chemically inactive liquids. They are often identified by their boiling points, or by the following reaction:



**Aldehydes and Ketones.**—The lower aldehydes are liquids possessing a characteristic odor, and, unlike ketones, reduce *Fehling's* or ammoniacal silver nitrate solution. For purposes of identification, aldehydes and ketones may be combined with hydroxylamine to form oximes, with phenylhydrazine to form phenyl-

hydrazones, and with semicarbazide (aminourea) to form semicarbazone; e.g.,



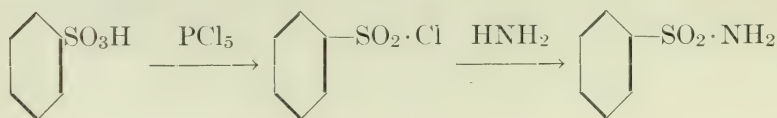
Most aldehydes give the *Schiff* test (restoring the pink color to a solution of magenta which has been decolorized with  $\text{SO}_2$ ).

**Carboxylic acids.**—The lower aliphatic monobasic acids (as formic and acetic) are liquids, soluble in water, but the solubility decreases with increasing molecular weight. The higher members (like palmitic and stearic) are solids, insoluble in water. The aliphatic polybasic acids (like oxalic and succinic) are solids, soluble in water. Many of the aromatic acids (like benzoic and *o*-toluic) are not very soluble in cold, but more so in hot water.

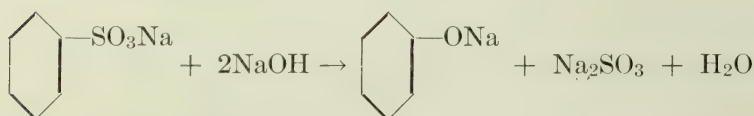
The acidity of the substance may be determined by titrating with standard alkali. The conversion of the acid to the corresponding ester (with alcohol and a dehydrating agent) and the elimination of the carboxyl group (in the form of  $\text{CO}_2$ ) by heating with soda lime, are often of help in identifying the acid. Often the acid is converted to its acyl halide; e.g.,



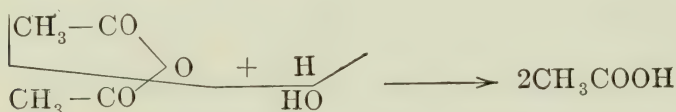
**Aromatic sulfonic acids.**—As a rule, these are soluble substances, difficult to crystallize. For purposes of identification, the corresponding amide is prepared by first forming the sulfonchloride with  $\text{PCl}_5$  and then converting the latter to the amide—with definite m.p.—:



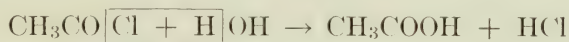
Fusion with alkali to form the corresponding phenol is also sometimes employed:



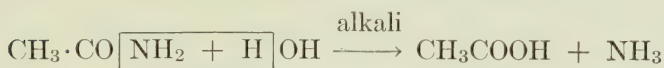
**Acid anhydrides.**—As a rule, the aliphatic compounds are colorless liquids, insoluble in water and soluble in alcohol and ether. The aromatic compounds are solid. They are usually identified by hydrolyzing them to the corresponding acids or salts; e.g.,



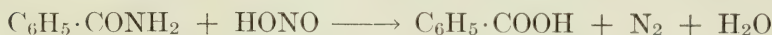
**Acyl halides.**—These are pungent-smelling liquids, easily convertible (hydrolysis) into the corresponding acids; e.g.,



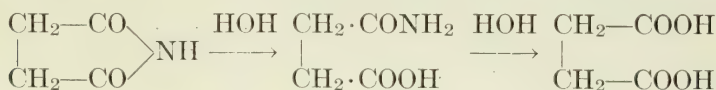
**Acid amides.**—These are, as a rule, well defined, crystalline substances. They can be hydrolyzed with boiling alkali to the corresponding acids (salts); e.g.,



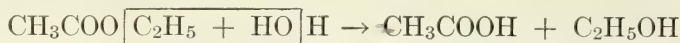
or



**Acid imides,** like the amides, are hydrolyzed by boiling with alkalies:

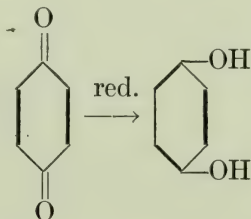


**Esters.**—These are volatile compounds, insoluble in water, with agreeable odors. The esters may be hydrolyzed with alkali; e.g.,



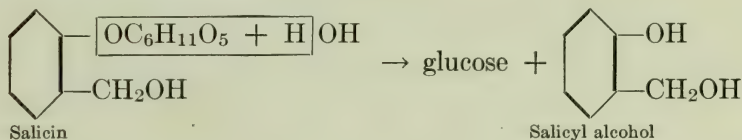


**Quinones.**—These are colored compounds (yellow or red). The *p*-benzoquinone is volatile with steam. As a rule, they can be reduced;



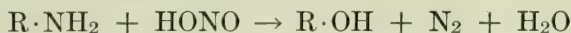
**Carbohydrates.** These are solids soluble in water (except the polysaccharides, such as starch, etc.). Among the polysaccharides, starch gives a blue color with iodine, and glycogen and the dextrans, a violet to a violet-red. The sugars (lactose, maltose, galactose, levulose, glucose) reduce *Fehling's* solution and form osazones with phenylhydrazine. Sucrose or cane sugar is a notable exception. They are optically active.

**Glucosides.**—On hydrolysis, these yield glucose, in addition to one or more substances; e.g.,

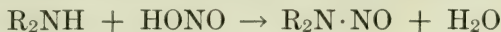


**Amines.**—The lower members of the aliphatic amines (like methylamine) are flammable gases, with an odor resembling ammonia; the higher members (like butylamine) are liquids. With acids they form salts, soluble in water and in alcohol. The aromatic amines are either liquids (like aniline) or solids (like diphenylamine).

With aliphatic amines, nitrous acid converts the primary amine into the corresponding alcohol:



the secondary amine is converted into the yellow nitrosoamine:

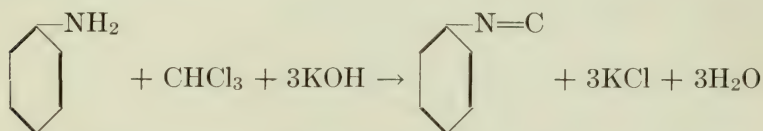


and the tertiary amine is not acted upon.

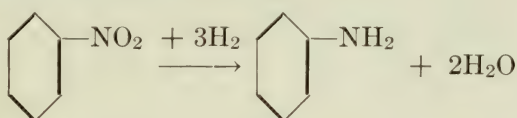
With the aromatic amines, the manner in which nitrous acid behaves will be dependent upon whether the  $\text{NH}_2$  group is in the nucleus or in the side-chain. If the amino group is in the nucleus,

diazonium salts are formed (in the cold) which are converted to phenols on heating; if the  $\text{NH}_2$  group is in the side-chain, then the compound behaves like an aliphatic amine. With secondary aromatic amines, nitrous acid yields nitroso derivatives similar to those obtained with aliphatic secondary amines. A tertiary amine such as dimethylaniline reacts with  $\text{HONO}$  to produce *p*-nitrosodimethylaniline.

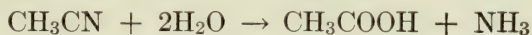
The primary amines, whether aromatic or aliphatic, give the carbylamine reaction (the isocyanide is formed which has a disgusting odor); e.g.,



**Nitro compounds.**—Only the aromatic nitro compounds are of importance. Usually, these are oily liquids or solids, insoluble in water and dilute  $\text{HCl}$ . They are identified by being reduced to the corresponding amines; e.g.,



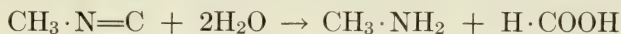
**Cyanides and Isocyanides.**—The cyanides are liquids or solids with an agreeable odor. They are hydrolyzed to the corresponding acids; e.g.,



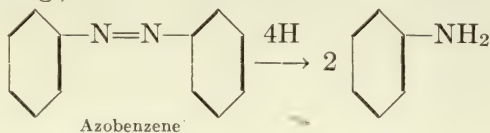
and are reduced to the primary amines; e.g.,



The isocyanides or carbylamines possess a disgusting odor. On hydrolysis, they yield formic acid and an amine; e.g.



**Azo compounds.**—These are colored solids and include a large class of important dyes. They yield, on reduction, amino compounds; e.g.,





**Purines**, of which uric acid and caffeine are examples, are not easily identified. Most of them give the *muroxide* test (evaporate the substance on a water bath to dryness with conc.  $\text{HNO}_3$ , cool and make alkaline with ammonia or  $\text{NaOH}$ ; a violet or red color is produced).

**Alkaloids**.—These are mostly solids (nicotine, and coniine are exceptions), soluble in alcohol, somewhat less soluble in ether, chloroform and benzene, and usually insoluble in water. Most of them are levorotatory. They dissolve in acids, forming salts, and are reprecipitated by alkalis. Alkaloids are not easily identified, but as a class they are precipitated by the "alkaloidal reagents," such as tungstic, phosphomolybdic, tannic and picric acids, potassium-mercuric iodide, etc. Many of them are identified by color reactions with  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  and an oxidizing agent.

**Sulfur compounds**.—The sulfonic acids have already been treated. The only others that need be mentioned here are the mercaptans (e.g.,  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{SH}$ ) and the sulfides (e.g.,  $(\text{C}_2\text{H}_5)_2\text{S}$ ). Both types of compounds have very disagreeable odors.

**Terpenes and allied compounds**.—These substances are flammable, mostly volatile, possess characteristic odors and are insoluble in water, but soluble in many organic solvents. They do not belong to the aliphatic or to the aromatic series of compounds and are, as a rule, complex in structure. Certain derivatives are usually prepared in order to identify them.

**Proteins**.—These are complex substances consisting, in the main, of linkages of amino acids. They are identified by a number of color tests. With the *Millon's* reagent (mercuric nitrate containing nitrous acid) most of them give a red color or precipitate. When heated with  $\text{HNO}_3$  a yellow color is developed and this is changed to an orange on the addition of ammonia (*xanthoproteic* reaction). When mixed with a strong solution of  $\text{KOH}$  and a drop or two of  $\text{CuSO}_4$  is added, a violet color is obtained (biuret reaction).

#### READING REFERENCES

- NOYES AND MULLIKEN—Laboratory Experiments on the Class Reactions and Identification of Organic Substances.  
 WESTON—A Scheme for the Detection of the More Common Classes of Carbon Compounds.  
 MEYER AND TINGLE—Determination of Radicals in Carbon Compounds.  
 KINGSCOTT AND KNIGHT—Methods of Quantitative Organic Analysis.  
 MULLIKEN—A Method for the Identification of Pure Organic Compounds.



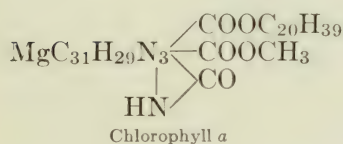
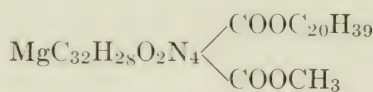
## CHAPTER XXXV

## PLANT AND ANIMAL PIGMENT

CHLOROPHYLL, CAROTIN, XANTHOPHYLL, FLAVONES, ANTHOCYANINS, HEMOGLOBIN AND BILE PIGMENTS

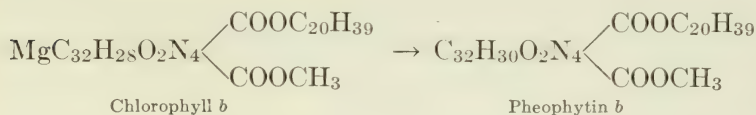
**Chlorophyll.**—The chemistry of chlorophyll, the green pigment in plants, has been worked out by Willstätter and his pupils. Without going into any details, some of the essential points as to its structure and general characteristics may be given.

Chlorophyll is really a mixture of two substances:

Chlorophyll *a*Chlorophyll *b*

Both contain the element magnesium in organic combination, and both are esters of a tribasic acid, chlorophyllin, combined with phytol,  $C_{20}H_{39}OH$  (an unsaturated alcohol) and methanol.

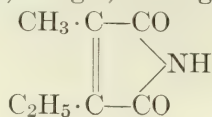
With alkali the ester groups in chlorophyll are hydrolyzed, giving the corresponding carboxylic acids (chlorophyllins). The COOH groups can next be removed by heating with alkali. Acids (oxalic or HCl) remove the magnesium from the molecule; e.g.,



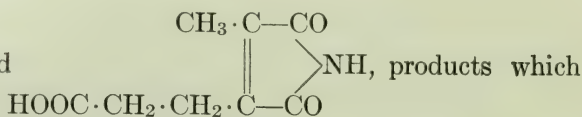
Chlorophyll b

Pheophytin b

When chlorophyll *a* or chlorophyll *b* is oxidized, we get, among other products, methyl ethyl maleinimide

$$\text{CH}_3 \cdot \text{C} \begin{array}{c} \text{CO} \\ \parallel \\ \text{NH} \end{array}$$


and hematinic acid

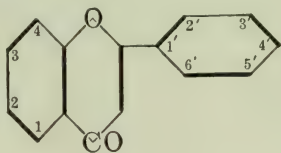


are formed in the oxidation of hemoglobin.

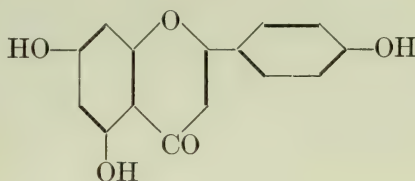
**Carotin** is associated with chlorophyll in the green leaf. It is a hydrocarbon with the formula  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{56}$ .

**Xanthophyll**, also associated with chlorophyll (and carotin), has the formula  $\text{C}_{40}\text{H}_{56}\text{O}_2$ . By oxidation, xanthophyll may be obtained from carotin, and *vice versa* by reduction, xanthophyll yields carotin. It is assumed that both these pigments play an important rôle in plant respiration. (Pigments from the egg yolk and blood serum have been isolated which are identical with carotin and xanthophyll.)

**Flavones**.—A number of yellow substances derived from flavone occur in plants



Some of these are chrysin (1, 3-dihydroxyflavone) which occurs in several varieties of poplar; apigenin (1, 3, 4'-trihydroxyflavone)

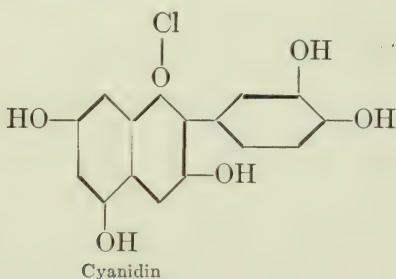


found in parsley and celery in the form of glucosides; etc.

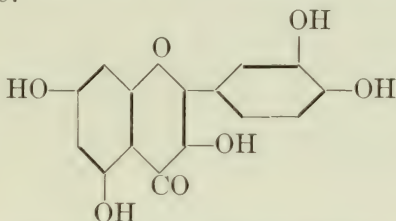
**Anthocyanins** are red, violet and blue pigments present in flowers, fruits, leaves of plants, etc., in the form of glucosides. By hydrolysis, the anthocyanins are converted into glucose (or other monosaccharide) and anthocyanidins.

It is believed that these anthocyanins are reduction products of flavones (and *vice versa*, that flavones are oxidation products of anthocyanins), and that changes from one to the other are brought about in the plant by oxidizing and reducing enzymes.

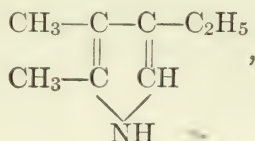
The anthocyanin in the cornflower and the rose is known as "cyanin," and this, on hydrolysis, yields two molecules of glucose and cyanidin (an anthocyanidin):



This cyanidin, Willstätter has also obtained by reducing quercetin, a hydroxyflavone:



**Hemoglobin**, the red pigment in blood, is a combination of hematin, an iron-containing substance, and globin, a protein belonging to the group of histones. It forms compounds with oxygen and carbon monoxide, forming oxyhemoglobin and carboxy-hemoglobin, the latter being the more stable. "Hemin" (or "hematin hydrochloride") is obtained from dried blood by boiling with glacial acetic acid. Very characteristic dark plates and prisms are obtained, which may be identified under the microscope. This method is made use of for the detection of blood. When hemoglobin is treated with  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ , the iron is set free as ferrous sulfate and hemotoporphyrin, an iron-free hematin, is obtained. From this substance, hemopyrrole,





may be obtained—a substance, which is also a decomposition product obtained from chlorophyll.

**Bile pigments** (bilirubin, biliverdin, bilicyanin, etc.) are the substances which are responsible for the characteristic color of bile. They are formed in the liver and originate from the hemoglobin of the blood. Bilirubin,  $C_{32}H_{36}N_4O_6$ , a reddish-brown pigment, found in abundance in carnivora, is oxidized (even by the oxygen of the air) to biliverdin,  $C_{32}H_{36}N_4O_8$ , a green pigment, found largely in the bile of herbivora. (Hydrobilirubin, a reduced product of bilirubin, is probably isomeric with stercobilin, the pigment of the feces, and with urobilin, a pigment in urine.) The *Gmelin's* test for bile pigments—the play of colors obtained when conc.  $HNO_3$  is added to bile—is dependent upon the production of various colored oxidation products of the type of bilirubin, biliverdin, etc.

**Melanins.**—This group includes several different varieties of amorphous black or brown pigments which are insoluble in water, alcohol, ether, chloroform, dilute acids, and which occur in skin, hair, etc. They are said to be derived from the amino acids tyrosine (p. 142) and tryptophan (p. 317).

#### READING REFERENCES

PALMER—Carotinoids and Related Pigments.

WILLSTÄTTER—Chlorophyll. *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, **37**, 323 (1915).

HARROW—Plant Pigments: Their Color and Interrelationships. *Biochemical Bulletin*, **4**, 161 (1915).

## CHAPTER XXXVI

### ENZYMES, VITAMINS, HORMONES

#### ENZYMES

THESE are catalytic substances produced as a result of cellular activity. They are responsible for many of the chemical changes which occur in the body.

So far enzymes have not been isolated in the pure condition, but they can be classified because they are "specific" in their action; that is to say, ptyalin, the enzyme found in saliva, will act on starch and one or two other carbohydrates, but not on proteins, whereas pepsin, the enzyme found in the gastric juice of the stomach, will act on proteins but not on carbohydrates.

A few of the common enzymes, giving their distribution, the substances acted upon ("substrates") and the end products formed, are given on the following page.

The ending *ase* has been adopted to denote an enzyme; for example, *sucrase* is an enzyme, its name also suggesting that it acts on the sugar sucrose. However, old names, such as pepsin, trypsin and rennin, still remain.

Enzymes are soluble in water, dilute salt solutions, dilute alcohol and glycerol. Like the proteins, they are precipitated by ammonium sulfate and concentrated alcohol. They are very easily adsorbed by various substances and show colloidal properties. They are, as a rule, destroyed at the temperature of boiling water, and their action is inhibited, but not destroyed at 0 °C. The enzymes act best (or show an optimum activity) around 37–45° C.

Enzymes are extremely susceptible to changes in hydrogen ion concentrations, and for each enzyme there is a particular  $p_H$  at which its reactivity is at a maximum ("optimum reaction"). For example, the  $p_H$  of trypsin is 8.0, that of pepsin 1.4, and of ptyalin 6.7. Since the neutral point is  $p_H$  7, this means that trypsin acts best in an alkaline solution, whereas pepsin acts

best in a decidedly acid solution, and ptyalin is most reactive in a slightly acid medium.

Name and Class	Distribution	Substrate	End-products
Ptyalin	Saliva	Starch, dextrin, etc.	Maltose
Lactase	Intestinal juice and mucosa	Lactose	Glucose and galactose
Maltase	Blood serum, liver, saliva, pancreatic and intestinal juices and lymph	Maltose	Glucose
Sucrase or invertase	Intestinal juice and mucosa	Sucrose	Glucose and fructose
Zymase	Yeast	Sugars	Alcohol, CO <sub>2</sub> , etc.
Urease	Micrococcus ureae, soy bean, etc.	Urea	Carbon dioxide and ammonia
Steapsin or lipase	Pancreatic juice	Fats	Fatty acid and glycerol
Catalase	Plant and animal tissues	Hydrogen peroxide	Oxygen or oxidation products
Peroxidase	Plant and animal tissues	Organic peroxides	Oxygen or oxidation products
Erepsin	Intestinal mucosa and juice, other tissues	Peptids, also peptones and casein	Simpler peptids and amino acids
Rennin	Gastric juice	Casein	Paracasein
Thrombin	Blood	Fibrinogen	Fibrin
Trypsin	Pancreatic juice	Proteins	Proteoses, peptones, peptids, amino acids
Pepsin	Gastric juice	Proteins	Proteoses, peptones, and peptids

#### VITAMINS

It has recently been found that besides proteins, fats, carbohydrates and mineral salts, there are other, as yet, ill-defined substances which, though needed in but minute quantities, are essential to life. These substances are known as *vitamins*. At



least three well-defined vitamins have been detected, though there is persistent talk of a possible fourth. For purposes of identification, the vitamins are often called "fat-soluble A," "water-soluble B," and "water-soluble C," (or vitamins A, B, and C). The presence of all three of these vitamins is essential to well-being. As a matter of fact, very few foods contain all three. Milk is one of the rare exceptions, but even then the quantity of vitamin C, which it contains is dangerously small. It is only by eating a variety of foods that we assure ourselves a liberal allowance of all three types of vitamins.

*Fat-soluble A.*—This is present in abundance in milk, butter, egg-yolk, cod-liver oil, and to a lesser extent, in beef fat and in many vegetable foods (lettuce, spinach, cabbage, carrots, potatoes, etc.). Lard and vegetable oils, such as olive oil are practically devoid of it. Cereals in general (wheat, rye, barley, etc.) contain little. In a general way, the statement may be made that this vitamin is present in green leaves and in the embryos of many seeds.

*Water-soluble B.*—This is more abundant than either of the other two. In fact, nearly all natural foods contain some of it. Yeast is particularly rich in this vitamin; so are milk and orange juice. The cereals contain it but only the outer layers, so that in patent flour there is much less of this vitamin than in whole wheat flour.

*Water-soluble C.*—Most fresh fruits and fresh vegetables contain this vitamin. The emphasis is advisedly put on fresh material. The orange and the tomato are particularly good examples.

*Effect of heat and oxidation.*—All three vitamins are more or less susceptible to heat, so that any process involving this operation—cooking or canning—is apt to destroy, or greatly lessen, the efficacy of the vitamins. The general experience has been that heating for a long time at a comparatively low temperature is even more harmful than heating for a short time at a comparatively high temperature. Of the three, the vitamin C seems the most susceptible to heat and the vitamin B least susceptible. The activity of all three vitamins is lessened by exposure to air or oxidation. This is particularly true of vitamins A and C.

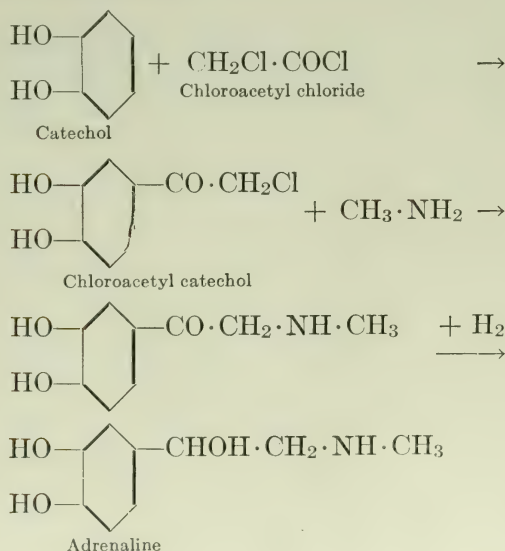
*Diseases due to lack of vitamins.*—Three diseases have been identified as being due to vitamin deficiency. One of them is

beri-beri, involving a general paralysis of the system and is due to a lack of vitamin B; another is scurvy, involving choppy gums and loose teeth and is due to lack of vitamin C; and the third is xerophthalmia, an eye disease, involving a lack of vitamin A. (Rickets, at one time supposed to be due to a lack of vitamin A, has a more complex origin.)

### HORMONES

In the body there are various ductless glands (glands without tubes), such as the thyroid, the pituitary, the adrenals, etc., which manufacture specific substances that find their way into the blood stream and influence other organs of the body. The substances so manufactured are called "hormones" (from the Greek "to excite") or "chemical messengers." These hormones profoundly influence various activities of the body. In at least two instances hormones have been isolated in the pure condition,

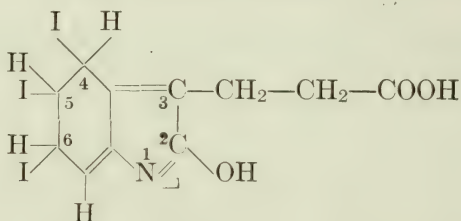
**Adrenaline.**—One of the hormones of the adrenal glands. may be isolated from the latter by first treating concentrated adrenal extracts with alcohol, lead acetate, etc.; then precipitating the active substance by the addition of concentrated ammonia. The precipitate is purified by repeatedly dissolving in acid and reprecipitating with ammonia. The adrenaline may be synthesized by the following reactions:






Adrenaline is most frequently used to constrict the blood vessels and thereby increase the blood pressure. It is by far the most powerful known hemostatic (checks bleeding).

**Thyroxin** is the hormone in the thyroid gland. Kendall, who has isolated it from the gland, has given it the formula



4, 5, 6-Trihydro-4, 5, 6-triiodo-2-hydroxy- $\beta$ -indolepropionic acid.

It is administered in diseases involving a deficient secretion of the thyroid gland.

**Insulin**.—This is the hormone present in the pancreas, and its absence, as Banting and Macleod have recently shown, gives rise to diabetes. Insulin has not, as yet, been isolated in the pure state, but some very active extracts are obtainable. An extract containing insulin is now universally used in the treatment of diabetes. The extract has to be injected. 

**Pituitrin**, an impure extract of the pituitary body, which contains the hormone, is used to promote uterine contractions and to stimulate peristalsis.

**Secretin** represents a hormone present in the intestinal mucosa which plays an important part in controlling the flow of pancreatic juice into the small intestine, and thereby aids in digestion

# READING REFERENCES

BAYLISS—The Nature of Enzyme Action.

BARGER—The Simpler Natural Bases. (1914), pp. 81-101 (Adrenaline).

FALK—The Chemistry of Enzyme Actions.

HARROW—Contemporary Science. (1921), pp. 76-84 (What Are Enzymes?)

HARROW—Vitamins—Essential Food Factors.

SHERMAN AND SMITH—The Vitamins.

HARROW—Glands in Health and Disease.



## CHAPTER XXXVII

### NOMENCLATURE OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

THE number of organic compounds is in excess of 225,000, and the naming of such compounds presents no little difficulty. Some of the methods adopted for naming organic compounds have been referred to in the various chapters of the book. In the present chapter, the methods adopted will be briefly summarized. In addition, the naming of various groups, and the principles involved in the naming of a number of somewhat complex compounds, will be given. **It is hoped that such an outline will prove of value to the student of chemistry who is about to begin more advanced work in organic chemistry, or in one of its many applications, and who will have occasion to consult the standard reference books and the current literature.**

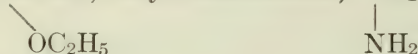
It would be well, at the outset, for the student to review the chart at the beginning of the book, which gives type formulas. From this chart, as well as from various chapters in the book, we may deduce the following rules:

<i>A word ending in</i>	<i>Indicates</i>
-ane	paraffin
-ene or -ylene	olefin
-ine	acetylene
-diene	diolefin
-diine	diacetylene
-ene	aromatic hydrocarbon (as a rule)
-ol	hydroxyl group
-diol	two hydroxyl groups
-al	aldehyde
-one	ketone (or quinone)
-ic (sometimes -oic)	acid
-ase	enzyme
-ose	sugars
-ate, -ite	salts, esters

In naming<sup>1</sup> a compound so as to indicate that oxygen is replaced by sulfur, the prefix *thio* is used; e.g., HCNS, *thiocyanic acid*; CS(NH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>, *thiourea*.

Hydroxyl derivatives of hydrocarbons end in *-ol*, as *glycerol*, *resorcinol*, *pyrocatechol*.

The names of the groups NH<sub>2</sub>, NHR, NR<sub>2</sub>, NH or NR end in *-ido* only when they are substituents in an acid group, otherwise in *-ino*; e.g., CH<sub>3</sub>·C=NH, ethyl imidoacetate; CH<sub>2</sub>·CH<sub>2</sub>·COOH,



*β*-aminopropionic acid.

*Hydroxy* is used to designate the hydroxyl group; e.g., CH<sub>2</sub>·COOH, *hydroxyacetic acid*.



Salts of organic bases with hydrochloric acid are called *hydrochlorides*; e.g.,



NH<sub>2</sub>·HCl, *aniline hydrochloride*.

Compounds which are not alcohols, but have received names ending in *-ol* are spelled *-ole*, as *anisole*, *indole*. C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>6</sub> is called *benzene* (not *benzol*), C<sub>7</sub>H<sub>8</sub> *toluene*, etc.

The endings *-ine* are used for basic substances, and *-in* for glycerides, glucosides, bitter principles, proteins, etc.; e.g., *aniline*, *purine*, *morphine*; but *gelatin*, *palmitin*, *amygdalin*, *albumin*, *protein*.

In naming organic compounds the connective *o* is used in such names of substituent radicals as *amino-*, *bromo-*, *cyano-*, and *iodo-*; e.g., *bromobenzene*, *chloroacetic acid*, *nitroaniline*.

Acid radicals, such as C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>CO, end in *-yl*, and their compounds with halogens, as C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>COCl, are called *chlorides*, *bromides*, etc.; e.g., *benzoyl chloride*.

The names *butane*, *pentane*, etc., are used only for the normal hydrocarbons, with the prefix *cyclo-*, for saturated cyclic hydrocarbons.

To designate *ortho-*, *meta-*, *para-*, *dextro-*, *levo-*, *racemic*, *symmetrical*, *secondary*, *tertiary* and *meso*, we use *o-*, *m-*, *p-*, *d-*, *l-*, *dl-*, *sym-*, *sec-*, *tert-* and *meso-*, respectively.

<sup>1</sup>These suggestions are taken from the publications of the *American Chemical Society*.

Numerals precede the part of the name to which they refer; e.g., 2-bromo-3-methylbenzenesulfonic acid.

For complex cyclic compounds requiring fixed numberings, the student is referred to Richter's *Lexikon der Kohlenstoff-Verbindungen*, Vol. 1.

The following list gives the names of a number of important organic radicals:<sup>2</sup>

acetamido  $\text{CH}_3\text{CONH—}$

acetenyl = ethinyl

acetimido  $\text{CH}_3\text{C}(:\text{NH})—$

acetonyl  $\text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_2—$

acetoxy  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO}\cdot\text{O—}$

acetyl  $\text{CH}_3\text{CO—}$

acetylene =  $\text{CH}\cdot\text{CH=}$

acrylyl  $\text{CH}_2 : \text{CHCO—}$

adipyl  $\text{—OC}\cdot(\text{CH}_2)_4\cdot\text{CO—}$

alanyl  $\text{CH}_3\cdot\text{CHNH}_2\cdot\text{CO—}$

alkoxy  $\text{RO—}$  (*any alkyl radical attached by oxygen*)

allyl  $\text{CH}_2 : \text{CH}\cdot\text{CH}_2—$

$\beta$ -allyl = isopropenyl

amidoxalyl  $\text{H}_2\text{N}\cdot\text{CO}\cdot\text{CO—}$

amino (amido)  $\text{H}_2\text{N—}$

amoxy  $\text{CH}_3\cdot(\text{CH}_2)_4\cdot\text{O—}$

amyl  $\text{CH}_3\cdot(\text{CH}_2)_4—$  or  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_{11}$

*tert*-amyl  $\begin{array}{c} \text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2 \\ \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{C—} \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ (\text{CH}_3)_2 \end{array}$

amylidene  $\text{CH}_3\cdot(\text{CH}_2)_3\cdot\text{CH=}$

anilino  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_5\text{NH—}$

anisal  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{O}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CH=}$

anisoyl  $p\text{-CH}_3\text{O}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CO—}$

anisyl (*o*, *m* or *p*)  $\text{CH}_3\text{O}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4—$

anisylidene = anisal

anthranilo  $o\text{-C}_6\text{H}_4\begin{array}{c} \diagup \quad \diagdown \\ \text{CO} \\ | \\ \text{N—} \end{array}$

anthranoyl  $o\text{-H}_2\text{N}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CO—}$

anthraquinonyl (*from anthraquinone*, 2 isomers)

anthryl (*from anthracene*, 5 isomers)

<sup>2</sup> The list is taken from one prepared by the editors of *Chemical Abstracts* or the "Decennial Index" and brought up to date in subsequent editions.





boryl  $O : B-$ bromo  $Br-$  $\Delta^1$ -butenyl  $CH_3CH_2CH : CH-$  $\Delta^2$ -butenyl  $CH_3 \cdot CH : CH \cdot CH_2-$  $\Delta^3$ -butenyl  $CH_2 : CH \cdot (CH_2)_2-$ butoxy  $CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_3 \cdot O-$ butyl  $CH_3(CH_2)_3-$ 

$$\begin{array}{c} CH_3CH_2 \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ sec\text{-}butyl \quad CH- \\ \quad \quad \quad CH_3 \end{array}$$
*tert*-butyl  $(CH_3)_3C-$ butylene  $-CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2-$  [1,4-form]butylidene  $CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_2 \cdot CH=$ butyryl  $CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_2 \cdot CO-$ camphanyl (*from camphane*)  $C_{10}H_{17}$ camphoroyl (*from camphoric acid*)  $C_8H_{14}(CO)_2:$ camphoryl (*from camphor*)  $C_{10}H_{15}O-$ camphorylidene (*from camphor*)  $C_{10}H_{14}O:$ carbamido  $H_2N \cdot CO \cdot NH-$ carbamyl  $H_2N \cdot CO-$ 

carbanilino = phenylcarbamyl

carbazyl (*from carbazole, 5 isomers*)  $C_{12}H_8N-$ carbethoxy  $C_2H_5O \cdot OC-$ carbomethoxy  $CH_3O \cdot OC-$ carbonyl  $OC=$ carbonyldioxy  $-O \cdot CO \cdot O-$ carboxy  $HO \cdot OC-$ 

$$\begin{array}{c} (4) (CH_3)_2CH \\ \diagdown \quad \diagup \\ carvacryl \quad C_6H_3-(2) \\ \quad \quad \quad (1) CH_3 \end{array}$$
cetyl  $CH_3(CH_2)_{14}CH_2-$ chloro  $Cl-$ chloromercuri  $ClHg-$ cinnamal  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH \cdot CH=$ 

cinnamenyl = styryl

cinnamyl  $C_6H_5CH : CHCO-$ 

cinnamylidene = cinnamal

cresotyl (*from cresotic acid*) 2, 3- $(OH)(CH_3)C_6H_3CO-$ 

cresoxy = toloxy

cresyl (10 isomers) (*o, m or p*)  $(HO)(CH_3) \cdot C_6H_3-$ 

cresylene = tolylene

crotonyl  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH} : \text{CHCO}-$

cumal  $p-(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4 \cdot \text{CH} =$

cumenyl  $(\text{CH}_3)_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_4-$

cuminal = cumal

cyano  $\text{NC}-$

cyclobutyl  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}-$

cyclohexenyl (*from cyclohexene, 3 isomers*)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_9-$

cyclohexyl (*from cyclohexane*)  $\text{C}_6\text{H}_{11}-$

cyclohexylidene  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{C} =$

cyclopentenyl (*from cyclopentene*)  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_7-$

cyclopentyl (*from cyclopentane*)  $\text{C}_5\text{H}_9-$

cyclopropyl  $\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}-$

cymyl  $\begin{array}{l} (4)(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH} \\ (1)\text{CH}_3 \end{array} \text{C}_6\text{H}_3-(3)$

desyl  $\begin{array}{l} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5- \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{CO} \end{array} \text{CH}-$

diazo  $-\text{N} : \text{N}-$

diazoamino = azimino

diazoöxy  $-\text{N}(:\text{O}) : \text{N}-$

epoxy  $-\text{O}-$  (*to different atoms already united in some other way*)

ethene = ethylene

ethenyl  $\text{CH}_3\text{C} \equiv$

ethinyl  $\text{CH} : \text{C}-$

ethoxalyl  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O} \cdot \text{OC} \cdot \text{CO}-$

ethoxy  $\text{C}_2\text{H}_5\text{O}-$

ethyl  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH}_2-$

ethylene  $-\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2-$

ethylenedioxy  $-\text{O} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_2 \cdot \text{O}-$

ethylidene  $\text{CH}_3\text{CH} =$

fluoro  $\text{F}-$

fluorylidene (*from fluorene*)  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_8 :$

fluoryl (*from fluorene, 5 isomers*)  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_9-$

formamido  $\text{HCONH}-$

formazyl  $\begin{array}{l} \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{N} : \text{N} \\ \text{C}_6\text{H}_5 \cdot \text{NH} \cdot \text{N} \end{array} \text{C}-$

formyl  $\text{OCH}-$



fural (2 isomers)  $\text{O} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C} \cdot \text{CH} =$

furfural = fural

furfuryl = furyl

furfurylidene = fural

furoyl  $\text{O} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C} \cdot \text{CO} -$

furyl (2 isomers)  $\text{O} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH} : \text{C} -$

furylidene = fural

geranyl (from geraniol)  $\text{C}_{10}\text{H}_{17} -$

glutamyl  $-\text{OC} \cdot \text{CHNH}_2 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_2 \cdot \text{CO} -$

glutaryl  $-\text{OC} \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_3 \cdot \text{CO} -$

glyceryl  $-\text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH} \cdot \text{CH}_2 -$

glycolyl  $\text{HOCH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} -$

glycyl  $\text{H}_2\text{NCH}_2 \cdot \text{CO} -$

glyoxyl  $\text{OCH} \cdot \text{CO} -$

guaiacyl = *o*-anisyl

guanido  $\text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{C}(:\text{NH}) \cdot \text{NH} -$

guanyl  $\text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{C}(:\text{NH}) -$

hendecyl  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_{10} -$

heptyl  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_6 -$

hexadecyl = cetyl

hexyl  $\text{CH}_3 \cdot (\text{CH}_2)_5 -$

hippuryl  $\text{PhCONHCH}_2\text{CO} -$

homopiperonyl (3,4)( $\text{CH}_2\text{O}_2$ )  $\cdot \text{C}_6\text{H}_3 \cdot \text{CH}_2 \cdot \text{CH}_2 -$

hydrazī  $\begin{array}{c} \text{NH} \\ | \\ \text{NH} \end{array} \rangle (\text{to same atom})$

hydrazino  $\text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{NH} -$

hydrazo  $-\text{HN} \cdot \text{NH} -$  (to different atoms)

hydrazono  $\text{H}_2\text{N} \cdot \text{N} =$

hydroxamino  $\text{HONH} -$

hydroximino = isonitroso

hydroxy (hydroxyl)  $\text{HO} -$

-idene added to any radical usually means a double bond at point of attachment

imidazolyl (from imidazole, 4 isomers)  $\text{C}_3\text{H}_3\text{N}_2 -$

imino (imido)  $\text{NH} =$

indenyl (from indene, 7 isomers)  $\text{C}_9\text{H}_8 -$

indyl (*from indole, 7 isomers*)  $C_8H_6N-$

indylidene (*from indole*)  $C_8H_7N :$

iodo I—

iodoso OI—

iodoxy  $O_2I-$

isoallyl = propenyl

isoamoxy  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2O-$

isoamyl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2-$

isoamylidene  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH=$

isobutenyl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot C=CH-$

isobutoxy  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2O-$

isobutyl  $(CH_3)_2CH \cdot CH_2-$

isobutyryl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CO-$

isocyano  $C : N-$

isodiazo  $\begin{array}{c} N \\ | \\ HN \end{array} \gg (to\ some\ atom)$

isohexyl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot (CH_2)_3-$

isoindyl (*from isoindole, 4 isomers*)  $C_8H_6N-$

isoleucyl  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH(CH_3) \cdot CHNH_2 \cdot CO-$

isonitro  $HOON=$

isonitroso  $HON=$

$\Delta_2$ -isopentenyl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH : CH-$

isophthalal (*m*)  $= HC \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH=$

isophthalylidene = isophthalal

isopropenyl  $\begin{array}{c} CH_3 \\ | \\ CH_2 \end{array} \gg C-$

isopropoxy  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CHO-$

isopropyl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH-$

isopropylidene  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot C=$

isoquinoly! (*from isoquinoline, 9 isomers*)  $C_9H_6N-$

isothiocyano  $S : C : N-$

isovaleryl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO-$

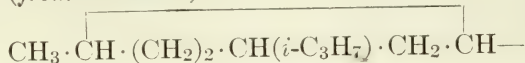
isoxazolyl (*from isoxazole, 5 isomers*)  $C_3H_2ON-$

keto  $O=$  (*to same atom*)

leucyl  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CHNH_2 \cdot CO-$

malonyl  $-OC \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO-$

menthyl (*from menthane*)



- mercapto HS—  
 mercuri HHg— or —Hg—  
 mesityl (*from mesitylene*) 3,5-(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>—  
 methene = methylene  
 methenyl CH≡  
 methionyl —SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>2</sub>—  
 methoxy CH<sub>3</sub>O—  
 methyl CH<sub>3</sub>—  
 methylene CH<sub>2</sub>=  
 methylenedioxy —O·CH<sub>2</sub>·O—  
 methylol = (hydroxymethyl)  
 naphthal C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>7</sub>CH=—  
 naphthalimido (*from naphthalic acid*) C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub>(CO)<sub>2</sub>N—  
 naphthenyl C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>7</sub>C≡  
 naphthobenzyl C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>7</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>—  
 naphthoxy C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>7</sub>O—  
 naphthoyl C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>7</sub>CO—  
 naphthyl (1- or 2-) C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>7</sub>—  
 naphthylene C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>6</sub>=  
 naphthylidene C<sub>10</sub>H<sub>8</sub> :  
 nitramino O<sub>2</sub>N·NH—  
 nitrilo N≡  
 nitro O<sub>2</sub>N—  
*aci*-nitro = isonitro  
 nitroso ON—  
 octyl CH<sub>3</sub>·(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>7</sub>—  
 oxalyl —OC·CO—  
 oxamido H<sub>2</sub>N·CO·CONH—  
 oximido = isonitroso  
 oxy —O— (used as a connective; cf. epoxy and keto)  
 pentamethylene —CH<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>—  
 pentazido  $\begin{array}{c} \text{N}=\text{N}-\text{N}=\text{N}-\text{N}- \\ | \qquad \qquad | \end{array}$   
 pentenyl (*like butenyl*)  
 pentyl = amyl  
 perimidyl (*from perimidine, 8 isomers*) C<sub>11</sub>H<sub>7</sub>N<sub>2</sub>—  
 perthio (*replacing O only*) S : S—  
 phenacyl C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>5</sub>·CO·CH<sub>2</sub>—  
 phenacylidene PhCOCH :  
 phenanthryl (*from phenanthrene, 9 isomers*) C<sub>14</sub>H<sub>9</sub>—



phenanthrylene (*from phenanthrene*)  $C_{14}H_8$  :

phenethyl  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2CH_2-$

phenetido  $C_2H_5O \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH-$

phenetyl (*o, m or p*)  $C_2H_5O \cdot C_6H_4-$

phenoxy  $C_6H_5O-$

phenyl  $C_6H_5-$

phenylazo  $C_6H_5 \cdot N : N-$

phenylcarbamido  $C_6H_5 \cdot NHCONH-$

phenylene (*o, or p*)  $C_6H_4=$

phenylenedisazo  $-N : NC_6H_4N : N-$

phenylidene (*o or p*)  $\overbrace{CH : CH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH : CH}^{\quad} \cdot C=$

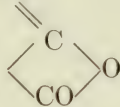
phenylureido = phenylcarbamido

phosphazo  $-N : P-$

phthalal  $=CH \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH=$  (*o*)

phthalamido (*o*)  $HO_2C \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CONH-$

phthalidene (*from phthalide*)  $C_6H_4$



phthalimido (*o*)  $C_6H_4(CO)_2N-$

phthalyl  $-OC \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO-$  (*o*)

picryl (2,4,6)  $(NO_2)_3 \cdot C_6H_2-$

piperidyl (*from piperidine, 4 isomers*)  $C_5H_{10}N-$

piperonyl (3,4)  $(CH_2O_2)C_6H_3 \cdot CH_2-$

piperonylidene (3, 4)  $(CH_2O_2)C_6H_3 \cdot CH=$

pivalyl (*from pivalic acid*)  $(CH_3)_3CCO-$

prolyl (*from proline*)  $\overbrace{NH \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH}^{\quad} \cdot CO-$

propargyl  $HC : C \cdot CH_2-$

propenyl  $CH_3 \cdot CH : CH-$

propenylidene  $CH_3CH : C :$

propiolyl  $HC : C \cdot CO-$

propionyl  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO-$

propoxy  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2O-$

propyl (*n*)  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH_2-$

propylene  $-CH(CH_3) \cdot CH_2-$

propylidene  $CH_3 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CH=$

pseudoallyl = isopropenyl

s-pseudocumyl (1,3,4)  $(CH_3)_3 \cdot C_6H_2-$

pseudoindyl (from *pseudoindole*, 7 isomers)  $C_8H_6N-$

pyrazolyl (from *pyrazole*, 4 isomers)  $C_3H_3N_2-$

pyridyl (from *pyridine*, 3 isomers)  $C_5H_4N-$

pyrimidyl (from *pyrimidine*)  $C_4H_3N_2-$

pyrroyl  $\overbrace{CH : CH \cdot CH : CH \cdot N \cdot CO}-$

pyrryl (from *pyrrole*, 3 isomers)  $C_4H_4N-$

quinolyl (from *quinoline*, 7 isomers)  $C_9H_6N-$

quinonyl = quinoyl

quinoxalyl (from *quinoxaline*)  $C_8H_5N_2-$

salicyl (*o*)  $HO \cdot C_6H_4-$

salicylal (*o*)  $HO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH=$

salicylyl (*o*)  $HO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO-$

selenino  $(HO)O \cdot Se-$

seleno  $Se=$

selenocyano  $NCS-$

selenono  $(OH)_2OSe-$

selenonyl  $-SeO_2-$

silicono  $(OH)O \cdot Si-$

silicyl  $H_3Si-$

silicylene  $H_2Si=$

stearyl  $CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_{16} \cdot CO-$

styrene  $-CH(C_6H_5) \cdot CH_2-$

styrolene = styrene

styryl  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH : CH-$

succinamyl  $H_2N \cdot CO \cdot CH_2CH_2 \cdot CO-$

succinyl  $-OC \cdot CH_2CH_2 \cdot CO-$

sulfamino  $HO_3S \cdot NH-$

sulfamyl  $H_2NO \cdot OS-$

sulfhydryl = mercapto

sulfino  $HO_2S-$

sulfinyl  $OS=$

sulfo  $HO_3S-$

sulfonamido  $R \cdot SO_2 \cdot NH-$

sulfonyl  $R \cdot SO_2-$

sulfuryl = sulfonyl

tauryl  $H_2N \cdot CH_2CH_2SO_2-$

telluro  $Te=$

terephthalal (from *terephthalaldehyde*) :  $HCC_6H_4CH :$

tetramethylene = 1,4-butylene

tetrazyl (from *tetrazine*, 2 isomers)  $CHN_4-$

thiazyl (from *thiazole*, 3 isomers)  $C_8H_2NS-$

thienyl (from *thiophene*, 2 isomers)  $C_4H_3S-$

thio  $-S-$

thiocarbonyl  $SC=$

thiocyano  $NCS-$

thiohydroxy = mercapto

thiol (*S replacing O in OH*) } Used in place of "thio" only  
thiono (*S replacing O in CO*) } when required for distinction

thionyl = sulfinyl

thujyl (from *sabinane*, attached at 2 position)  $C_{10}H_{17}-$

thymyl (from *thymol*)  $HO \cdot C : C(CH_3) \cdot CH : CH \cdot C(i-C_3H_7) : C-$

toloxy (*o, m or p*)  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4O-$

toluino (*o, m or p*)  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot NH-$

toluyl (*o, m or p*)  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CO-$

$\alpha$ -toluyl  $C_6H_5 \cdot CH_2 \cdot CO-$

tolyl (*o, m and p*)  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_4-$

$\alpha$ -tolyl = benzyl

tolyene (6 isomers)  $CH_3 \cdot C_6H_3=$

$\alpha$ -tolyene = benzal

triazeno  $NH_2 \cdot N : N-$

triazole  $N : N \cdot N-$

triazolyl (from *triazole*)  $C_2H_2N_3-$

trimethylene  $-CH_2CH_2CH_2-$

tryptophyl (from *tryptophan*)  $C_{11}H_{11}O_2N_2-$

tyrosyl (from *tyrosine*)  $p-HO \cdot C_6H_4 \cdot CH_2CHNH_2 \cdot CO-$

undecyl = hendecyl (in sense  $C_{11}H_{23}-$ )

uramino = carbamido

ureido (*by some used synonymously with carbamido*)

$-NH \cdot CO \cdot NH-$

valeryl  $CH_3 \cdot (CH_2)_3 \cdot CO-$

valyl (from *valine*)  $(CH_3)_2 \cdot CH \cdot CHNH_2 \cdot CO-$

vanillal (3,4)  $(CH_3O)(HO) \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot CH=$

vanilloyl (3,4)  $(CH_3O)(HO) \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot CO-$

vanillyl (3,4)  $(CH_3O)(HO) \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot CH_2-$

veratral (3,4)  $(CH_3O)_2 \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot CH=$

veratroyl (3,4)  $(CH_3O)_2 \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot CO-$

veratryl (3,4)  $(CH_3O)_2 \cdot C_6H_3 \cdot CH_2-$

veratrylidene = veratral

vinyl  $H_2C : CH-$



vinylene  $\text{—CH : CH—}$

vinylidene  $\text{H}_2\text{C : C :}$

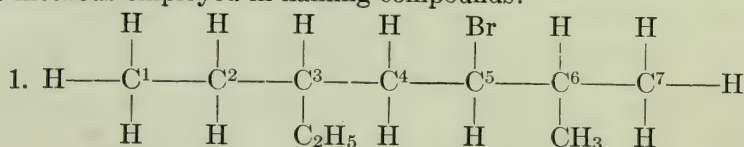
xanthyl (from xanthene, 6 isomers),  $\text{C}_{13}\text{H}_9\text{O—}$

xyloyl (from xylic acid, 7 isomers)  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\cdot\text{CO—}$

xylyl (9 isomers)  $(\text{CH}_3)_2\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_3\text{—}$

xylylene  $\text{—H}_2\text{C}\cdot\text{C}_6\text{H}_4\cdot\text{CH}_2\text{—}$

We shall now illustrate with a number of examples some of the methods employed in naming compounds:

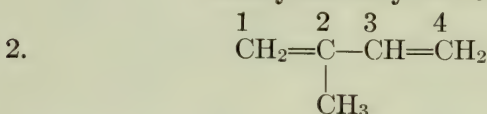


(a) In naming this compound, first select the longest straight chain. In this case, it would be a seven-carbon chain. Therefore, the naming will center around the saturated hydrocarbon heptane.

(b) Consider the elements and groups other than hydrogen as substituents.

(c) Therefore the name of this compound becomes:

3-ethyl-6-methyl-5-bromoheptane

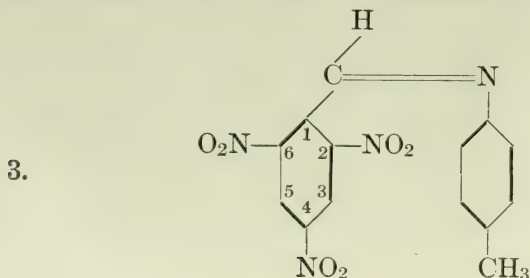



(a) Selecting the longest chain, we have four carbon atoms.

(b) Since there are two double bonds in this chain, the name of the compound must end in *-diene* and center around the unsaturated hydrocarbon butadiene.

(c) The name of this compound becomes 2-methyl butadiene.

(d) But to indicate the positions of the double bonds, the final name becomes 2-methyl-1, 3-butadiene (isoprene).

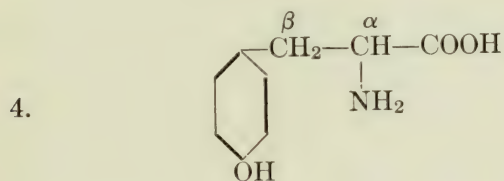


(a) This compound contains the benzal  (divalent)

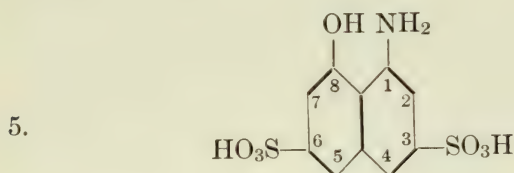
group wherein the three hydrogens in positions 2, 4, 6, are replaced by three nitro groups.

(b) In addition, we have *p*-toluidine, where in place of the two hydrogens in the amino group, there is a double bond.

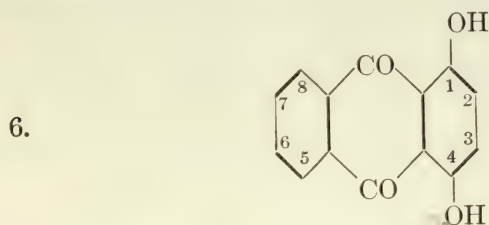
(c) Therefore, the name of this compound becomes 2, 4, 6-trinitrobenzal-*p*-toluidine.



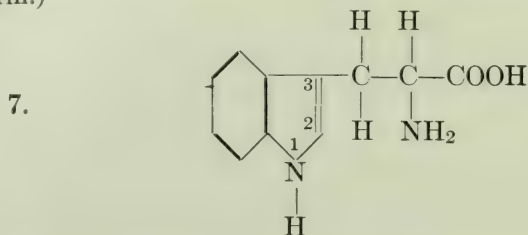
This compound is named  $\alpha$ -amino- $\beta$ -*p*-hydroxyphenylpropionic acid (tyrosine), because it has an amino group attached to the  $\alpha$ -carbon atom and the *p*-hydroxyphenyl group attached to the  $\beta$ -carbon atom.



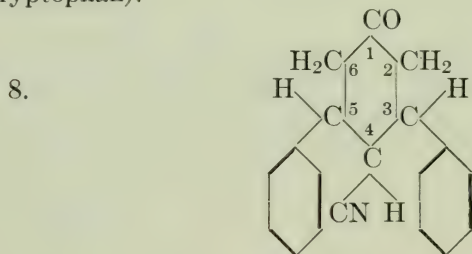
This compound is named 1-amino-8-hydroxy-3,6-naphthalenedisulfonic acid. ("H-acid")



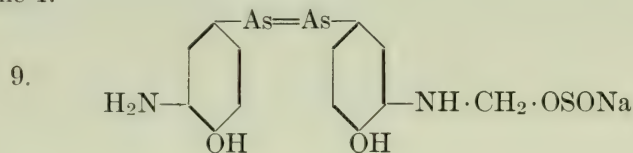
This compound is named 1, 4-dihydroxyanthraquinone (quinizarin.)



This compound is named  $\alpha$ -amino-3-indolepropionic acid (Tryptophan).



This compound is named 3,5-diphenyl-4-cyanocyclohexanone-1.



This compound is named sodium 3, 3'-diamino-4, 4'-dihydroxy-arsenobenzene-N-methylenesulfinate.



## APPENDIX

---

### GLOSSARY

**Active principles** include carbohydrates, alkaloids, glucosides organic acids, resins, oils and fats, volatile oils, protein bodies and ferments.

**Analgesics** are drugs which relieve pain when absorbed into the blood.

**Anesthetics** are drugs which produce insensibility to pain. (Local anesthetics are drugs which produce insensibility to pain at the site of application.)

**Anodynes** are drugs which relieve pain when applied locally. They are usually milder in action than the analgesics.

**Antacids** are drugs which neutralize acids.

**Antidote** is an agent which affects a poison either physically or chemically or both so as to remove it from the body or alter its character by forming with it an insoluble or inert compound.

**Antifebrin** is another name for acetanilide (used to decrease fever).

**Antipyretics** are drugs which reduce fever.

**Antiscorbutic** is an agent effective against scurvy.

**Antiseptics** are substances which check the growth of bacteria.

**Antispasmodics** are drugs which lessen contractions of muscles, and also lessen convulsions.

**Aperients** are substances which produce mild movements of the bowels.

**Aromatics** are spicy substances which increase the secretion of the stomach and the intestines.

**Astringents** are drugs which contract or harden the tissues.

**Bactericide** is an agent which destroys bacteria.

**Balsams** are semi-fluid, resinous and fragrant vegetable juices of many varieties.

**Bitters** are drugs which increase the appetite because of their bitter taste.

**Cardiac stimulants** are drugs which increase the activity of the heart.

**Cardiac depressants** are drugs which lessen the heart action.

**Carminatives** are drugs which produce a feeling of comfort in the stomach and relieve the formation of gas in the stomach and the intestines.

**Catabolism** is the breaking down of tissue material in the body.

**Cathartics** are drugs which cause movements of the bowels.

**Caustics** are substances which burn or destroy tissues.

**Counterirritants** are drugs which act on the skin.

**Cyanosis** signifies "blueing" of the skin.

**Deodorants** are remedies which destroy unpleasant odors.

**Disinfectants** are drugs which check the growth of bacteria.

**Diuretics** are drugs which increase the flow of urine.

**Emetics** are drugs which produce vomiting.

**Expectorants** are drugs which increase coughing and bronchial secretions.

**Febrifuges** are drugs which reduce fever.

**Gums** are amorphous, transparent substances which are widely disseminated in plants.

**Hemostatics** are substances which check bleeding.

**Hypnotics** are drugs which produce sleep.

**Lachrymator** is a substance which produces the secretion and discharge of tears.

**Lacteal** is any one of the intestinal lymphatics which absorbs fats.

**Laxatives** are drugs which produce mild movements of the bowels.

**Myotics** are drugs which narrow (contract) the pupil of the eye.

**Mydriatics** are drugs which widen (dilate) the pupil of the eye.

**Narcosis** is the state of profound unconsciousness produced by a drug.

**Narcotic** is a drug which produces stupor or complete insensibility.

**Parasiticide** is an agent which destroys the animal and vegetable parasites found upon the human body.

**Peristalsis** is the worm-like movement by which the alimentary canal propels its contents.

**Purgatives** are drugs which produce moderately active and frequent movements of the bowels.

**Putrefaction** is the decomposition of animal or vegetable substances effected largely through micro-organisms, and resulting in the production of various solids, liquids and gases, some of which have a foul odor.

**Refrigerants** are substances which relieve thirst and cool the patient, in fever.

**Resins** are complex bodies of resinous character. They are generally considered to be oxidation products of hydrocarbons such as terpenes.

**Respiratory stimulants** are drugs which increase the depth and frequency of breathing.

**Respiratory depressants** are drugs which lessen the frequency and depth of breathing.

**Rubefacients** are drugs which redden the skin by widening (dilating) the capillaries.

**Sedatives** are drugs which lessen the activity of an organ or part of the body.

**Somnifacients** or **Soporifics** are drugs which produce sleep.

**Styptics** are substances which stop bleeding.

**Trypanocidal power** is the power possessed by certain bodies of destroying certain parasites found in the blood of man and of animals.

**Vaso-constrictor** is a drug which increases arterial pressure.

**Vaso-dilator** is a drug which lowers arterial tension.

**Vermicides** are drugs which destroy worms.

**Vertigo** means dizziness.

**Vesicatories** or **Vesicants** are drugs which produce blisters.



### BOILING AND MELTING POINTS OF A NUMBER OF ORGANIC COMPOUNDS

Since very few physical constants are given in the body of the work, we shall here give the boiling and melting points of a number of compounds which the student is apt to encounter.<sup>1</sup>

NAME	m. p., ° C.	b. p., ° C.
Acetaldehyde.....	-120	21
Acetamide.....	82	222
Acetanilide.....	114	305
Acetic acid.....	16.7	119
Acetic anhydride.....		139
Acetone.....	- 94	55.6
Acetonitrile.....	- 45	81
Acetyl chloride.....		55
Allyl alcohol.....	-129	96
Amyl acetate.....	- 75	148
Aniline.....	- 6.5	184.4
Aniline hydrochloride.....	198	245
Anthracene.....	216	360
Anthraquinone.....	285	380
Benzaldehyde.....	- 13.5	179
Benzene.....	5.4	80.4
Benzenesulfonic acid.....	52	
Benzidine.....	127	400
Benzoic acid.....	121	249
Butyl alcohol.....	- 79	116
Camphor.....	176	209
Carbon disulfide.....	-111	46
Carbon tetrachloride.....	- 23	78
Chloroform.....	- 63	61
Cinnamic acid.....	133	300
Citric acid.....	153	decomposes
<i>o</i> -Cresol.....	30	191
<i>m</i> -Cresol.....	11	202
<i>p</i> -Cresol.....	35	202
<i>p</i> -Cymene.....	- 73	175
Dimethylaniline.....	2	194
Diphenyl.....	70.5	254
Ethyl acetate.....	- 82	77
Ethyl alcohol.....	-114	78.4
Ethyl bromide.....	-115	45
Ethyl butyrate.....	- 93	120

<sup>1</sup> For others, consult Olsen—Chemical Annual (Van Nostrand).

NAME	m. p., ° C.	b. p., ° C.
Ethyl chloride.....	-140	12.5
Ethyl ether.....	-116	35
Ethyl iodide.....	-118	72
Ethylene glycol.....	- 17	199
Formaldehyde.....	.....	- 21
Formic acid.....	7.5	100
Furfural.....	- 36	55 (17 mm.)
Glucose.....	146	
Glycerol.....	17	291
Hydrocyanic acid.....	- 10	26
Iodoform.....	119	sublimes
Isoamyl alcohol.....	-117	131
Isopropyl alcohol.....	- 85	83
Lactic acid.....	18	119 (12 mm.)
Methanol.....	- 95	65
Methyl iodide.....	- 66	45
Methyl salicylate.....	- 8	222
Naphthalene.....	80	218
$\alpha$ -Naphthol.....	96	279
$\beta$ -Naphthol.....	122	285
$\alpha$ -Naphthylamine.....	50	300
$\beta$ -Naphthylamine.....	111	306
Nitrobenzene.....	5	210.8
Oxalic acid.....	189	150 + sub.
Phenol.....	45	182.6
Phthalic acid.....	213	
Phthalic anhydride.....	131	284.5
Pyridine.....	- 42	116
Pyrogallol.....	132.5	293
Resorcinol.....	118	280
Saccharin.....	228 dec.	sub.
Salicylic acid.....	157	sub.
Sulfanilic acid.....	288	
Thymol.....	50	231.8
Toluene.....	- 93	111
<i>o</i> -Toluidine.....	- 21	199.7
<i>m</i> -Toluidine.....	- 13	203
<i>p</i> -Toluidine.....	45	200
Urea.....	132	dec.
Vanillin.....	81	285 dec.
<i>o</i> -Xylene.....	- 27	144
<i>m</i> -Xylene.....	- 53	139
<i>p</i> -Xylene.....	15	138





## REFERENCE BOOKS

---

### ELEMENTARY ORGANIC TEXTBOOKS

- BARNETT—Textbook of Organic Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
BUNGE—Textbook of Organic Chemistry for Medical Students. (Longmans.)  
CHAMBERLAIN—Textbook of Organic Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
CLARKE—Organic Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
COHEN—A Class-Book of Organic Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
COHEN—Theoretical Organic Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
HASKINS—Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
HOLLEMAN—Textbook of Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
LOWY AND DOWNEY—Study Questions in Elementary Organic Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)  
MOORE—Outlines of Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
MOUREAU—Fundamental Principles of Organic Chemistry. (Harcourt.)  
MCCOLLUM—Organic Chemistry for Students of Medicine and Biology. (Macmillan.)  
NORRIS—Organic Chemistry. (McGraw-Hill.)  
NOYES—Organic Chemistry. (Holt.)  
PERKIN AND KIPPING—Organic Chemistry. (Lippincott.)  
PORTER—The Carbon Compounds. (Ginn.)  
REMSEN AND ORNDORFF—Organic Chemistry. (Heath.)  
SMITH AND SMITH—Chemistry for Dental Students, Vol. II. (Wiley.)  
STODDARD—Introduction to Organic Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
WALKER—Medical Organic Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)  
WEST—Organic Chemistry. (World Book.)

### Organic Chemistry for Advanced Students

- ALEXEYEFF AND MATTHEWS—General Principles of Organic Syntheses. (Wiley.)  
BERNTHSEN—Textbook of Organic Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)  
COHEN—Organic Chemistry for Advanced Students. (Longmans.)  
HENRICH—Theories of Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
MEYER AND JACOBSON—Lehrbuch der Organischen Chemie. (Veit & Co. Leipzig.)

- POPE—Modern Research in Organic Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)  
RICHTER—Organic Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
SIDGWICK—Organic Chemistry of Nitrogen. (Oxford.)  
STEWART—Recent Advances in Organic Chemistry. (Longmans.)

### Laboratory Books in Organic Chemistry

- ADAMS, etc.—Organic Syntheses. (Wiley.)  
BARNETT—Preparation of Organic Compounds. (Blakiston.)  
COHEN—Practical Organic Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
COOK—Laboratory Experiments in Organic Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
ELBS—Übungsbeispiele für die elektrolytische Darstellung Chemischer Präparate. (Knappe, Halle.)  
FISHER—Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
FISCHER—Preparation of Organic Compounds. (Van Nostrand.)  
GARRETT AND HARDEN—Practical Organic Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
GATTERMAN—Practical Methods of Organic Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
HEIDELBERGER—Advanced Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry. (Chemical Catalog.)  
HOLLEMAN—Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
HOUBEN AND WEYL—Die Methoden der Organischen Chemie. (Thieme, Leipzig.)  
JONES—Laboratory Outline of Organic Chemistry. (Century.)  
KELLAR—Practical Organic Chemistry. (Oxford.)  
LASSAR-COHN—Arbeitsmethoden für Organisch-chemische Laboratorien. (Voss, Hamburg.)  
LASSAR-COHN—Applications of Some General Reactions to Investigations in Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
MOORE—Experiments in Organic Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
NORRIS—Experimental Organic Chemistry. (McGraw-Hill.)  
NOYES—Organic Chemistry for the Laboratory. (Chemical Publishing.)  
ORNDORFF—Laboratory Manual in Organic Chemistry. (Heath.)  
PRICE AND TWISS—Practical Organic Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
STEEL—Laboratory Manual of Organic Chemistry for Medical Students. (Wiley.)  
SUDBOROUGH AND JAMES—Practical Organic Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)  
TITHERLEY—A Laboratory Course in Organic Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)  
VANINO—Handbuch der Präparativen Chemie. (Enke, Stuttgart.)  
WEST—Experimental Organic Chemistry. (Globe Book.)

### Analytical Books

- ALLEN—Commercial Organic Analysis. (Blakiston.)  
AUTENRIETH—Detection of Poisons and Powerful Drugs. (Blakiston.)  
BARNETT AND THORPE—Organic Analysis. (Van Nostrand.)  
BROWNE—A Handbook of Sugar Analysis. (Wiley.)



- CLARKE—Organic Analysis. (Longmans.)  
FULLER—Chemistry and Analysis of Drugs and Medicines. (Wiley.)  
GILL—Oil Analysis. (Lippincott.)  
GRIFFIN—Technical Methods of Analysis. (McGraw-Hill.)  
HOLDE AND MUELLER—Examination of Hydrocarbon Oils. (Wiley.)  
KAMM—Qualitative Organic Analysis. (Wiley.)  
KINGSCOTT AND KNIGHT—Methods of Quantitative Organic Analysis. (Longmans.)  
LEACH—Food Inspection and Analysis. (Wiley.)  
MEYER AND TINGLE—Determination of Radicles in Carbon Compounds. (Wiley.)  
MULLIKEN—Identification of Pure Organic Compounds. (Wiley.)  
NEAVE AND HEILBRON—Identification of Organic Compounds. (Van Nostrand.)  
NOYES AND MULLIKEN—Identification of Organic Substances. (Chemical Publishing.)  
SHERMAN—Organic Analysis. (Macmillan.)  
WESTON—A Scheme for the Detection of the More Common Classes of Carbon Compounds. (Longmans.)  
WILEY—Principles and Practice of Agricultural Analysis. (Chemical Publishing.)  
WINTON—Food Analysis. (Wiley.)

### Industrial

- BAILEY—A Textbook of Sanitary and Applied Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
HALE—Modern Chemistry Pure and Applied (Vols. 3, 4, 5, 6). (Van Nostrand.)  
MARTIN—Industrial and Manufacturing Chemistry, A Practical Treatise. (Appleton.)  
MOLINARI—Industrial Organic Chemistry. (Appleton.)  
ROGERS—Industrial Chemistry for the Student and Manufacturer. (Van Nostrand.)  
SADTLER—Industrial Organic Chemistry. (Lippincott.)  
SADTLER AND MATOS—Industrial Organic Chemistry. (Lippincott.)  
THORPE—A Dictionary of Applied Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
THORPE—Outlines of Industrial Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
ULLMANN—Enzyklopädie der Technische Chemie. (Urban & Schwarzenberg, Berlin.)

### Catalysis

- EFFRONT AND PRESCOTT—Biochemical Catalysts in Life and Industry. (Wiley.)  
FALK—Catalytic Action. (Chemical Catalog.)  
HENDERSON—Catalysis in Industrial Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
JOBLING—Catalysis. (Churchill, London.)  
RIDEAL AND TAYLOR—Catalysis in Theory and Practice. (Macmillan.)  
SABATIER AND REID—Catalysis in Organic Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)



### Bio-chemistry

- ABERHALDEN—Textbook of Physiological Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
ARRHENIUS—Quantitative Laws in Biological Chemistry. (Harcourt.)  
BAYLISS—The Nature of Enzyme Action. (Longmans.)  
BUNGE—Physiologic and Pathologic Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
CATHCART—Physiology of Protein Metabolism. (Longmans.)  
DAKIN—Oxidation and Reduction in the Animal Body. (Longmans.)  
EULER—General Chemistry of the Enzymes. (Wiley.)  
EFFRONT—Enzymes and Their Application. (Wiley.)  
FALK—The Chemistry of Enzyme Actions. (Chemical Catalog.)  
HALLIBURTON—The Essentials of Chemical Physiology. (Longmans.)  
HAMMERSTEN—A Textbook of Physiological Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
HARROW—Glands in Health and Disease. (Dutton.)  
HARBAY—The Nature of Animal Light. (Lippincott.)  
HAWK—Practical Physiological Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
MACCLEAN—Lecithin and Allied Substances. (Longmans.)  
MATHEWS—Physiological Chemistry. (Wood.)  
MELDOLA—Chemical Synthesis of Vital Products. (Longmans.)  
PETTIBONE—Physiological Chemistry. (Mosby.)  
PLIMMER—Practical Organic and Bio-Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
SALKOWSKI—Laboratory Manual of Physiological and Pathological Chemistry. (Wiley.)

### Organic Chemistry in Relation to Medicine

- BAYLISS—Principles of General Physiology. (Longmans.)  
BLUMGARTEN—Materia Medica for Nurses. (Macmillan.)  
CLARK—Applied Pharmacology. (Blakiston.)  
CULBRETH—A Manual of Materia Medica and Pharmacology. (Lea & Febiger.)  
DAKIN AND DUNHAM—Handbook of Disinfectants. (Macmillan.)  
DORLAND—Medical Dictionary. (Saunders.)  
FOWLER—Introduction to Bacteriological and Enzyme Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
FRANCIS, FORTESCUE AND BRICKDALE—The Chemical Bases of Pharmacology. (Arnold, London.)  
GARRISON—An Introduction to the History of Medicine. (Saunders.)  
HARROW—Glands in Health and Disease. (Dutton.)  
KRAEMER—Scientific and Applied Pharmacognosy. (Wiley.)  
MACLEOD—Physiology and Biochemistry in Modern Medicine. (Mosby.)  
MAY—The Chemistry of Synthetic Drugs. (Longmans.)  
MCGUIAR—Chemical Pharmacology. (Blakiston.)  
OSBORNE—Principles of Therapeutics. (Saunders.)  
OSBORNE AND FISHBEIN—Handbook of Therapy. (Amer. Med. Ass.)

- OSLER—Principles and Practice of Medicine. (Appleton.)  
PATON—Nervous and Chemical Regulators of Metabolism. (Macmillan.)  
POTTER—Therapeutics, Materia Medica and Pharmacy. (Blakiston.)  
REMINGTON—Practice of Pharmacy. (Lippincott.)  
SPIEGEL—Chemical Constitution and Physiological Action. (Van Nostrand.)  
STEWART—Handbook of Anaesthetics. (Wood.)  
TOLLMAN—Manual of Pharmacology. (Saunders.)  
VINCENT—Internal Secretion and the Ductless Glands. (Longmans.)  
WELLS—Chemical Pathology. (Saunders.)  
WITTHAUS—Manual of Toxicology. (Wood.)  
WOOD—Chemical and Microscopical Diagnosis. (Appleton.)

### Organic Chemistry in Relation to Agriculture, Botany, etc.

- CHAMBERLAIN—Organic Agricultural Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
HAAS AND HILL—Chemistry of Plant Products. (Longmans.)  
INGLE—Elementary Agricultural Chemistry. (Lippincott.)  
KAHLENBERG AND HART—Chemistry and Its Relation to Daily Life for Students of Agriculture. (Macmillan.)  
RUSSELL—Soil Condition and Plant Growth. (Longmans.)  
STODDART—The Chemistry of Agriculture. (Lea & Febiger.)  
THATCHER AND HART—Chemistry of Plant Life. (McGraw-Hill.)  
WILEY—Principles and Practice of Agricultural Analysis. (Chemical Publishing.)

### Organic Chemistry in Relation to Food

- BAILEY—Food Products, Their Source, Chemistry and Use. (Blakiston.)  
BAILEY—The Chemistry of Wheat Flour. (Blakiston.)  
CARTER, HOWE & MASON—Nutrition and Clinical Dietetics. (Lea & Febiger.)  
DOWD AND JAMESON—Food. (Wiley.)  
EDDY—The Vitamin Manual. (Williams & Wilkins.)  
ELLIS AND MACLEOD—Vital Factors of Foods: Vitamines and Nutrition. (Van Nostrand.)  
FUNK—The Vitamines. (Williams & Wilkins.)  
GROUT—Chemistry of Bread Making. (Longmans.)  
HARROW—Vitamines. (Dutton.)  
HARROW—What to Eat. (Dutton.)  
HUTCHINSON—Foods and the Principles of Dietetics. (Wood.)  
LUSK—Science of Nutrition. (Saunders.)  
MENDEL—Nutrition. (Yale University Press.)  
MCCOLLOM—Newer Knowledge of Nutrition. (Macmillan.)  
OSBORNE—The Vegetable Proteins. (Longmans.)  
PLIMMER—Vitamines and the Choice of Food. (Longmans.)  
SHERMAN—The Chemistry of Food and Nutrition. (Macmillan.)  
SHERMAN—Food Products. (Macmillan.)



- SHERMAN AND SMITH—Vitamines. (Chemical Catalog.)  
SNYDER—Dairy Chemistry. (Macmillan.)  
THURSTON—Pharmaceutical and Food Analysis. (Van Nostrand.)  
VULTE AND VANDERBILT—Food Industries. (Chemical Publishing.)

### Physical Chemistry in Relation to Organic Chemistry

- BANCROFT—Applied Colloid Chemistry. (McGraw-Hill.)  
CLARK—Determination of Hydrogen Ions. (Williams & Wilkins.)  
CLAYTON—Theory of Emulsions and Emulsifications. (Blakiston.)  
FALK—Chemical Reactions, Their Theory and Mechanism. (Van Nostrand.)  
FINDLAY—Physical Chemistry and Its Applications in Medical and Biological Sciences. (Longmans.)  
HATSCHEK—Introduction to Chemistry and Physics of Colloids. (Blakiston.)  
LEWIS—Valence and the Structure of Atoms and Molecules. (Chemical Catalog.)  
LOEB—Proteins and the Theory of Colloidal Behavior. (McGraw-Hill.)  
PAULI—Physical Chemistry in the Science of Medicine. (Wiley.)  
OSTWALD—Handbook of Colloid Chemistry. (Blakiston.)  
OSTWALD—Introduction to Theoretical and Applied Colloid Chemistry. (Wiley.)  
ROBERTSON—The Physical Chemistry of the Proteins. (Longmans.)  
SMILES—Relation between Chemical Constitution and Some Physical Properties. (Longmans.)  
TAYLOR—Chemistry of Colloids. (Longmans.)  
VAN'T HOFF—Chemistry in Space. (Oxford.)  
WATSON—Color in Relation to Chemical Constitution. (Longmans.)  
ZSIGMONDY—Chemistry of Colloids. (Wiley.)

### Dyestuffs

- BARNETT—Coal Tar Dyes and Intermediates. (Van Nostrand.)  
BEACALL, etc.—Dyestuffs and Coal Tar Products. (Appleton.)  
CAIN—Manufacture of Dyes. (Macmillan.)  
CAIN—Manufacture of Intermediate Products for Dyes. (Macmillan.)  
CAIN AND THORPE—Synthetic Dyestuffs and the Intermediate Products for Dyes. (Griffin, London.)  
DRAPER—Chemistry and Physics of Dyeing. (Blakiston.)  
FAY—Coal Tar Dyes. (Van Nostrand.)  
FORT AND LLOYD—The Chemistry of Dyestuffs, a Manual for Students of Chemistry and Dyeing. (Cambridge University Press.)  
GEORGEVICS AND GRANDMOUGIN—Textbook of Dye Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)  
GREEN—Systematic Survey of the Organic Coloring Matters. (Macmillan.)  
GREEN—Analysis of Dyestuffs and Their Identification in Dyed and Colored Materials, Lake Pigments, Foodstuffs, etc. (Griffin, London.)



- HEWITT—Synthetic Coloring Matters: Dyestuffs Derived from Pyridine, Quinoline, Acridine and Xanthene. (Longmans.)
- KNECHT AND FOTHERGILL—Principles and Practice of Textile Printing. (Lippincott.)
- LUCKIESH—Color and Its Application. (Van Nostrand.)
- MULLIKEN—Method for the Identification of Commercial Dyestuffs. (Wiley.)
- LOEWENTHAL—Manual of Dyeing. (Lippincott.)
- PERKIN AND EVEREST—Natural Organic Coloring Matters. (Longmans.)
- RAMSEY AND WESTON—Artificial Dyestuffs. (Routledge, London.)
- SHREVE—Dyes Classified by Intermediates. (Chemical Catalog.)
- SCHULTZ—Farbstoff-Tabellen. (Weidmannsche Buchhandlung, Berlin.)
- THORPE AND INGOLD—Synthetic Coloring Matters, Vat Colors. (Longmans.)
- WAHL—Manufacture of Organic Dyestuffs. (Bell, London.)
- WATSON—Color in Relation to Chemical Constitution. (Longmans.)
- WHITTAKER—Dyeing with Coal Tar Dyestuffs. (Van Nostrand.)
- WOOD—The Chemistry of Dyeing. (Van Nostrand.)

### History of Chemistry

- ARMITAGE—History of Chemistry. (Longmans.)
- BROWN—History of Chemistry. (Blakiston.)
- HAMOR—Chemistry (Vol. IV, Science—History of the Universe). (Current Literature Pub. Co., New York.)
- HILDITCH—History of Modern Chemistry. (Van Nostrand.)
- LADENBURG—History and Development of Chemistry Since Lavoisier. (Van Nostrand.)
- LOWRY—Historical Introduction to Chemistry. (Macmillan.)
- MEYER—History of Chemistry. (Macmillan.)
- MOORE—History of Chemistry. (McGraw-Hill.)
- SMITH—Chemistry in America. (Appleton.)
- THORPE—Essays in Historical Chemistry. (Macmillan.)
- THORPE—History of Chemistry. (Putnam.)
- VENABLE—History of Chemistry. (Heath.)

### Biographical

- Chemical Society Memorial Lectures. (Gurney & Jackson, London.)
- FISCHER—Aus Meinen Leben. (Springer, Berlin.)
- HARROW—Eminent Chemists of Our Time. (Van Nostrand.)
- HOESCH—Emil Fischer. (Verlag Chemie, Berlin.)
- MEYER—Victor Meyer. (Akademische Verlagsgesellschaft, Leipzig.)
- ROBERTS—Famous Chemists. (Macmillan.)
- TILDEN—Famous Chemists. (Dutton.)
- VALLERY-RADOT—The Life of Pasteur. (Doubleday.)

## General Reference Books for Organic Chemistry

- BEILSTEIN—Organische Chemie. (Springer, Berlin.)  
OLSEN—Chemical Annual. (Van Nostrand.)  
RICHTER—Lexikon der Kohlenstoffverbindungen. (Voss, Hamburg.)  
SCUDDER—The Electrical Conductivity and Ionization Constants of Organic Compounds. (Van Nostrand.)  
SEIDELL—Solubilities of Inorganic and Organic Substances. (Van Nostrand.)  
STELZNER—Literatur Register der Organischen Chemie. (Vieweg, Braunschweig.)  
WINTHER—Zusammenstellung der Patente auf dem Gebiete der Organischen Chemie. (Topelmann, Gieszen.)

## Popular Books

- ANON.—A Wonder Book of Rubber. (Goodrich Rubber Co.)  
AULD—Gas and Flame. (Doran.)  
BULL—Chemistry of Today. (Lippincott.)  
CALDWELL AND SLOSSON—Science Remaking the World. (Doubleday.)  
COCHRANE—Modern Industrial Progress. (Lippincott.)  
CRESSY—Discoveries and Inventions of the Twentieth Century. (Dutton.)  
DUNCAN—Chemistry of Commerce. (Harpers.)  
DUNCAN—Some Chemical Problems of Today. (Harpers.)  
DUSHMAN—Chemistry and Civilization. (Badger.)  
FINDLAY—Chemistry in the Service of Man. (Longmans.)  
FINDLAY—The Treasures of Coal Tar. (Van Nostrand.)  
FULLER—The Story of Drugs. (Century.)  
GEER—Reign of Rubber. (Century.)  
HARROW—Contemporary Science. (Boni & Liveright.)  
HENDRICK—Everyman's Chemistry. (Harpers.)  
LASSAR-COHN—Chemistry in Daily Life. (Lippincott.)  
LOWY—Coal Products Chart. (Van Nostrand.)  
MARTIN—Modern Chemistry and Its Wonders. (Van Nostrand.)  
MARTIN—Story of a Piece of Coal. (Appleton.)  
MILLS—Within the Atom. (Van Nostrand.)  
MOORE—Origin and Nature of Life. (Holt.)  
PHILIP—Romance of Modern Chemistry. (Lippincott.)  
RUSSELL—A. B. C. of the Atoms. (Dutton.)  
SADTLER—Chemistry of Familiar Things. (Lippincott.)  
Science Service News. (Washington, D. C.)  
SLOSSON—Chats on Science. (Century.)  
SLOSSON—Creative Chemistry. (Century.)  
SODDY—Science and Life. (Dutton.)  
STARLING—Feeding of Nations. (Longmans.)  
SURFACE—Story of Sugar. (Appleton.)



- TALBOT—The Oil Conquest of the World. (Lippincott.)  
TILDEN—Chemical Inventions and Discoveries of the Twentieth Century. (Dutton.)  
TILDEN—Progress of Scientific Chemistry in Our Own Times. (Van Nostrand.)  
TOWER—Story of Oil. (Van Nostrand.)  
YERKES—The New World of Science. (Century.)

### Miscellaneous

- ABRAHAM—Asphalts and Allied Substances. (Van Nostrand.)  
ALEXANDER—Glue and Gelatine. (Chemical Catalog.)  
ANON.—New and Non-official Remedies. (Amer. Med. Ass.)  
ARMSTRONG—The Simple Carbohydrates and Glucosides. (Longmans.)  
BACON AND HAMOR—American Fuels. (McGraw-Hill.)  
BACON AND HAMOR—The American Petroleum Industry. (McGraw-Hill.)  
BARGER—Simpler Natural Bases. (Longmans.)  
BARNETT—Anthracene and Anthraquinone. (Van Nostrand.)  
BARROWCLIFF AND CARR—Organic Medicinal Chemicals. (Van Nostrand.)  
BASKERVILLE—Municipal Chemistry. (McGraw-Hill.)  
BELL—American Petroleum Refining. (Van Nostrand.)  
BOGUE—Gelatine and Glue. (McGraw-Hill.)  
BONE—Coal and Its Scientific Uses. (Longmans.)  
BROOKS—Chemistry of the Non-benzenoid Hydrocarbons and Their Simple Derivatives. (Chemical Catalog.)  
CAIN—The Chemistry of Diazo Compounds. (Arnold, London.)  
Chemical Engineering Catalog. (Chemical Catalog.)  
CHRISTIAN—Disinfection and Disinfectants. (Scott, Greenwood, London.)  
CLAISEN—Beet Sugar Manufacture. (Wiley.)  
CLAYTON—Margarine. (Longmans.)  
COHN—Indicators and Test Papers. (Wiley.)  
Condensed Chemical Dictionary. (Chemical Catalog.)  
COOPER—Textile Chemistry. (Dutton.)  
CROSS AND BEVAN—Cellulose. (Longmans.)  
DAKIN AND HUNHARNE—Handbook of Antiseptics. (Macmillan.)  
DORLAND—American Illustrated Medical Dictionary. (Saunders.)  
DUBOSC AND LUTTRINGER—Rubber—Its Production, Chemistry and Synthesis. (Griffin, London.)  
ELLIS—Synthetic Resins. (Chemical Catalog.)  
ELLIS—Hydrogenation of Oils. (Van Nostrand.)  
FALK—The Chemistry of Enzyme Actions. (Chemical Catalog.)  
FRIES AND WEST—Chemical Warfare. (McGraw-Hill.)  
FRY—Electronic Conception of Valence and the Constitution of Benzene. (Longmans.)  
GIBSON—Chemistry of Dental Materials. (Benn Bros., London.)  
GILDMEISTER AND HOFFMAN—The Volatile Oils. (Wiley.)  
GROGGINS—Aniline and its Derivatives. (Van Nostrand.)



- HALE—Synthetic Use of Metals in Organic Chemistry. (Churchill, London.)
- HAMOR AND PADGETT—The Technical Examination of Crude Petroleum, Petroleum Products and Natural Gas. (McGraw-Hill.)
- HANTZSCH—The Elements of Stereochemistry. (Chemical Publishing.)
- HARDEN—Alcoholic Fermentation. (Longmans.)
- HOWLEY—Wood Distillation. (Chemical Catalog.)
- KOPPE—Glycerine. (Van Nostrand.)
- KOPPERS COMPANY—By-product Coke and Gas Oven Plants: Benzol Recovery Plants, Tar Distilling Plants: Ammonia Recovery Apparatus. (Koppers Co., Pittsburgh.)
- JONES—Nucleic Acids. (Longmans.)
- LACHMAN—The Spirit of Organic Chemistry. (Macmillan.)
- LANDOLT—The Optical Rotating Power of Organic Substances and Its Practical Applications. (Chemical Publishing.)
- LEATHES—The Fats. (Longmans.)
- LESLIE—Motor Fuels. (Chemical Catalog.)
- LEWKOWITSCH—Chemical Technology and Analysis of Oils, Fats and Waxes. (Macmillan.)
- LÖB AND LORENZ—Electrochemistry of Organic Compounds. (Wiley.)
- LUFF—The Chemistry of Rubber. (Van Nostrand.)
- MACKENZIE—Sugars and Their Simple Derivatives. (Lippincott.)
- MARSHALL—Explosives. (Blakiston.)
- MARTIN—The Modern Soaps and Detergent Industry. (Van Nostrand.)
- MASSELOD—Celluloid. (Lippincott.)
- MATTHEWS—The Textile Fibers. (Wiley.)
- MERCK—Chemical Reagents. (Van Nostrand.)
- MORGAN—Organic Compounds of Arsenic and Antimony. (Longmans.)
- MYDDLETON AND BARNY—Fats: Natural and Synthetic. (Van Nostrand.)
- MCINTOSH—Industrial Alcohol. (Van Nostrand.)
- McKEE—Shale Oil.
- NATIONAL FORMULARY—Amer. Pharmaceutical Assoc. (Lippincott.)
- OPPENHEIMER—Ferments and Their Actions. (Lippincott.)
- PALMER—Carotinoids and Related Pigments. (Chemical Catalog.)
- PARRY—Chemistry of Essential Oils and Artificial Perfumes. (Scott, Greenwood, London.)
- PARRY—Gums and Resins. (Scott, Greenwood, London.)
- PARRY—Perfumery. (Scott, Greenwood, London.)
- PATTERSON—French-English Dictionary for Chemists. (Wiley.)
- PATTERSON—German-English Dictionary for Chemists. (Wiley.)
- POUCHER—Perfumes and Cosmetics. (Van Nostrand.)
- The Pharmacopoeia of the United States of America. (Blakiston.)
- PICTET—The Vegetable Alkaloids. (Wiley.)
- PILCHER, BUTLER AND JONES—What Industry Owes Technical Science. (Constable, London.)
- PLIMMER—Chemical Constitution of the Proteins. (Longmans.)
- PORRITT—The Chemistry of Rubber. (Van Nostrand.)
- PRICE—Atomic Form. (Longmans.)
- PRINZ—Dental Formulary. (Kempton, London.)

- RAIZISS AND GAVRON—Organic Arsenic Compounds. (Chemical Catalog.)  
REDWOOD—Petroleum. (Lippincott.)  
REMINGTON, ETC.—Dispensatory of the U. S. of America. (Lippincott.)  
ROLFE—The Polariscopes. (Macmillan.)  
SINDALL—Paper Technology. (Lippincott.)  
SMITH—T.N.T. and Other Nitrotoluenes. (Van Nostrand.)  
SPARKS—Chemical Literature, and Its Use. (University of Illinois.)  
SPIELMAN—The Genesis of Petroleum. (Van Nostrand.)  
STEWART—Stereo-Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
TRESSLER—Marine Products. (Chemical Catalog.)  
TRIMBLE—Tannins. (Lippincott.)  
WALTER—Manual for Essence Industry. (Wiley.)  
WATTS—Dictionary of Chemistry. (Longmans.)  
WERNER—Chemistry of Urea. (Longmans.)  
WEST AND GILMAN—Organomagnesium Compounds in Synthetic Chemistry.  
(National Research Council.)  
WHITMORE—Organic Compounds of Mercury. (Chemical Catalog.)  
WILSON—Chemistry of Leather Manufacture. (Chemical Catalog.)  
WOOLMAN AND MCGOWAN—Textiles. (Macmillan.)  
WORDEN—Technology of Cellulose Esters. (Van Nostrand.)  
WREN—The Organo-Metallic Compounds of Zinc and Magnesium. (Van  
Nostrand.)

### Periodicals

- Annales de Chimie et de Physique.  
Berichte der Deutschen Chemischen Gesellschaft.  
Chemical Abstracts.  
Chemical and Metallurgical Engineering.  
Chemisches Zentralblatt.  
Comptes Rendus.  
Helvetica Chimica Acta.  
Journal of Industrial and Engineering Chemistry.  
Journal of the American Chemical Society.  
Journal of the Chemical Industry.  
Journal of the Chemical Society of London.  
Liebig's Annalen der Chemie.  
Monatshefte für Chemie.





## INDEX

### A

- Accelerator, 226  
Acenaphthene, 287  
Acetaldehyde, 70, 75  
    properties, 71, 72, 73  
Acetamide, 108, 112  
Acetanilide, 225  
Acetic acid, chart, facing p. 85  
Acetic acid, 84  
    glacial, 84  
Acetic anhydride, 107, 108  
    preparation, 108  
Acetoacetic acid, 127  
Acetoacetic ester, 127  
    uses, 127  
Acetone, chart, facing p. 78  
Acetone, 70, 78  
    properties, 71, 72, 73  
Acetonitrile, 155  
Acetophenone, 248  
Acetyl acetic acid, 127  
Acetyl chloride, 109  
    preparation, 109  
    properties, 109  
Acetylene, 35  
    preparation, 35  
    properties, 36  
    series, 34  
Acetylides, 36  
Acetyl salicylic acid, 272  
Acids, table, 83  
Acid amides, 111  
    identification, 331  
    preparation, 112  
    properties, 112  
Acid anhydrides, 107  
    identification, 331  
    preparation, 108  
Acid hydrolysis, 130  
Acid imides, identification, 331  
Acids, 79  
    identification, 330  
    nomenclature, 79  
    preparation, 81  
    properties, 82  
    substituted, 80  
    type of, 80  
Acids, aromatic, 263  
Acids, dibasic, unsaturated, 88  
Acids, halogen substituted, 117  
    preparation, 117  
    properties, 118  
Acids, monobasic, 81, 86  
Acids, unsaturated, monobasic, 85  
Acridine, 318  
Acriflavine, 318  
Acrolein, 61, 77  
Acrylaldehyde, 77, 103  
Acrylic acid, 85  
Acyl halides, 109  
    identification, 331  
Addition, 210  
Adenine, 150  
Adrenaline, 342  
Alanine, 141, 146  
Albolene, 29  
Albumins, 143  
Albuminoids, 144  
Alcohol, denatured, 59  
Alcohol, ethyl, 58  
    preparation, 58  
Alcohols, 48  
    absolute, 58  
    aromatic, 235  
    identification, 328  
    nomenclature, 48

- Alcohols, polyatomic, 62  
  preparation, 53  
  primary, 50  
  properties, 56  
  secondary, 51  
  table, 57  
  tertiary, 51  
Aldehyde resin, 76  
Aldehydes, aromatic, 245  
  properties, 246  
Aldehydes, 67  
  identification, 329  
  nomenclature, 67  
  preparation, 69  
  properties, 69  
  test for, 76  
Aldol, 76  
Aliphatic compounds, 16  
Alizarin, 300  
Alkaloids, 319  
  identification, 334  
Alkyl cyanides, 155  
  preparation, 155, 156  
  properties, 156  
Alkyl halide, 40  
  preparation, 41  
  properties, 42  
  table, 41  
Alkyl isocyanides, 156  
  preparation, 156  
  properties, 156  
Allantoin, 152  
Alloxan, 152  
Allyl alcohol, 63  
Allyl ether, 66  
Allyl isothiocyanate, 185  
Aluminium carbide, 18  
Amidol, 268  
Amines, aliphatic, 132  
  identification, 332  
  preparation, 134  
  primary, 132, 133  
  properties, 134  
  secondary, 134  
  tertiary, 134  
  types, 132  
Amines, aromatic, 222  
  preparation, 223  
Amiues, reactions, 224  
Amino acid, table, 146  
Amino acids, 141  
  nomenclature, 137  
  preparation, 137  
  properties, 138  
Aminophenol, 267  
Ammonium carbamate, 179  
Ammonium carbonate, 179  
Amygdalin, 167  
Amyl butyrate, 96  
Analysis, elementary, 10  
  proximate, 10  
  ultimate, 10  
Anesthesine, 273  
Anethole, 267  
Anhydrides, inner, 119  
Aniline, 224  
Aniline hydrochloride, 225  
Anisaldehyde, 270  
Anisole, 238, 243  
Anthocyanins, 336  
Anthracene, 285  
Anthranilic acid, 274  
Anthraquinone, 286  
Antifebrin, 225  
Antipyrine, 311  
Applications of organic chemistry, 4  
Arabinose, 161  
Arabitol, 62  
Arbutin, 167  
Arginine, 143, 146  
Argyrol, 147  
Aromatic compounds, 16  
Arsanilic acid, 322  
Arsenic compounds, 186, 322  
Arsenophenylglycine, 322  
Artificial silk, 172  
Aseptol, 266  
Aspartic acid, 142, 146  
Aspirin, 272  
Asymmetric carbon atom, 122  
Atoxyl, 322  
Atropine, 320  
Auxochrome, 291  
Azobenzene, 220, 234  
Azo compounds, 222, 229  
  identification, 333

Azo compounds, reactions, 229  
Azoxybenzene, 220

## B

Baekeland, portrait, 240  
Baeyer, portrait, 315  
Bakelite, 74, 239  
Barbital, 115  
Bases, organic, 132  
Bayer, "205," 301  
Beeswax, 103  
Benedict's reagent, 165  
    qualitative, 165  
    quantitative, 165  
Benzal chloride, 215  
Benzaldehyde, 245  
Benzaldoxime, 247  
Benzamide, 255  
Benzene, 191, 199, 201  
    constitution, 191  
    preparation, 202  
    structure, 194, 197  
Benzenediazonium chloride, 230  
Benzenedisulfonic acid, 216  
Benzenesulfonic acid, 216  
Benzenesulfonyl chloride, 217  
Benzidine, 234  
Benzine, 199  
Benzohydrol, 236  
Benzoic acid, 253  
Benzoic anhydride, 255  
Benzoin, 249  
Benzol, 199  
Benzonitrile, 255  
Benzophenone, 236, 248  
Benzoquinone, 250  
Benzotrichloride, 215  
Benzoyl chloride, 247  
Benzyl alcohol, 235  
Benzylamine, 222  
Benzyl chloride, 210  
Benzylidene chloride, 215  
Benzyl cyanide, 256  
Betaine, 105  
Bile pigments, 338  
Biuret, 114  
    reaction, 114, 146  
Boiling points, 362-363

Borneol, 306  
Bromal, 76  
Bromoaniline, 225  
Bromoform, 46  
Brucine, 320  
Butane, *n*-, 24  
Butanes, 23  
Butanone, 68  
Butylenes, 34  
Butyn, 274  
Butyraldehyde, 68  
Butyric acid, 85, 98, 177  
Butyrolactam, 141  
Butyrolactone, 121

## C

Cacodyl, 186  
Cacodyl oxide, 186  
Cadaverine, 136  
Caffeine, 153  
Calcium carbide, 37  
Calcium cyanamide, 155  
Calcium formate, 70  
Camphor, 305  
    artificial, 303, 305  
    natural, 305  
Candle, 85  
Cane sugar, 169  
Caproic acid, 177  
Carbazole, 285, 318  
Carbinol, 49, 57  
Carbocyclic compounds, 188, 309  
Carbohydrates, 160, 174  
    identification, 332  
Carbon monoxide, 84, 87  
Carbonyl group, 67  
Carbon tetrachloride, 46  
    preparation, 46  
    uses, 46  
Carboxyl group, 79  
Carbylamine, 156  
    reaction, 134  
Carnauba wax, 103  
Carotin, 336  
Carvone, 305  
Catalase, 340  
Celluloid, 172, 305  
Cellulose, 171



Cellulose nitrate, 172  
Cellulose xanthate, 185  
Cephalin, 105  
Cerasin, 105  
Cetyl alcohol, 103  
Chinese wax, 103  
Chitin, 171  
Chloral, 76  
Chloral alcoholate, 76  
Chloral hydrate, 76  
Chloramine-T, 266  
Chloretone, 45  
Chloroacetic acid, 119  
Chloroanilines, 262  
Chlorobenzene, 214  
Chloroform, 44  
    preparation, 44  
    properties, 45  
    uses, 45  
Chlorophyll, 335  
Chloropicrin, 45  
Chlorotoluenes, 211, 215, 262  
Cholesterol, 105  
Choline, 104  
Chondroitin, 171  
Chromophore, 291  
Chromotropic acid, 283  
Chrysene, 287  
Cinchonine, 320  
Cinnamaldehyde, 247  
Cinnamic acid, 257  
Cis-form, 89  
Citral, 78  
Citrene, 306  
Citric acid, 127  
Citronellal, 306  
Closed chain compounds, 188  
Coal, destructive distillation, 6, 199  
Coal gas, 18  
Cocaine, 320  
Codeine, 321  
Collodion, 172  
Cologne spirit, 58  
Colophony, 303  
Congo red, 299  
Coniine, 320  
Cordite, 172  
Coumarin, 313

Cream of tartar, 127  
Creatinine, 115  
Creatine, 114  
Cresols, 230  
Cresylic acid, 239  
Crisco, 101  
Crotonic acid, 85, 119  
Crude oil, 27  
Cyanamide, 155  
Cyanides, 154  
    identification, 333  
Cyanogen, 154  
Cyanogen chloride, 155  
Cyanuric acid, 157  
Cyclic compounds, 188  
Cyclobutane, 189  
Cyclohexane, 189  
Cycloparaffins, 190  
Cyclopentane, 189  
Cymene, 205, 302  
Cystine, 142, 146  
Cytosine, 150

## D

De-amination, 178  
Decalin, 283  
Denatured alcohol, 59  
Dextrins, 171  
Diacetic acid, 128, 178  
Diamines, 135, 228  
Diaminobenzene, 228  
Diastase, 58  
Diazaminobenzene, 233  
Diazobenzene chloride, 230  
Diazo compounds, 222, 229  
Diazo reactions, 229  
Diazotization, 230  
Dichloroacetic acid, 117  
Dichloramine-T, 266  
Dichlorobenzene, *p*-, 214  
Dichloroethyl sulfide, 184  
Diethyl nitrosoamine, 135  
Diethyl phthalate, 258  
Diethyl sulfate, 95, 243  
Dihydrobenzene, 206  
Dimethylaniline, 222  
Dimethylamine, 134, 228

- Dimethylammonium iodide, 134  
Dimethyl glyoxal, 76  
Dimethyl glyoxime, 77  
Dimethyl sulfate, 95  
Dionine, 321  
Dipeptide, 145  
Diphenylacetylene, 205  
Diphenylamine, 222, 228  
Diphenylethylene, symmetrical, 205  
Diphenylguanidine, 226  
Diphenylmethane, 205  
Dippel's oil, 310, 312  
Disaccharides, 161  
Distillation, destructive, 7  
Distillation, fractional, 7  
Dulcin, 269  
Dyes, 288  
    acid, 290  
    adjective, 288  
    artificial, 288  
    basic, 290  
    direct cotton, 290  
    ingrain, 291  
    mordant, 291  
    natural, 288  
    substantive, 288  
    sulfur, 291  
    theory, 290  
    uses, 288  
    vat, 291  
Dyes, acridine, 296  
    anthraquinone, 297  
    azine, 297  
    azo, 293  
    diphenylmethane, 294  
    indigo, 298  
    indophenol, 296  
    nitro, 292  
    nitroso, 292  
    oxazine, 296  
    pyrazolone, 293  
    quinoline, 296  
    stilbene, 293  
    sulfur, 297  
    thiazine, 297  
    triphenylmethane, 294  
    xanthone, 295  
Dynamite, 62
- E  
Ehrlich, 323  
Elements in organic compounds, 5  
Emetine, 321  
Enzymes, 339  
    table, 340  
Erepsin, 340  
Erythritol, 62  
Esterification, 96  
Esters, 90, 93  
    identification, 331  
    preparations, 92  
    properties, 92  
Ethane, 20  
Ethanol, 58  
Ethenol, 63  
Ethereal salts, 94  
Ethers, 64, 65  
    aromatic, 243  
    identifications, 329  
    mixed, 64  
    preparation, 64, 65  
    properties, 65, 66  
    uses, 66  
Ethyl acetate, 96, 110  
Ethyl alcohol, 58  
    chart, facing p. 59  
    percentages in beverages, 59  
    properties, 59  
    uses, 59  
Ethylamine, 156  
Ethylbenzene, 204  
Ethyl benzoate, 254  
Ethyl bromide, 43  
Ethyl carbonate, 111  
Ethyl chloride, 43  
Ethyl dichloroarsine, 186  
Ethyl ether, 64  
Ethyl formate, 96  
Ethyl gas, 187  
Ethyl hydrogen sulfate, 95  
Ethyl malonate, 97  
Ethyl methyl carbinol, 54  
Ethyl nitrate, 95  
Ethyl nitrite, 94, 158  
Ethyl nonyl ketone, 69  
Ethyl oxalate, 97  
Ethyl oxide, 65

Ethyl propyl ether, 64  
 Ethyl sulfide, 182  
 Ethyl sulfuric acid, 95  
 Ethylene, 31  
   preparation, 31, 32  
   properties, 32, 33  
 Ethylene bromide, 43  
 Ethylene chlorohydrin, 60  
 Ethylene cyanide, 88  
 Ethylenediamine, 135  
 Eugenol, 267

## F

Fats, 99, 176  
   table, 100, 102  
 Fehling test, 76, 165  
 Fermentation, 7, 58  
 Ferric ammonium citrate, 127  
 Fire damp, 19  
 Fischer, portrait, 139  
 Fittig, synthesis, 199  
 Flavones, 336  
 Formaldehyde, 74  
   chart, facing p. 74  
 Formalin, 74  
 Formic acid, 83  
 Formula, empirical, 11  
   molecular, 11  
   structural, 23  
 Friedel-Craft, reaction, 200, 248, 254  
 Fructose, 168  
 Fulminic acid, 158  
 Fumaric acid, 88  
 Furan, 309  
 Furfural, 310  
 Fusel oil, 60

## G

Galactans, 172  
 Galactose, 168  
 Gallic acid, 277  
 Gasoline, 28  
   purification, 28  
 Geranial, 78  
 Geraniol, 306  
 Globulins, 143

Glossary, 359-361  
 Glyoxylic acid, reaction, 147  
 Glucuronic acid, 166  
 Glucosamine, 168  
 Glucosazone, 163  
 Glucose, 161  
   properties, 164  
   proof of structure, 162, 163  
 Glucosides, 167  
   identification, 332  
 Glutamic acid, 142, 146  
 Glutelins, 144  
 Glyceraldehyde, 175  
 Glycerol, 61, 93  
   properties, 61  
   uses, 61  
 Glyceryl margarate, 101  
 Glyceryl phosphate, 95  
 Glyceryl trinitrate, 61, 95  
 Glycine, 138, 145  
 Glycine anhydride, 141  
 Glycocoll, 141, 146  
 Glycogen, 171  
 Glycol, 60  
 Glycol ether, 66  
 Glycolic acid, 121  
 Glycolide, 121  
 Glycoproteins, 144  
 Glucuronic acid, 166  
 Glycylglycine, 145  
 Glyoxal, 76  
 Gomberg, 206  
   portrait, 207  
 Griess', diazo reaction, 229  
 Grignard's, reagent, 43  
   portrait, 55  
   reaction, 54  
 Guaiacol, 266  
 Guanidine, 114  
 Guanine, 151  
 Gums, 172  
 Gum arabic, 172  
 Gum tragacanth, 172

## H

H acid, 283  
 Halogen compounds, 210  
   identification, 328



- Halogen compounds, preparation, 211  
properties, 212
- Halogen substituted acids, 117  
preparations, 117  
properties, 118
- Hemicellulose, 172
- Hemoglobin, 144, 337
- Heroine, 321
- Heterocyclic compounds, 188, 309
- Hexahydrobenzene, 206
- Hexamethylene, 207
- Hexamethylenetetramine, 74
- Hexaphenylethane, 206
- Hippuric acid, 256
- Homatropine, 320
- Hormones, 342
- Histidine, 143, 146
- Histones, 144
- Hofmann reaction, 112, 133, 274, 316
- Homologous series, 25
- Hopkins-Cole reaction, 147
- Hydrazobenzene, 220
- Hydrobenzamide, 246
- Hydrocarbons, 30  
acetylenes, 30  
aromatic, 199, 201-206  
hydroaromatic, 206  
identification, 327  
nitration, 201  
olefins, 30  
oxidation, 201  
preparation, 199  
properties, 201  
reactions, 201  
sources, 199  
sulfonation, 201  
unsaturated, 30
- Hydrocarbons saturated  
preparation, 27  
properties, 27
- Hydrocinnamic acid, 257
- Hydrocyanic acid, 154
- Hydrogen cyanide, 154
- Hydroxy acids, 120  
preparations, 120  
properties, 121
- Hydroxyazobenzene, *p*-, 234
- Hypnone, 248
- Hypoxanthine, 150
- I
- Identification of compounds, 327-334
- Indican, 314
- Indigo, 314
- Indigo carmine, 317
- Indole, 314
- Indoxyl, 314
- Inner anhydrides, 119
- Inner salts, 140
- Inositol, 208
- Insulin, 343
- Intarvin, 1, 101
- Intermediates, dyes, 214
- Inulin, 171
- Invertase, 340
- Iodal, 76
- Iodine number, 102
- Iodoform, 46
- Iodol, 311
- Isoamyl acetate, 96
- Isoamyl alcohol, 60
- Isoamyl isovalerate, 96
- Isoamyl nitrite, 94
- Isobutane, 24
- Isocyanic acid, 157
- Isocyanides, identification, 333
- Isoelectric point, 138
- Isoeugenol, 267
- Isomerism, 21  
anti-type, 247  
cis-type, 89  
optical, 122  
stereo, 122  
syn-type, 247  
trans-type, 89
- Isopentane, 24
- Isophthalic acid, 357
- Isoprene, 37, 306
- Isopropyl alcohol, 60
- Isoquinoline, 313
- Isovaleric acid, 85
- K
- Kahn, 101
- Kekulé, portrait, 192

- Ketones, 67
  - aromatic, 248
  - identification, 329
  - mixed, 69
  - nomenclature, 68
  - preparation, 69
  - simple, 69
- Knoop's  $\beta$ -oxidation theory, 177
- Ketonic hydrolysis, 130
- Kolbe-Schmitt, reaction, 271

## L

- Lactase, 340
- Lactic acid, 175
- Lactones, 119
- Lactose, 170
- Lake, 290
- Lanolin, 103
- Lead tetraethyl, 6, 187
- Le Bel, 122
- Lecithin, 104
- Leucine, 141, 146
- Levulose, 168
- Lewisite, 186
- Limonene, 303
- Linoleic, acid, 86
- Lipase, 340
- Lipoids, 104
- Luminal, 115
- Lysine, 136, 142, 146

## M

- Magnesium citrate, 127
- Magnesium ethyl iodide, 187
- Malachite green, 299
- Maleic acid, 88, 125
- Maleic anhydride, 109
- Malonamide, 115
- Malonic acid, 87
- Malonic ester, 97
  - uses, 97
- Maltase, 170, 340
- Maltose, 170
- Manna, 63
- Mannans, 172
- Mannitol, 62
- Marsh gas, 18
- Medicated alcohol, 59

- Melanins, 338
- Mellitic acid, 260
- Melting points, 362, 363
- Menthane, 304
- Menthol, 304
- Menthone, 304
- Mercaptans, 182, 183
  - preparation, 183
- Mercaptides, 183
- Mercaptol, 184
- Mercerized cotton, 172
- Mercuric benzoate, 326
- Mercuric fulminate, 158
- Mercuric salicylate, 326
- Mereurochrome-220, 326
- Mercury compounds, 326
- Mesitylene, 204
- Metaldehyde, 75
- Metanilic acid, 265
- Metaproteins, 145
- Methane, 18
  - occurrence, 18
  - preparation, 18
  - properties, 19
- Methanol, 57
  - chart, facing p. 57
  - properties, 57
  - preparation, 57
  - uses, 57
- Methyl alcohol, 57
- Methylaniline, 227
- Methyl anthranilate, 274
- Methylbenzene, 202
- Methyl chloride, 43
- Methyl cyanide, 155
- Methyl glucoside, 167
- Methylene iodide, 44
- Methyl isocyanide, 134, 156
- Methyl isonitrile, 156
- Methyl orange, 298
- Methyl salicylate, 272
- Metol, 268
- Michler's ketone, 249
- Millon's reaction, 147
- Molisch, reaction, 147
  - reagent, 164
- Monosaccharides, 160
- Mordant, 290

Morphine, 321  
Mucilages, 172  
Muscarine, 104  
Mustard gas, 184  
Myricyl alcohol, 103  
Myricyl palmitate, 97  
Myronic acid, 167

## N

Naphthalene, 278  
Naphthalene substituents, table, 284  
Naphthalene sulfonic acid, 281  
Naphthalic acid, 282  
Naphthionic acid, 283  
Naphthoic acid, 282  
Naphthol,  $\beta$ -, 281  
Naphthol,  $\alpha$ -, 281  
Naphthoquinones, 283  
Naphthylamine,  $\beta$ -, 282  
Naphthylamine,  $\alpha$ -, 282  
Narcotine, 321  
Neosalvarsan, 325  
Nerolin, 281  
Nicotine, 320  
Nitration, 201  
Nitrile, 155  
Nitroanilines, 262  
Nitrobenzene, 220  
Nitrobenzoic acid, 272  
Nitro compounds, 218  
    identification, 333  
    preparation, 219  
    properties, 220  
    reduction, 220  
    reduction products, 220  
Nitroethane, 43  
Nitroglycerine, 61  
Nitrolime, 155  
Nitronaphthalene, 281  
Nitrophenols, 263  
Nitrosobenzene, 220  
Nitroso compounds, 135  
Nitrosodimethylamine, 159  
Nitrosodimethylaniline, 224, 227  
Nitrosomethylaniline, 224  
Nitroso-  $\beta$ - Naphthol, 282  
Nobel, 62  
Nomenclature, 344-358

Novocaine, 273  
Nucleic acid, 149  
Nuclein, 149  
Nucleoproteins, 144, 149  
Nucleoside, 149  
Nujol, 29

## O

Octyl acetate, 96  
Oil of anise, 267  
Oil of bitter almonds, 245  
Oil of caraway, 305  
Oil of cinnamon, 247  
Oil of cloves, 267  
Oil of garlic, 184  
Oil of lemon, 303  
Oil of lime, 303  
Oil of mirbane, 220  
Oil of peppermint, 304  
Oil of sassafras, 267  
Oil of thyme, 241  
Oil of turpentine, 203  
Oil of wintergreen, 272  
Oils, 99  
    properties, 102  
    table, 100  
Oils, essential, 307  
Oils, hydrogenation, 101  
Olefin series, 31  
Oleic acid, 85  
Olein, 99  
Oleomargarine, 101  
Optical activity, 122  
Organic compounds, 2  
    analysis, 9  
    purification, 8  
Organic type formulas, facing p. 16  
Organo-metallic compounds, 187  
Oxalic acid, 86  
    preparation, 86  
Oxalyl chloride, 111  
Oxamide, 115  
Oxidation, 201

## P

Palmitic acid, 85  
Palmitin, 99  
Paraffins, 18



- Paraffin series, table, 26  
 Paraform, 75  
 Paraformaldehyde, 75  
 Paraldehyde, 75  
 Parchment paper, 172  
 Paris green, 92  
 Pasteur, portrait, 124  
 Pectins, 172  
 Pentane, 24  
 Pentoses, 161  
 Pepsin, 178, 340  
 Peptones, 145  
 Perkin, portrait, 289  
     reaction, 257  
 Peroxidase, 340  
 Petrolatum, 29  
 Petroleum, 18, 19, 27, 28  
     cracking, 29  
     distillation, 28  
     distillation chart, facing p. 29  
     occurrence, 28  
     products derived, 28  
 Phenacetin, 269  
 Phenanthrene, 285, 287  
 Phenetidine, 269  
 Phenetole, 243  
 Phenol, 237  
     properties, 237  
 Phenols, identification, 329  
 Phenolphthalein, 258  
 Phenolsulfonephthalein, 259  
 Phenolsulfonic acid, 238, 265  
 Phenoltetrachlorophthalein, 259  
 Phenylacetaldehyde, 247  
 Phenylacetic acid, 253, 256  
 Phenylacetylene, 205  
 Phenyl alanine, 141, 146  
 Phenylamine, 224  
 Phenylenediamine, 228  
 Phenyl ether, 243, 244  
 Phenylhydrazine, 233  
 Phenylhydroxylamine, 220  
 Phenyl salicylate, 272  
 Phloridzin, 167  
 Phloroglucinol, 242  
 Phosgene, 45, 111  
 Phosphoproteins, 144  
 Phosphorus compounds, 185  
 Phrenosin, 105  
 Phthalic acids, 257  
 Phthalic anhydride, 258  
 Phthalimide, 258  
 Phytosterol, 105  
 Picramic acid, 264  
 Picric acid, 263  
 Pigments, 335  
     animal, 337  
     plant, 335  
 Pilocarpine, 321  
 Pinene, 303  
 Pinene hydrochloride, 305  
 Piperidine, 312  
 Piperine, 320  
 Pituitrin, 343  
 Polypeptide, 145  
 Polysaccharides, 161  
 Potassium acid tartrate, 127  
 Potassium antimonyl tartrate, 127  
 Procaine, 274  
 Proflavine, 318  
 Prolamines, 144  
 Proline, 146, 310  
 Propane, 22  
 Propanone, 68  
 Propenol, 48  
 Propine, 37  
 Propionaldehyde, 68  
 Propionic acid, 85  
 Propylene, 34  
 Protamines, 143  
 Proteins, 143, 178  
     composition, 145  
     constitution, 145  
     identification, 334  
     reactions, 146  
 Proteoses, 145  
 Prussic acid, 154  
 Ptyalin, 340  
 Purine, 150  
     identification, 334  
 Putrefaction, 8  
 Putrescine, 136  
 Pyrazole, 311  
 Pyrazolone, 311  
 Pyrene, 46  
 Pyridine, 312

Pyrimidine, 150  
Pyrocatechol, 241  
Pyrogallol, 242  
Pyroligneous acid, 57, 84  
Pyromucic acid, 310  
Pyroxylin, 172  
Pyrrole, 310  
Pyrrolidine, 310  
Pyruvic aldehyde, 175

## Q

Quaternary bases, 135  
Quinine, 320  
Quinol, 242  
Quinoline, 312  
Quinolinic acid, 313  
Quinone, 250  
    identification, 332

## R

Racemic acid, 126  
Radicals, 340-356  
Raffinose, 170  
Redmanol, 74  
Red oil, 86  
Reference Books, 365-375  
Reimer-Tiemann, reaction, 270, 271,  
    313  
Remsen, portrait, 276  
Rennin, 340  
Resorcin, 241  
Resorcinol, 241  
Rhodinal, 268  
Ribose, 161  
Rochelle salt, 127  
Rosin, 303  
Ruberythric acid, 167  
Rules, substitution in the benzene  
    ring, 203

## S

Sabatier and Senderens, reaction, 208  
Saccharic acid, 166  
Saccharin, 275  
Safrole, 267  
Salicin, 167  
Salicyl alcohol, 269  
Salicylaldehyde, 270, 313  
Salicylic acid, 271

Saligenin, 269  
Salol, 272  
Salts, 90, 92  
    preparation, 91  
    properties, 91  
Salvarsan, 323, 324  
Sandmeyer, reaction, 231  
Saponification, 94, 96  
Saponification number, 102  
Saturated hydrocarbon, 18, 25  
    nomenclature, 25  
    properties, 27  
Schiff test, 76  
Schweitzer's reagent, 171  
Secretin, 343  
Seidlitz powders, 127  
Seliwanoff test, 169  
Serine, 146  
Silicon tetraethyl, 187  
Silk, artificial, 172, 185  
Silver fulminate, 158  
Skatole, 317  
Skraup's reaction, 313  
Smokeless powder, 172  
Soaps, 92, 93, 102  
Sodium benzenesulfonate, 217  
Sodium benzoate, 254  
Sodium citrate, 127  
Sodium ethylate, 56  
Sodium ethyl mercaptide, 182  
Sodium formate, 83  
Sodium phenolate, 217  
Sodium salicylate, 272  
Sources of organic compounds, 6  
Spermaceti, 103  
Sphingomyelin, 105  
Stains, 300  
Starch, 171  
Steapsin, 340  
Stearic acid, 85  
Stearin, 99  
Stilbene, 205  
Strychnine, 320  
Styrene, 205  
Substitution, 13, 20  
    rules, 203  
Substrates, 339  
Succinamide, 115

Succinic acid, 87  
 Succinic anhydride, 88, 109  
 Succinimide, 115  
 Sucrase, 340  
 Sucrol, 269  
 Sucrose, 169  
 Sugar, 169  
 Sugar of lead, 92  
 Sulfanilic acid, 226, 264  
 Sulfarsenol, 325  
 Sulfides, 183  
   preparation, 183  
 Sulfoacetic acid, 81  
 Sulfobenzoic acid, 274  
 Sulfonal, 184  
 Sulfonation, 201  
 Sulfonic acids, 216  
   identification, 330  
   preparations, 216  
   properties, 217  
 Sulfur compounds, 182  
   identification, 334  
 Sulfuric ether, 65  
 Sweet spirit of nitre, 94

## T

Tannic acid, 277  
 Tannin, 277  
 Tartar emetic, 127  
 Tartaric acid, 125  
 Taurine, 185  
 Tautomerism, 129, 243  
 Terephthalic acid, 257  
 Terpenes, 302  
   identification, 334  
 Terpeneol, 305  
 Tetrahydrobenzene, 206  
 Tetralin, 283  
 Tetramethylammonium hydroxide,  
   135  
 Tetramethylmethane, 24  
 Tetraphenylethylene, 205  
 Tetryl, 219  
 Theine, 153  
 Theobromine, 153  
 Theophylline, 153  
 Thioacetic acid, 185  
 Thioacetone, 182, 185

Thioacids, 183  
 Thioalcoholate, 182  
 Thiocarbanilide, 226  
 Thiophene, 311  
 Thiophenol, 217  
 Thiourea, 185  
 Thrombin, 340  
 Thymine, 150  
 Thymol, 241  
 Thyroxin, 343  
 Tin diethyl, 187  
 T. N. A., 219  
 T. N. T., 219  
 Tolane, 205  
 Toluene, 202  
 Toluenesulfonic acids, 216, 266  
 Toluic acid, 256  
 Toluidine, 227  
 Trans-form, 89  
 Tribromophenol, 237  
 Trichloroacetic acid, 117, 119  
 Tricresol, 239  
 Trimethylamine, 134  
 Trimethylarsine, 186  
 Trimethyl carbinol, 54  
 Trimethylphosphine, 186  
 Trinitrotoluene, 219  
 Triphenylamine, 222  
 Triphenylguanidine, 226  
 Triphenylmethane, 205  
 Triphenylmethyl, 206  
 Triphenyl phosphate, 238, 305  
 Trisaccharides, 161  
 Trithioacetaldehyde, 182, 185  
 Tryparsamide, 326  
 Trypsin, 146, 178, 340  
 Tryptophan, 142, 146, 317  
 Tyrosine, 142, 146

## U

Uracil, 150  
 Urea, 1, 113, 152  
   determination, 114  
   preparation, 113  
   properties, 113  
 Urease, 340  
 Uric acid, synthesis, 151  
 Urotropine, 74



## V

Valence, electronic conception, 11, 14  
Valine, 141, 146  
Vanillin, 270  
Van Slyke, 140  
van't Hoff, 122  
Verdigris, 92  
Vinegar, 84  
Viscose, 172, 185  
Vitamins, 340

## W

Waxes, 103  
Williamson, synthesis, 64  
Wöhler, 1, 113  
Wood alcohol, 57  
Wurtz, synthesis, 21, 42

## X

Xanthic acid, 185  
Xanthine, 151  
Xanthoproteic, reaction, 147  
Xanthophyll, 336  
Xylene, 204  
Xylidine, 227  
Xylose, 161

## Y

Yara-yara, 281

## Z

Zinc ethyl, 187  
Zinc methyl iodide, 187  
Zymase, 340

340 *Compositae* *Sp. 1844*  
*2012*

*E. coli* *Yersinia* *Pseudomonas* *S. aureus* *S. typhimurium*

Carbon in 31 right chain.

## Sodium Fusion Test.

Be sure to break test tube in 3 cc. alcohol  
add 15 cc. distilled  $H_2O$ .

### NITROGEN.

10%  $NaOH$  1 cc of 10% ferrous sulfate 1 drop ferric chloride  
test with running  $H_2O$  after a minutes heating add  
10%  $HCl$ . Russian Blue.

### Halogen

10%  $HNO_3$  to acidify add 10%  $AgNO_3$  white anhydrous

### Sulfur

add 10% lead acetate solution. brownish blast

### Phosphorus

$HNO_3$  to acidify ammonium molybdate  
Heat to 60 degrees yellow precipitate of  
ammonium phospho molybdate

Proteins

↓

Proteases

↓

peptone

↓

polypeptides

↓

tripeptide

↓

dipeptide

↓

amino acid

carbohydrates.

dextrose

melich alpha naphthal blue

dextrose

↓  
Fehling solution

OH reduces  
get mirror

Cupric oxide  $2\text{CuO}$

to  
cuprous oxide  $\text{Cu}_2\text{O}$

Next Tues. Last month

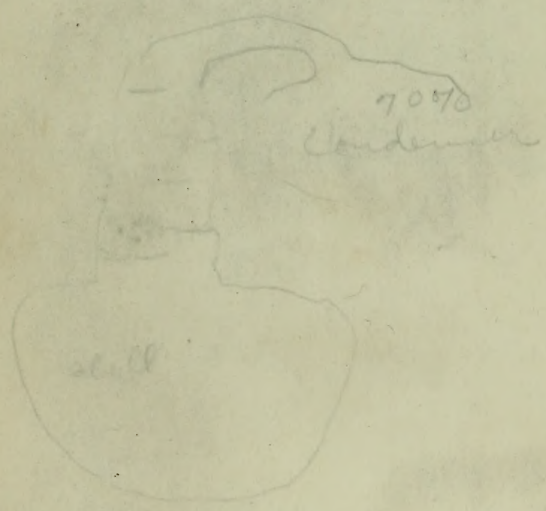


12% alcohol  
 ✓ 1 gal.  
 acetaldehyde  
 dilute  
 = acetic acid  
 Birch wood shavings

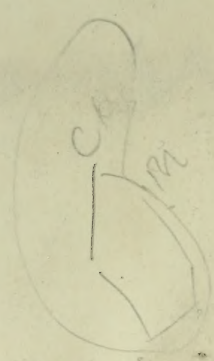
Corn  $\frac{2}{3}$  }  
 rye }  
 malt }  $\frac{1}{3}$   
 yeast  
 5% alcohol

7. Make gallic acid 277

Elizvir



O. Tolyz bromide



ethyl acetate  
ethylene

Benzene  $C_6H_6$

Benzine naphtha fraction of petroleum

Benzol - crude benzene.

iso propyl crotonate

Ethyl nonyl ketone.



